DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 402 001 PS 024 289

TITLE Manual for Head Start Administrators. Volume I: Head Start Requirements.
INSTITUTION Administration for Children, Youth, and Families (DHHS), Washington, DC. Head Start Bureau.
REPORT NO ACYF-IM-94-13
PUB DATE 25 Jul 94
NOTE 325p.; This manual should be used in conjunction with the "Discretionary Grants Administration Manual," ED 281 079.
PUB TYPE Guides - Non-Classroom Use (055) -- Reports - Descriptive (141)

EDRS PRICE MF01/PC13 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS *Administrative Policy; Administrative Principles; *Administrator Guides; Disabilities; Eligibility; Federal Aid; *Federal Legislation; *Federal Programs; Federal Regulation; Preschool Education; *Program Administration; Program Guides; Program Implementation; Recruitment; Standards
IDENTIFIERS Department of Health and Human Services; *Head Start Program Performance Standards; *Project Head Start; Rules and Regulations; Special Needs Children

ABSTRACT

Head Start Administrators must be fully knowledgeable of all applicable Federal requirements and skilled in applying these requirements in the daily operation of their program, whether starting a new program or striving to maintain a high quality program. This manual provides Head Start administrators with a compilation of the program requirements necessary for operating a Head Start program. The manual also contains general requirements which apply to all programs funded by the Department of Health and Human Services. Part one of the guide presents the Head Start Act, the legislative authority which authorizes program functions, purpose, funding, reporting, and evaluative requirements. Part two addresses Head Start regulations, including grants administration, funding, refunding, appeal procedures, program performance standards, eligibility, recruitment, selection, enrollment, staff requirements, and performance standards for children with disabilities. Part three addresses Head Start policies concerning administration, education, health, nutrition, social services, and parent involvement. Part four contains the instructions for completing a Head Start grant application. Part five contains an appendix of various administrative requirements which are incorporated in the Head Start regulations, as well as other requirements which have been recently updated or otherwise do not appear in other manuals. (SD)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
ADMINISTRATION FOR CHILDREN AND FAMILIES
Administration on Children, Youth and Families
Head Start Bureau

ED 402 001

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
Office of Educational Research and Improvement
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)
☒ This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it.
☐ Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality.
• Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official OERI position or policy.

PS 024289

MANUAL FOR HEAD START ADMINISTRATORS

Volume I

Head Start Requirements

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

PART I - HEAD START ACT

Legislative Authority	Head Start Act, as amended 42 USC 9801 _et_ _seq_.

PART II - HEAD START REGULATIONS

45 CFR, Part 1301	Head Start Grants Administration
Part 1302	Policies and Procedures for Selection, Initial Funding, and Refunding of Head Start Grantees, and for Selection of Replacement Grantees
Part 1303	Appeal Procedures for Head Start Grantees and Current or Prospective Delegate Agencies
Part 1304	Program Performance Standards for Operation of Head Start Programs by Grantees and Delegate Agencies
Part 1305	Eligibility, Recruitment, Selection, Enrollment and Attendance in Head Start
Part 1306	Head Start Staffing Requirements and Program Options
Part 1307	[Reserved]
Part 1308	Head Start Program Performance Standards on Services for Children with Disabilities

PART III - HEAD START POLICIES

A. **ADMINISTRATION**

ACYF-IM-94-04	1994 Family Income Guidelines

PART III - HEAD START POLICIES - continued

B. **EDUCATION**

No current policy issuances

C. **HEALTH**

Existing policies related to health screening and immunizations in Head Start are contained in ACYF-TN-80.1, ACYF-PI-82-05, and ACYF-IM-88-16. Because these policies are currently under review and new policies will be issued shortly, the old issuances are not reprinted here.

D. **NUTRITION**

No current policy issuances

E. **SOCIAL SERVICES**

No current policy issuances

F. **PARENT INVOLVEMENT**

TN 70.2 Instruction I-31 Section B2, "The Parents"	Parent Involvement Policies
ACYF-IM-87-33	Parent Involvement Policy Interpretations

PART IV - GRANT APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

ACF-PI-91-13	Application Instructions

PART V - APPENDIX

45 CFR, Part 16	Procedures of the Departmental Grant Appeals Board
45 CFR, Part 80	Nondiscrimination Under Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964

PART V - APPENDIX - continued

Transmittal Notice 80.4 (with 45 CFR, Part 84)	Requirements of Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973--Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Handicap
45 CFR, Part 100 (with Exec. Order 12372)	Intergovernmental Review of Department of Health and Human Services Programs
45 CFR, Part 92	Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments
45 CFR, Part 74 OMB Circular A-133	Audits of Institutions of Higher Education and Other Non-profit Organizations
45 CFR, Part 74 OMB Circular A-128	Audits of State and Local Governments
Federal Register Vol. 52, No. 65	Head Start Name and Logo Trademark Registration

INTRODUCTION

Head Start Administrators must be fully knowledgeable of all applicable Federal requirements and skilled in applying these requirements in the daily operation of their program, whether starting a new program or striving to maintain a quality program. This Manual provides Head Start Administrators with a compilation of the program requirements necessary for operating a Head Start program. The Manual for Head Start Administrators should be used in conjunction with the Discretionary Grants Administration Manual, which provides the financial management and administrative requirements within which programs must operate.

The Manual is arranged in five colored-coded sections. The first three sections, Part I - Head Start Act, Part II - Head Start Regulations, and Part III - Head Start Policies, are arranged to correspond with the process of Federal rulemaking. Part IV contains the instructions for completing a Head Start grant application. Part V, the Appendix, contains various administrative requirements which are incorporated in the Head Start regulations by reference, as well as other requirements which have been either recently updated or otherwise do not appear in the Discretionary Grants Administration Manual.

Some of the requirements contained in the Manual are general, that is, they apply to all programs funded by the Department of Health and Human Services. Other requirements apply specifically to the Head Start program. It is important for Head Start Administrators to understand these distinctions in order to use the Manual effectively. The following section is provided to assist users in understanding the process of Federal rulemaking and the relationship of the Head Start requirements to the general rules issued by the Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS).

Head Start Act

As with all programs of the Federal government, Head Start owes its existence to a Public Law passed by the Congress and signed by the President. The Head Start Act, as it is commonly referred to, authorizes the appropriation of funds at specific levels, and prescribes the methodologies for allotment of funds to the various functions of the program and the methods for the distribution of the funds nationally and locally to Head Start agencies. The Act spells out the intent of the Congress in terms of the purpose of the program, the types of services to be provided, the population to be served, reporting and evaluation requirements, and a variety of administrative requirements.

It is important for Administrators to be familiar with those sections which have relevance to day-to-day operations. For example, the 20 percent matching requirement for non-Federal share, the 15 percent limitation on administrative costs, and the 10 percent of enrollment slots to be reserved for services to children with disabilities are specifically delineated in the Act. Throughout, the Act directs the Secretary of Health and Human Services to develop regulations to guide the implementation of the program. Once developed, these regulations become a part of the Code of Federal Regulations. Since regulations have their basis in Public Law, they have the force of law for programs funded by the issuing agency.

Regulatory Process

The regulation development process is designed to enable those whose work or lives will be affected by the regulation to help shape it. First, a Notice of Proposed Rulemaking (NPRM) is prepared by the agency which administers the program. After clearing internal and Departmental review, the NPRM is submitted to the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) for review. As the review arm of the Executive Branch, OMB's role is to ensure that the proposed regulation complies with the intent of the Public Law under which it was prepared and that its implementation will not unfairly burden the public. Once agreement is reached between the issuing agency and OMB, the NPRM is published in the Federal Register, which is the official publication of the Federal government for notifying the public of proposed and final regulations. Following publication of the NPRM, interested parties may submit written comments during a "comment period," which typically is 90 days, on the merits of the regulation. After consideration of the public comments, the NPRM is modified or changed as deemed necessary by the agency and returned to OMB as "Final Rule." Once approved by OMB, the Final Rule is published in the Federal Register, and is incorporated as part of the body of regulations contained in the Code of Federal Regulations for the issuing agency.

Code of Federal Regulations

The Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) is a systematic collection of the rules published in the Federal Register by the executive departments and agencies of the Federal government. The Code is divided into 50 Titles which represent broad areas of Federal regulation. A portion of these are devoted to common regulations which apply across several different Departments of the government, such as **Title 5, Administrative Personnel**, and **Title 41, Public Contracts and Property Management.** Other Titles contain only the regulations of a single Department, such as **Title 7, Agriculture, Title 29, Labor** and **Title 49, Transportation.**

Some of the regulations pertaining to the Department of Health and

Human Services (DHHS) are **Title 21, Food and Drug Administration;**, **Title 42, Public Health Service**; and for Human Services, **Title 45, Public Welfare**. Title 45 is further divided between Subtitle A, "General Administration," and Subtitle B, "Regulations Relating to Public Welfare." Title 45 contains the regulations governing the Head Start program.

Title 45, Subtitle A

Parts 1-199 under Subtitle A contain the Department-wide regulations which apply to all grants and contracts funded by DHHS. Most important among these in terms of the day-to-day operation of a Head Start program are Part 74, "Administration of Grants" and Part 92, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments."

Part 74 and Part 92 contain the procedures governing the administration of grants and cooperative agreements issued by DHHS. The Subparts cover such topics as cash management, financial reports, allowable and unallowable costs, and property and procurement. The agency type (Part 74 for private non-profit agencies and Part 92 for public agencies) is the determining factor as to which regulation applies. It is important for every Head Start Administrator to be familiar with the appropriate regulation and its relationship to the Head Start-specific regulations.

The Appendix to this Manual includes a copy of each of the department-wide regulations which apply to Head Start as well as the new Part 92, which has not yet been incorporated into the separate Discretionary Grants Administration Manual.

Title 45, Subtitle B

Subtitle B of Title 45 contains the regulations issued by the agencies in DHHS to govern the operations of their programs. In contrast to the Department-wide regulations contained in Subtitle A, these are the program-specific regulations tailored to the unique activities of the different agencies and programs. The regulations for the Head Start program are located in 45 CFR, Subtitle B, Chapter XIII, Subchapter B, Parts 1301-1308.

Head Start Regulations

This section describes briefly the contents of each of the major parts of the Head Start regulations and provides an update on recent major changes in the structure and content of the regulations.

Part 1301, in addition to listing the applicable general requirements (referred to above under Subtitle A), contains grants administration requirements regarding insurance, bonding and audits.

Part 1302 describes the procedures for selection, initial funding, and refunding of Head Start grantees, as well as the process for selecting replacement grantees. As far as Head Start grantees are concerned, these regulations are for informative purposes and have no applicability to day-to-day operations. They are published here rather than in the Department-wide regulations because, as required in the Act, they were developed specifically for the Head Start program.

Part 1303 contains the appeals procedures for grantees and delegate agencies in cases of intended or actual termination or suspension of funding. In the event of an adverse action by the Administration for Children and Families (ACF) against a grantee, or by a grantee against a delegate agency, these rules are designed to protect the rights of both parties, and have applicability only to such situations.

Part 1304, commonly referred to as the Head Start Performance Standards, contains the minimum requirements for the provision of services to Head Start children and their families in the areas of Education, Health, Social Services and Parent Involvement.

Part 1304, Appendix A, formerly "Program Options for Project Head Start," has been superseded by new regulations contained in Part 1306.

Part 1304, Appendix B describes the policy for involvement of parents in the conduct and administration of the program. These policies also appear in Part III of the Manual as Transmittal Notice 70.2, and is commonly referred to as "70.2." A working knowledge of the Performance Standards and related appendixes is, of course, essential to daily operations.

Part 1305 contains the eligibility requirements and limitations on enrollment in Head Start. It addresses the subjects of age, income, and disabilities and their bearing on a child's eligibility. These regulations are used in conjunction with the Family Income Guidelines (which are updated annually) and the diagnostic criteria for reporting of children with disabilities to establish the selection criteria for enrollment of children in Head Start programs. The updated version which appears in the Manual became effective on November 9, 1992. This version reorganizes the content of Part 1305 and supersedes or replaces the Head Start Enrollment and Attendance Policies previously in effect. Head Start administrators should review the "Redesignation Table" to identify the policies which no longer apply.

Part 1306, which became effective on January 7, 1993, contains the staffing requirements for center-based classrooms and home visitors and replaces Part 1304, Appendix A, "Program Options for Project Head Start." The regulation also supersedes several of the policies that have been in place for some time to govern such matters as the length of full-year, full-day services. The "Redesignation Table" identifies these changes.

Part 1308, which became effective on February 21, 1993, establishes eligibility criteria for enrollment of children with disabilities in the Head Start program, and, in an appendix to Part 1308, offers guidance for the provision of services to children with disabilities and for services to meet the special needs of their parents. Like the other new regulations discussed above, this regulation supersedes a variety of policy memoranda previously issued.

Head Start Policies

The **Act** and the **regulations** represent the first two levels of rulemaking. The third level of rule making is referred to as **policy**. As regulations are developed to define a requirement in the Act, policies are likewise developed to guide the implementation of a regulation.

Generally, new policies are developed and existing policies are updated in response to changes in the body of knowledge concerning "best practice," or because of consistent misinterpretation of the meaning of a regulatory requirement. Policy issuances have the force of regulations since compliance with the regulation cannot be achieved without adherence to the policy. The policies that appear in this Manual cover such topics as family income guidelines and questions and answers on the policies regarding parent involvement.

You will note that for some components of Head Start, for example, Education and Social Services, no policies have been issued. As stated above, policies are developed only when the regulations are insufficient in detail or clarity to achieve the intended purpose. In the case of the Education and Social Services components, the language in the regulations has adequately communicated the goals of these components so that it has only been necessary to provide additional information in the form of guidance as opposed to policy. It is important for Head Start Administrators to distinguish between material that is issued as **guidance**, and is therefore optional, and requirements which are issued as regulation or policy. Volume II of this Manual will contain Head Start guidance material.

MANUAL FOR HEAD START ADMINISTRATORS

PART I

HEAD START ACT

HEAD START ACT

Legislative Authority: Head Start Act, as amended.

U.S. Code Citation: 42 USC 9801 et seq.

HDS Regulations: 45 CFR 1301 et seq.

Legislative History:

> The "Head Start Act" is Title VI, Subtitle A, Chapter 8, Subchapter B of the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981, PL 97-35 (8/13/81). Minor amendments to this Act were made by the "Technology-Related Assistance for Individuals With Disabilities Amendments of 1993," PL 103-218 (3/9/94). This Act was most recently reauthorized, through fiscal year 1998, by Title I of the Human Services Amendments of 1994, PL 103-252 (5/18/94).

Sec. 635. Short Title p. 2
Sec. 636. Statement of Purpose and Policy p. 2
Sec. 637. Definitions p. 2
Sec. 638. Financial Assistance for Head Start Programs p. 3
Sec. 639. Authorization of Appropriations p. 4
Sec. 640. Allotment of Funds; Limitations on Assistance p. 4
Sec. 641. Designation of Head Start Agencies p.10
Sec. 641A. Quality Standards; Monitoring of Head Start Agencies and Programs p.12
Sec. 642. Powers and Functions of Head Start Agencies p.15
Sec. 643. Submission of Plans to Governors p.18
Sec. 644. Administrative Requirements and Standards p.18
Sec. 645. Participation in Head Start Programs p.21
Sec. 645A. Programs for Families with Infants and Toddlers p.23
Sec. 646. Appeals, Notice, and Hearing p.25
Sec. 647. Records and Audits p.27
Sec. 648. Technical Assistance and Training p.27
Sec. 648A. Staff Qualifications and Development p.28
Sec. 649. Research, Demonstrations and Evaluation p.31
Sec. 650. Reports p.34
Sec. 653. Comparability of Wages p.35
Sec. 654. Nondiscrimination Provisions p.35
Sec. 655. Limitation with Respect to Certain Unlawful Activities p.36
Sec. 656. Political Activities p.36
Sec. 657. Advance Funding p.37
Sec. 657A. Consultation with the Corporation for National and Community Service p.37

Additional legislative changes which do not amend the Head Start Act

Sec. 120. Study of Benefits for Head Start Employees p.37
Sec. 126. Study of Full-day and Full-year Head Start Programs p.37
Sec. 127 Effective Date and Application p.38

SHORT TITLE

Sec. 635. [42 U.S.C. 9801] This subchapter may be cited as the "Head Start Act".

STATEMENT OF PURPOSE AND POLICY

Sec. 636. [42 U.S.C. 9831 note] (a) In recognition of the role which Project Head Start has played in the effective delivery of comprehensive health, educational, nutritional, social, and other services to economically disadvantaged children and their families, it is the purpose of this subchapter to extend the authority for the appropriation of funds for such program.

(b) In carrying out the provisions of this subchapter, the Secretary of Health and Human Services shall continue the administrative arrangement responsible for meeting the needs of migrant, non-English language background, and Indian children and shall assure that appropriate funding is provided to meet such needs.

DEFINITIONS

Sec. 637. [42 U.S.C. 9832] For purposes of this subchapter:

(1) The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

(2) The Term "State" means a State, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the District of Columbia, Guam, American Samoa, the Virgin Islands, the Federated States of Micronesia, the Republic of the Marshall Islands, Palau, and the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands.

(3) The term "financial assistance" includes assistance provided by grant, agreement, or contract, and payments may be made in installments and in advance or by way of reimbursement with necessary adjustments on account of overpayments or underpayments.

(4) The term "family literacy services" means services and activities that include interactive literacy activities between parents and their children, training for parents on techniques for being the primary teacher of their children and full partners in the education of their children, parent literacy training (including training in English as a second language), and early childhood education.

(5) The term "full-calendar-year" means all days of the year other than Saturday, Sunday, and a legal public holiday.

(6) The term "full-working-day" means not less than 10 hours per day.

(7) The term "Head Start classroom" means a group of children supervised and taught by two paid staff members (a teacher and a teacher's aide or two teachers) and, where possible, a volunteer.

(8) The term "Head Start family day care" means Head Start services provided in a private residence other than the residence of the child receiving such services.

(9) The term "home-based Head Start program" means a Head Start program that provides Head Start services in the private residence of the child receiving such services.

(10) The term "Indian tribe" means any tribe, band, nation, pueblo, or other organized group or community of Indians, including any Native village described in section 3(c) of the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act (43 U.S.C. 1602(c)) or established pursuant to such Act (43 U.S.C. 1601 et seq.), that is recognized as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians.

(11) The term "local educational agency" has the meaning given such term in the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965.

(12) The term "migrant Head Start program" means a Head Start program that serves families who are engaged in agricultural work and who have changed their residence from one geographical location to another in the preceding 2-year period.

(13) The term "mobile Head Start program" means the provision of Head Start services utilizing transportable equipment set up in various community-based locations on a routine, weekly schedule, operating in conjunction with home-based Head Start programs, or as a Head Start classroom.

(14) The term "poverty line" means the official poverty line (as defined by the Office of Management and Budget)--

(A) adjusted to reflect the percentage change in the Consumer Price Index For All Urban Consumers, issued by the Bureau of Labor Statistics, occurring in the 1-year period or other interval immediately preceding the date such adjustment is made; and

(B) adjusted for family size.

FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE FOR HEAD START PROGRAMS

Sec. 638. [42 U.S.C. 9833] (a) The Secretary may, upon application by an agency which is eligible for designation as a Head Start agency pursuant to section 641, provide financial assistance to such agency for the planning, conduct, administration and evaluation of a Head Start program focused primarily upon the children from low-income families who have not reached the age of compulsory school attendance which (1) will provide such comprehensive health, education, parental involvement, nutritional, social, and other services as will aid the children to attain their full potential; and (2) will provide for direct participation of the parents of such children in the development, conduct, and overall program direction at the local level.

(b) For purposes of providing financial assistance under subsection (a) of this section to agencies, the Secretary may not take into consideration whether such agency applies for or receives funds under subchapter E.

AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS

Sec. 639. [42 U.S.C. 9834] (a) There are authorized to be appropriated for carrying out the provisions of this subchapter sums as may be necessary for fiscal years 1995 through 1998.

(b) From the amount appropriated under subsection (a), the Secretary shall make available--

(1) $35,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1995 through 1998 to--

(A) carry out the Head Start Transition Project Act; and

(B) carry out activities authorized under section 642(d); and

(2) not more than $3,000,000 for fiscal year 1995, and such sums as may be necessary for each of the fiscal years 1996 through 1998, to carry out longitudinal research under section 649(e).

ALLOTMENT OF FUNDS; LIMITATIONS ON ASSISTANCE

Sec. 640. [42 U.S.C. 9835] (a)(1) Of the sums appropriated pursuant to section 639 for any fiscal year beginning after September 30, 1981, the Secretary shall allot such sums in accordance with paragraphs (2) through (4), and subject to paragraphs (5) and (6).

(2) The Secretary shall reserve 13 percent of the amount appropriated for each fiscal year for use in accordance with the following order of priorities -

(A) Indian and migrant Head Start programs and services for handicapped children, except that there shall be made available for each fiscal year for use by Indian and migrant Head Start programs, on a nationwide basis, not less than the amount that was obligated for use by Indian and migrant Head Start programs for fiscal year 1994;

(B) payments to Guam, American Samoa, the Federated States of Micronesia, the Republic of the Marshall Islands, Palau, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, and the Virgin Islands according to their respective needs, except that such amount shall not exceed one-half of 1 percent of the sums appropriated for any fiscal year;

(C) training and technical assistance activities which are sufficient to meet the needs associated with program expansion and to foster program and management improvement activities as described in section 648 of this subchapter, in an amount for each fiscal year which is not less than 2 percent of the amount appropriated for such fiscal year; and

(D) discretionary payments made by the Secretary (including payments for all costs (other than compensation of Federal employees) of reviews of Head Start agencies and programs under section 641A(c), and of activities related to the development and implementation of quality improvement plans under section 641A(d)(2)).

No funds reserved under this paragraph or paragraph (3) may be combined with funds appropriated under any other Act if the purpose of combining funds is to make a single discretionary grant or a single discretionary payment, unless such funds appropriated under this subchapter are separately identified in such grant or payment and are used for the purposes of this subchapter.

(3)(A)(i) In order to provide assistance for activities specified in subparagraph (C) directed at the goals specified in subparagraph (B), the Secretary shall reserve, from the amount (if any) by which the funds appropriated under section 639(a) for a fiscal year exceed the adjusted prior year appropriation, a share equal to the sum of--

(I) 25 percent of such excess amount; and

(II) any additional amount the Secretary may find necessary to address a demonstrated need for such activities.

(ii) As used in clause (i), the term "adjusted prior year appropriation" means, with respect to a fiscal year, the amount appropriated pursuant to section 639(a) for the preceding fiscal year, adjusted to reflect the percentage change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers (issued by the Bureau of Labor Statistics) during such preceding fiscal year.

(B) Funds reserved under this paragraph (referred to in this paragraph as "quality improvement funds") shall be used to accomplish any or all of the following goals:

(i) Ensuring that Head Start programs meet or exceed performance standards pursuant to section 641A(a)(1)(A).

(ii) Ensuring that such programs have adequate qualified staff, and that such staff are furnished adequate training, including developing skills in working with children with non-English language background, when appropriate.

(iii) Ensuring that salary levels and benefits are adequate to attract and retain qualified staff for such programs.

(iv) Using salary increases to improve staff qualifications, and to assist with the implementation of career development programs, for the staff of Head Start programs.

(v) Improving community-wide strategic planning and needs assessments for such programs.

(vi) Ensuring that the physical environments of Head Start programs are conducive to providing effective program services to children and families.

(vii) Making such other improvements in the quality of such programs as the Secretary may designate.

(C) Quality improvement funds shall be used to carry out any or all of the following activities:

(i)(I) Not less than one-half of the amount reserved under this subparagraph, to improve the compensation (including benefits) of staff of Head Start agencies and thereby enhance recruitment and retention of such staff. The expenditure of funds under this clause shall be subject to section 653.

(II) If a Head Start agency certifies to the Secretary for such fiscal year that part of the funds set aside under subclause (I) to improve wages cannot be expanded by such agency to improve wages because of the operation of section 653, then such agency may expend such part for any of the uses specified in the subparagraph (other than wages).

(ii) To pay transportation costs incurred by Head Start agencies to enable eligible children to participate in a Head Start program.

(iii) To employ additional Head Start staff, including staff necessary to reduce the child-staff ratio and staff necessary to coordinate a Head Start program with other services available to children participating in such program and to their families.

(iv) To pay costs incurred by Head Start agencies to purchase insurance (other than employee benefits) and thereby maintain or expand Head Start services.

(v) To make nonstructural and minor structural changes, and to acquire and install equipment, for the purpose of improving facilities necessary to expand the availability, or enhance the quality, of Head Start programs.

(vi) To supplement amounts provided under paragraph (2)(C) to provide training necessary to improve the qualifications of the staff of the Head Start agencies, and to support staff training, child counseling, and other services necessary to address the problems of children participating in Head Start programs, including children from dysfunctional families, children who experience chronic violence in their communities, and children who experience substance abuse in their families.

(vii) Such other activities as the Secretary may designate.

(D)(i) Funds reserved under subparagraph (A) shall be allotted by the Secretary as follows:

(I) 80 percent of such funds shall be allotted among the States in the same proportion as the Secretary allots funds among the States under paragraph (4) for the respective fiscal year.

(II) 20 percent of such funds shall be allotted among the States, geographical areas specified in subsection (a)(2)(B) and Indian and migrant Head Start programs, and used to make grants to Head Start agencies, at the discretion of the Secretary.

(ii) Funds allotted under clause (i) shall be used by the Secretary to make grants to Head Start agencies that receive grants from funds allotted under paragraph (4) for such fiscal year, in such amounts as the Secretary considers to be appropriate, for expenditure for activities specified in subparagraph (C).

(iii) Funds received under this subparagraph shall be used to supplement, not to supplant, funds received under paragraphs (2) or (4).

(4) Subject to section 639(b), the Secretary shall allot the remaining amounts appropriated in each fiscal year among the States, in accordance with latest satisfactory data so that -

(A) each State receives an amount which is equal to the amount the State received for fiscal year 1981; and

(B)(i) 33-1/3 percent of any amount available after all allotments have been made under subparagraph (A) for such fiscal year shall be distributed on the basis of the relative number of children from birth through 18 years of age, on whose behalf payments are made under the program of aid to families with dependent children under a State plan approved under part A of title IV of the Social Security Act in each State as compared to all States; and

(ii) 66-2/3 percent of such amount shall be distributed on the basis of the relative number of children from birth through 5 years of age living with families with incomes below the poverty line in each State as compared to all States.

(5)(A) From amounts reserved and allotted pursuant to paragraph (4), the Secretary shall reserve such sums as may be necessary to award the collaboration grants described in subparagraph (B).

(B) From the reserved sums, the Secretary may award a collaboration grant to each State to facilitate collaboration regarding activities carried out in the State under this subchapter, and other activities carried out in, and by, the State that are designed to benefit low-income children and families.

(C) A State that receives a grant under subparagraph (B) shall--

(i) appoint an individual to serve as a State liaison between--

(I) agencies and individuals carrying out Head Start programs in the State;

(II) agencies (including local educational agencies) and entities carrying out programs serving low-income children and families;

(ii) involve the State Head Start Association in the selection of the individual, and involve the association in determinations relating to the ongoing direction of the collaboration;

(iii) ensure that the individual holds a position with sufficient authority and access to ensure that the collaboration described in subparagraph (B) is effective and involves a range of State agencies; and

(iv) ensure that the collaboration described in subparagraph (B) involves coordination of Head Start services with health care, welfare, child care, education, and national service activities, family literacy services, and activities relating to children with disabilities.

(D) As used in this paragraph, the term "low-income", used with respect to children or families, shall not be considered to refer only to children or families that meet the low-income criteria prescribed pursuant to section 645(a)(1)(A).

(6) From amounts reserved and allotted pursuant to paragraphs (2) and (4), the Secretary shall use, for grants for programs described in section 645A(a), a portion of the combined total of such amounts equal to 3 percent for fiscal year 1995, 4 percent for each of fiscal years 1996 and 1997, and 5 percent for fiscal year 1998, of the amount appropriated pursuant to section 639(a).

(7) For purposes of this subsection, the term "State" does not include Guam, American Samoa, the Virgin Islands, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, the Federated States of Micronesia, the Republic of the Marshall Islands, and Palau.

(b) Financial assistance extended under this subchapter for a Head Start program shall not exceed 80 percent of the approved costs of the assisted program or activities, except that the Secretary may approve assistance in excess of such percentage if the Secretary determines that such action is required in furtherance of the purposes of this subchapter. For the purpose of making such determination, the Secretary shall take into consideration with respect to the Head Start program involved--

(1) the lack of resources available in the community that may prevent the Head Start agency from providing all or a portion of the non-Federal contribution that may be required under this subsection;

(2) the impact of the cost the Head Start agency may incur in initial years it carries out such program;

(3) the impact of an unanticipated increase in the cost the Head Start agency may incur to carry out such program;

(4) whether the Head Start agency is located in a community adversely affected by a major disaster; and

(5) the impact on the community that would result if the Head Start agency ceased to carry out such program.

Non-Federal contributions may be in cash or in kind, fairly evaluated, including plant, equipment, or services. The Secretary shall not require non-Federal contributions in excess of 20 percent of the approved costs of programs or activities assisted under this subchapter.

(c) No programs shall be approved for assistance under this subchapter unless the Secretary is satisfied that the services to be provided under such program will be in addition to, and not in substitution for, comparable services previously provided without Federal assistance. The requirement imposed by the preceding sentence shall be subject to such regulations as the Secretary may prescribe.

(d) The Secretary shall establish policies and procedures designed to assure that for fiscal year 1982 and thereafter no less than 10 percent of the total number of enrollment opportunities in Head Start programs in each State shall be available for children with disabilities (as defined in paragraph (1) of section 602 of the Education of the Handicapped Act) and that services shall be provided to meet their special needs.

(e) The Secretary shall adopt appropriate administrative measures to assure that the benefits of this subchapter will be distributed equitably between residents of rural and urban areas.

(f) The Secretary shall establish procedures to enable Head Start agencies to develop locally designed or specialized service delivery models to address local community needs.

(g)(1) If in any fiscal year, the amounts appropriated to carry out the program under this subchapter exceed the amount appropriated in the prior fiscal year, the Secretary shall, prior to using such additional funds to serve an increased number of children, allocate such funds in a manner that makes available the funds necessary to maintain the level of services provided during the prior year, taking into consideration the percentage change in the Consumer Price Index For All Urban Consumers, as published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics.

(2) For the purpose of expanding Head Start programs, in allocating funds to an applicant within a State, from amounts allotted

to a State pursuant to subsection (a)(4), the Secretary shall take into consideration--

(A) the quality of the applicant's programs (including Head Start and other child care or child development programs) in existence on the date of the allocation, including, in the case of Head Start programs in existence on the date of the allocation, the extent to which such programs meet or exceed performance standards and other requirements under this subchapter;

(B) the applicant's capacity to expand services (including, in the case of Head Start programs in existence on the date of the allocation, whether the applicant accomplished any prior expansions in an effective and timely manner);

(C) the extent to which the applicant has undertaken community-wide strategic planning and needs assessments involving other community organizations and public agencies serving children and families (including organizations serving families in whose homes English is not the language customarily spoken);

(D) the extent to which the family and community needs assessment of the applicant reflects a need to provide full-working-day or full-calendar-year services;

(E) the numbers of eligible children in each community who are not participating in a Head Start program; and

(F) the concentration of low-income families in each community.

(3) In determining the amount of funds reserved pursuant to subparagraph (A) or (B) of subsection (a)(2) to be used for expanding Head Start programs under this subchapter, the Secretary shall take into consideration, to the extent appropriate, the factors specified in paragraph (2).

(h) Financial assistance provided under this subchapter may be used by each Head Start program to provide full-working-day Head Start services to any eligible child throughout the full-calendar-year.

(i) The Secretary shall issue regulations establishing requirements for the safety features, and the safe operation, of vehicles used by Head Start agencies to transport children participating in Head Start programs.

(j) Any agency that receives financial assistance under this subchapter to improve the compensation of staff who provide services under this subchapter shall use the financial assistance to improve the compensation of such staff, regardless of whether the agency has the ability to improve the compensation of staff employed by the agency who do not provide Head Start services.

(k)(1) The Secretary shall allow center-based Head Start programs the flexibility to satisfy the total number of hours of service required by the regulations in effect on the date of enactment of the Human Services Amendments of 1994, to be provided to children in Head Start programs so long as such agencies do not--

(A) provide less than 3 hours of service per day;

(B) reduce the number of days of service per week; or

(C) reduce the number of days of service per year.

(2) The provisions of this subsection shall not be construed to restrict the authority of the Secretary to fund alternative program variations authorized under section 1306.35 of title 45 of the Code of Federal Regulations in effect on the date of enactment of the Human Services Amendments of 1994.

(1) With funds made available under section 640(a)(2) to migrant Head Start programs, the Secretary shall give priority to migrant Head Start programs that serve eligible children of migrant families whose work requires them to relocate most frequently.

DESIGNATION OF HEAD START AGENCIES

Sec. 641. [42 U.S.C. 9836] (a) The Secretary is authorized to designate as a Head Start agency any local public or private nonprofit agency, within a community, which (1) has the power and authority to carry out the purposes of this subchapter and perform the functions set forth in section 642 within a community; and (2) is determined by the Secretary to be capable of planning, conducting, administering, and evaluating, either directly or by other arrangements, a Head Start program.

(b) For purposes of this subchapter, a community may be a city, county, or multicity or multicounty unit within a State, an Indian reservation (including Indians in any area designated by the Bureau of Indian Affairs as near-reservation), or a neighborhood or other area (irrespective of boundaries or political subdivisions) which provides a suitable organizational base and possesses the commonality of interest needed to operate a Head Start program.

(c)(1) In the administration of the provisions of this section (subject to paragraph (2)), the Secretary shall give priority in the designation of Head Start agencies to any local public or private nonprofit agency which is receiving funds under any Head Start program on the date of the enactment of this Act [August 13, 1981] unless the Secretary makes a finding that the agency involved fails to meet program, financial management, and other requirements established by the Secretary.

(2) If there is no agency of the type referred to in paragraph (1) because of any change in the assistance furnished to programs for economically disadvantaged persons, the Secretary shall give priority in the designation of Head Start agencies to any successor agency that is operating a Head Start program in substantially the same manner as the predecessor agency that did receive funds in the fiscal year preceding the fiscal year for which the determination is made.

(3) Notwithstanding any other provision of this subsection, the Secretary shall not give such priority to any agency with respect to which financial assistance has been terminated, or an application for refunding has been denied, under this subchapter by the Secretary after affording such agency reasonable notice and opportunity for a full and fair hearing in accordance with section 646(a)(3).

(d) If no entity in a community is entitled to the priority specified in subsection (c), then the Secretary may designate a Head Start agency from among qualified applicants in such community. In selecting from among qualified applicants for designation as a Head

21

Start agency, the Secretary shall consider the effectiveness of each such applicant to provide Head Start services, based on--

(1) any past performance of such applicant in providing services comparable to Head Start services, including how effectively such applicant provided such comparable services;

(2) the plan of such applicant to provide comprehensive health, nutritional, educational, social, and other services needed to aid participating children in attaining their full potential;

(3) the plan of such applicant to coordinate the Head Start program it proposes to carry out, with other preschool programs, including Even Start programs under part B of chapter 1 of title I of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 2741 et seq.), and with the educational programs such children will enter at the age of compulsory school attendance;

(4) the plan of such applicant--

(A) to seek the involvement of parents of participating children in activities designed to help such parents become full partners in the education of their children;

(B) to afford such parents the opportunity to participate in the development, conduct, and overall performance of the program at the local level;

(C) to offer (directly or through referral to local entities, such as entities carrying out Even Start programs under part B of chapter 1 of title I of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 2741 et seq.), public and school libraries, and family support programs) to such parents--

(i) family literacy services; and

(ii) parenting skills training;

(D) at the option of such applicant, to offer (directly or through referral to local entities) to such parents--

(i) training in basic child development;

(ii) assistance in developing communication skills;

(iii) opportunities for parents to share experiences with other parents;

(iv) substance abuse counseling; or

(v) any other activity designed to help such parents become full partners in the education of their children; and

(E) to provide, with respect to each participating family, a family needs assessment that includes consultation with such parents about the benefits of parent involvement and about the activities described in subparagraphs (C) and (D) in which such parents may choose to become involved (taking into consideration their specific family needs, work schedules, and other responsibilities);

(5) the ability of such applicant to carry out the plans described in paragraphs (2), (3), and (4);

(6) other factors related to the requirements of this subchapter;

(7) the plan of such applicant to meet the needs of non-English language background children and their families in the community; and

(8) the plan of such applicant who chooses to assist younger siblings of children who will participate in the proposed Head Start program to obtain health services from other sources.

(e) If, in a community served by a Head Start program, there is no applicant qualified for designation as a Head Start agency to carry out such program, the Secretary may appoint an interim grantee to carry out such program until a qualified applicant is so designated.

(f) The Secretary shall require that the practice of significantly involving parents and area residents affected by the program in selection of Head Start agencies be continued.

QUALITY STANDARDS; MONITORING OF HEAD START AGENCIES AND PROGRAMS

Sec. 641A. (a) QUALITY STANDARDS.--

(1) ESTABLISHMENT OF STANDARDS.-- The Secretary shall establish by regulation standards applicable to Head Start agencies, programs, and projects under this subchapter, including--

(A) performance standards with respect to services required to be provided, including health, education, parental involvement, nutritional, social, transition activities described in section 642(d), and other services;

(B) administrative and financial management standards;

(C) standards relating to the condition and location of facilities for such agencies, programs, and projects; and

(D) such other standards as the Secretary finds to be appropriate.

(2) MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS.-- The regulations promulgated under this subsection shall establish the minimum levels of overall accomplishment that a Head Start agency shall achieve in order to meet the standards specified in paragraph (1).

(3) CONSIDERATIONS IN DEVELOPING STANDARDS.-- In developing the regulations required under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall-

(A) consult with experts in the fields of child development, early childhood education, family services (including linguistically and culturally appropriate services to non-English language background children and their families), administration, and financial management, and with persons with experience in the operation of Head Start programs;

(B) take into consideration--

(i) past experience with use of the standards in effect on the date of enactment of this section;

(ii) changes over the period since the date of enactment of this Act in the circumstances and problems typically facing children and families served by Head Start agencies;

(iii) developments concerning best practices with respect to child development, children with disabilities, family services, program administration, and financial management;

(iv) projected needs of an expanding Head Start program;

(v) guidelines and standards currently in effect or under consideration that promote child health services and projected needs of expanding Head Start programs;

(vi) changes in the population of children who are eligible to participate in Head Start programs, including the language background and family structure of such children; and

(vii) the need for, and state-of-the-art developments relating to, local policies and activities designed to ensure that children participating in Head Start programs make a successful transition to public schools; and

(C)(i) not later than one year after the date of enactment of this section, review and revise as necessary the performance standards in effect under 651(b) on the date of enactment of this section; and

(ii) ensure that any such revisions in the performance standards will not result in the elimination of or any reduction in the scope or types of health, education, parental involvement, nutritional, social, or other services required to be provided under such standards as in effect on November 2, 1978.

(4) STANDARDS RELATING TO OBLIGATIONS TO DELEGATE AGENCIES.-- In developing standards under this subsection, the Secretary shall describe the obligations of a Head Start agency to an agency (referred to in this subchapter as the 'delegate agency') to which the Head Start agency has delegated responsibility for providing services under this subchapter and determine whether the Head Start agency compiles with the standards. The Secretary shall consider such compliance during the review described in subsection (c)(1)(A) and in determining whether to renew financial assistance to the Head Start agency under this subchapter.

(b) PERFORMANCE MEASURES.--

(1) IN GENERAL.-- Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this section, the Secretary, in consultation with representatives of Head Start agencies and with experts in the fields of child development, family services, and program management, shall develop methods and procedures for measuring, annually and over longer periods, the quality and effectiveness of programs operated by Head Start agencies (referred to in this subchapter as "performance measures").

(2) DESIGN OF MEASURES.-- The performance measures developed under this subsection shall be designed--

(A) to assess the various services provided by Head Start programs and, to the extent the Secretary finds appropriate, administrative and financial management practices of such programs;

(B) to be adaptable for use in self-assessment and peer review of individual Head Start agencies and programs; and

(C) for other program purposes as determined by the Secretary.

(3) USE OF MEASURES.-- The Secretary shall use the performance measures developed pursuant to this subsection-

(A) to identify strengths and weaknesses in the operation of Head Start programs nationally and by region; and

(B) to identify problem areas that may require additional training and technical assistance resources.

(c) MONITORING OF LOCAL AGENCIES AND PROGRAMS.--

(1) IN GENERAL.-- In order to determine whether Head Start agencies meet standards established under this subchapter with respect to program, administrative, financial management, and other requirements, the Secretary shall conduct the following reviews of designated Head Start agencies, and of the Head Start programs operated by such agencies:

(A) A full review of each such agency at least once during each 3-year period.

(B) A review of each newly designated agency immediately after the completion of the first year such agency carries out a Head Start program.

(C) Follow-up reviews including prompt return visits to agencies and programs that fail to meet the standards.

(D) Other reviews as appropriate.

(2) CONDUCT OF REVIEWS.-- The Secretary shall ensure that reviews described in subparagraphs (A) through (C) of paragraph (1)--

(A) are performed, to the maximum extent practicable, by employees of the Department of Health and Human Services who are knowledgeable about Head Start programs;

(B) are supervised by such an employee at the site of such Head Start agency; and

(C) are conducted by review teams that shall include individuals who are knowledgeable about Head Start programs and, to the maximum extent practicable, the diverse (including linguistic and cultural) needs of eligible children and their families.

(d) CORRECTIVE ACTION; TERMINATION.--

(1) DETERMINATION.-- If the Secretary determines, on the basis of a review pursuant to subsection (c), that a Head Start agency designated pursuant to section 641 fails to meet the standards described in subsection (a), the Secretary shall--

(A) inform the agency of the deficiencies that shall be corrected;

(B) with respect to each identified deficiency, require the agency--

(i) to correct the deficiency immediately;, or

(ii) at the discretion of the Secretary (taking into consideration the seriousness of the deficiency and the time reasonably required to correct the deficiency), to comply with the requirements of paragraph (2) concerning a quality improvement plan; and

(C) initiate proceedings to terminate the designation of the agency unless the agency corrects the deficiency.

(2) QUALITY IMPROVEMENT PLAN.--

(A) AGENCY RESPONSIBILITIES.-- In order to retain designation as a Head Start agency under this subchapter, a Head Start agency that is the subject of a determination described in paragraph (1) (other than an agency able to correct a deficiency immediately) shall--

(i) develop in a timely manner, obtain the approval of the Secretary regarding, and implement a quality improvement plan that specifies--

(I) the deficiencies to be corrected;

(II) the actions to be taken to correct such deficiencies; and

(III) the timetable for accomplishment of the corrective actions specified; and

(ii) eliminate each deficiency identified, not later than the date for elimination of such deficiency specified in such plan (which shall not be later than 1 year after the date the agency received notice of the determination and of the specific deficiency to be corrected).

(B) SECRETARIAL RESPONSIBILITY.-- Not later than 30 days after receiving from a Head Start agency a proposed quality improvement plan pursuant to subparagraph (A), the Secretary shall either approve such proposed plan or specify the reasons why the proposed plan cannot be approved.

(3) TRAINING AND TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE.-- The Secretary shall provide training and technical assistance to Head Start agencies with respect to the development or implementation of such quality improvement plans to the extent the Secretary finds such provision to be feasible and appropriate given available funding and other statutory responsibilities.

(e) SUMMARIES OF MONITORING OUTCOMES.-- Not later than 120 days after the end of each fiscal year, the Secretary shall publish a summary report on the findings of reviews conducted under subsection (c) and on the outcomes of quality improvement plans under subsection (d), during such fiscal year.

POWERS AND FUNCTIONS OF HEAD START AGENCIES

Sec. 642. [42 U.S.C. 9837] (a) In order to be designated as a Head Start agency under this subchapter, an agency must have authority under its charter or applicable law to receive and administer funds under this subchapter, funds and contributions from private or local public sources which may be used in support of a Head Start program, and funds under any Federal or State assistance program pursuant to which a public or private nonprofit agency (as the case may be) organized in accordance with this subchapter, could act as grantee, contractor, or sponsor of projects appropriate for inclusion in a Head

Start program. Such an agency must also be empowered to transfer funds so received, and to delegate powers to other agencies, subject to the powers of its governing board and its overall program responsibilities. The power to transfer funds and delegate powers must include the power to make transfers and delegations covering component projects in all cases where this will contribute to efficiency and effectiveness or otherwise further program objectives.

(b) In order to be so designated, a Head Start agency shall also-

(1) establish effective procedures by which parents and area residents concerned will be enabled to directly participate in decisions that influence the character of programs affecting their interests;

(2) provide for their regular participation in the implementation of such programs;

(3) provide technical and other support needed to enable parents and area residents to secure on their own behalf available assistance from public and private sources;

(4) seek the involvement of parents of participating children in activities designed to help such parents become full partners in the education of their children, and to afford such parents the opportunity to participate in the development, conduct, and overall performance of the program at the local level;

(5) offer (directly or through referral to local entities, such as entities carrying out Even Start programs under part B of chapter 1 of title I of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 2741 et seq.)), to parents of participating children, family literacy services and parenting skills training;

(6) at the option of such agency, offer (directly or through referral to local entities), to such parents--

(A) training in basic child development;

(B) assistance in developing communication skills;

(C) opportunities to share experiences with other parents;

(D) substance abuse counseling;

(E) regular in-home visitation; or

(F) any other activity designed to help such parents become full partners in the education of their children;

(7) provide, with respect to each participating family, a family needs assessment that includes consultation with such parents about the benefits of parent involvement and about the activities described in paragraphs (4) through (6) in which such parents may choose to be involved (taking into consideration their specific family needs, work schedules, and other responsibilities);

(8) consider providing services to assist younger siblings of children participating in its Head Start program to obtain health services from other sources; and

(9) perform community outreach to encourage individuals previously unaffiliated with Head Start programs to participate in its Head Start program as volunteers.

(c) The head of each Head Start agency shall coordinate with the State agency responsible for administering section 402(g) of the Social Security Act, and other programs, including Even Start programs under part B of chapter 1 of title I of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 2741 et seq.), serving the children and families served by the Head Start agency to carry out the provisions of this subchapter.

(d)(1) Each Head Start agency shall carry out the actions specified in this subsection, to the extent feasible and appropriate in the circumstances (including the extent to which such agency is able to secure the cooperation of parents and schools) to enable children to maintain the developmental gains achieved in Head Start programs and to build upon such gains in further schooling.

(2) The Head Start agency shall take steps to coordinate with the local educational agency serving the community involved and with schools in which children participating in a Head Start program operated by such agency will enroll following such program, including--

(A) developing and implementing a systematic procedure for transferring, with parental consent, Head Start program records for each participating child to the school in which such child will enroll;

(B) establishing channels of communication between Head Start staff and their counterparts in the schools (including teachers, social workers, and health staff) to facilitate coordination of programs;

(C) conducting meetings involving parents, kindergarten or elementary school teachers, and Head Start program teachers to discuss the developmental and other needs of individual children;

(D) organizing and participating in joint transition-related training of school staff and Head Start staff.

(3) A Head Start agency may take steps to coordinate with the local education agency serving the community involved and with schools in which children participating in a Head Start program operated by such agency will enroll following such program, including--

(A) collaborating on the shared use of transportation and facilities; and

(B) exchanging information on the provision of noneducational services to such children.

(4) In order to promote the continued involvement of parents of children that participate in Head Start programs in the education of their children upon transition to school, the Head Start agency shall--

(A) provide training to the parents--

(i) to inform the parents about their rights and responsibilities concerning the education of their children; and

(ii) to enable the parents to understand and work with schools in order to communicate with teachers and other school personnel, to support the school work of their children, and to participate as appropriate in decisions relating to the education of their children; and

(B) take other actions, as appropriate and feasible, to support the active involvement of parents with schools, school personnel, and school-related organizations.

(5) The Secretary, in cooperation with the Secretary of Education, shall--

(A) evaluate the effectiveness of the projects and activities funded under the Head Start Transition Project Act (42 U.S.C. 9855 et seq.);

(B) disseminate to Head Start agencies information (including information from the evaluation required by subparagraph (A)) on effective policies and activities relating to the transition of children from Head Start programs to public schools; and

(C) provide technical assistance to such agencies to promote and assist such agencies to adopt and implement such effective policies and activities.

SUBMISSION OF PLANS TO GOVERNORS

Sec. 643. [42 U.S.C. 9838] In carrying out the provisions of this subchapter, no contract, agreement, grant, or other assistance shall be made for the purpose of carrying out a Head Start program within a State unless a plan setting forth such proposed contract, agreement, grant, or other assistance has been submitted to the chief executive officer of the State, and such plan has not been disapproved by such officer within 30 days of such submission, or, if so disapproved, has been reconsidered by the Secretary and found by the Secretary to be fully consistent with the provisions and in furtherance of the purposes of this subchapter. Funds to cover the costs of the proposed contract, agreement, grant, or other assistance shall be obligated from the appropriation which is current at the time the plan is submitted to the [sic] such officer. This section shall not, however, apply to contracts, agreements, grants, loans, or other assistance to any institution of higher education in existence on the date of the enactment of this Act.

ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS AND STANDARDS

Sec. 644. [42 U.S.C. 9839] (a) Each Head Start agency shall observe standards of organization, management, and administration which will assure, so far as reasonably possible, that all program activities are conducted in a manner consistent with the purposes of this subchapter and the objective of providing assistance effectively, efficiently and free of any taint of partisan political bias or personal, or family favoritism. Each such agency shall establish or adopt rules to carry out this section, which shall include rules to assure full staff accountability in matters governed by law, regulations, or agency policy. Each agency shall also provide for reasonable public access to information, including public hearings at the request of appropriate community groups and reasonable public access to books and records of the agency or other agencies engaged in program activities or operations involving the use of authority or funds for which it is responsible. Each such agency shall adopt for itself and other agencies using funds or exercising authority for which it is responsible, rules designed to (1) establish specific standards governing salaries, salary increases, travel and per diem allowances, and other employee benefits; (2) assure that only persons capable of discharging their duties with competence and integrity are employed and that employees are promoted or advanced under impartial procedures calculated to improve agency performance and effectiveness; (3) guard against personal or financial conflicts of interest; (4) define employee duties in an appropriate manner which will in any case preclude employees from participating, in connection with the performance of their duties, in any form of picketing, protest, or other direct action which is in violation of law.

(b) Except as provided in subsection (f) of this section, no financial assistance shall be extended under this subchapter in any case in which the Secretary determines that the costs of developing and administering a program assisted under this subchapter exceed 15 percent of the total costs, including the required non-Federal contributions to such costs, of such program. The Secretary shall establish by regulation, criteria for determining (1) the costs of developing and administering such program; and (2) the total costs of such program. In any case in which the Secretary determines that the cost of administering such program does not exceed 15 percent of such total costs but is, in the judgment of the Secretary, excessive, the Secretary shall forthwith require the recipient of such financial assistance to take such steps prescribed by the Secretary as will eliminate such excessive administrative cost, including the sharing by one or more Head Start agencies of a common director and other administrative personnel. The Secretary may waive the limitation prescribed by this subsection for specific periods of time not to exceed 12 months whenever the Secretary determines that such a waiver is necessary in order to carry out the purposes of this subchapter.

(c) The Secretary shall prescribe rules or regulations to supplement subsections (a) and (f) of this section, which shall be binding on all agencies carrying on Head Start program activities with financial assistance under this subchapter. The Secretary may, where appropriate, establish special or simplified requirements for smaller agencies or agencies operating in rural areas. Policies and procedures shall be established to ensure that indirect costs attributable to the common or joint use of facilities and services by programs assisted under this subchapter and other programs shall be fairly allocated among the various programs which utilize such facilities and services.

(d) At least 30 days prior to their effective date, all rules, regulations, guidelines, instructions, and application forms shall be published in the Federal Register and shall be sent to each grantee with the notification that each such grantee has the right to submit comments pertaining thereto to the Secretary prior to the final adoption thereof.

(e) Funds appropriated to carry out this subchapter shall not be used to assist, promote, or deter union organizing.

(f)(1) The Secretary shall establish uniform procedures for Head Start agencies to request approval to purchase facilities, or to request approval of the purchase (after December 31, 1986) of facilities, to be used to carry out Head Start programs. The Secretary shall suspend any proceedings pending against any Head Start agency to claim costs incurred in purchasing such facilities until the agency has been afforded an opportunity to apply for approval of the purchase and the Secretary has determined whether the purchase will be approved. The Secretary shall not be required to repay claims previously satisfied by Head Start agencies for costs incurred in the purchase of such facilities.

(2) Except as provided in section 640(a)(3)(A)(v), financial assistance provided under this subchapter may not be used by a Head Start agency to purchase a facility (including paying the cost of amortizing the principal, and paying interest on, loans) to be used to carry out a Head Start program unless the Secretary approves a request that is submitted by such agency and contains--

(A) a description of the site of the facility proposed to be purchased or that was previously purchased;

(B) the plans and specifications of such facility;

(C) information demonstrating that--

(i) the proposed purchase will result, or the previous purchase has resulted, in savings when compared to the costs that would be incurred to acquire the use of an alternative facility to carry out such program; or

(ii) the lack of alternative facilities will prevent, or would have prevented, the operation of such program;

(D) in the case of a request regarding a previously purchased facility, information demonstrating that the facility will be used principally as a Head Start center, or a direct support facility for a Head Start program; and

(E) such other information and assurances as the Secretary may require.

(3) Upon a determination by the Secretary that suitable facilities are not otherwise available to Indian tribes to carry out Head Start programs, and that the lack of suitable facilities will inhibit the operation of such programs, the Secretary, in the discretion of the Secretary, may authorize the use of financial assistance, from the amount reserved under section 640(a)(2)(A), to make payments for the purchase of facilities owned by such tribes. The amount of such a payment for such a facility shall not exceed the fair market value of the facility.

(g)(1) Upon a determination by the Secretary that suitable facilities (including public school facilities) are not otherwise available to Indian tribes, rural communities, and other low-income communities to carry out Head Start programs, that the lack of suitable facilities will inhibit the operation of such programs, and that construction of such facilities is more cost effective than purchase of available facilities or renovation, the Secretary, in the discretion of the Secretary, may authorize the use of financial assistance under this subchapter to make payments for capital expenditures related to facilities that will be used to carry out such programs. The Secretary shall establish uniform procedures for Head

Start agencies to request approval for such payments, and shall promote, the extent practicable, the collocation of Head Start programs with other programs serving low-income children and families.

(2) Such payments may be used for capital expenditures (including paying the cost of amortizing the principal, and paying interest on, loans) such as expenditures for--

(A) construction of facilities that are not in existence on the date of the determination;

(B) major renovation of facilities in existence on such date; and

(C) purchase of vehicles used for programs conducted at the Head Start facilities.

(3) All laborers and mechanics employed by contractors or subcontractors in the construction or renovation of facilities to be used to carry out Head Start programs shall be paid wages at not less than those prevailing on similar construction in the locality, as determined by the Secretary of Labor in accordance with the Act of March 3, 1931, as amended (40 U.S.C. 276a et seq., commonly known as the "Davis-Bacon Act").

(h) In all personnel actions of the American Indian Programs Branch of the Head Start Bureau of the Administration for Children and Families, the Secretary shall give the same preference to individuals who are members of an Indian tribe as the Secretary gives to a disabled veteran, as defined in section 2108(3)(C) of title 5, United States Code. The Secretary shall take such additional actions as may be necessary to promote recruitment of such individuals for employment in the Administration.

PARTICIPATION IN HEAD START PROGRAMS

Sec. 645. [42 U.S.C. 9840] (a)(1) The Secretary shall by regulation prescribe eligibility for the participation of persons in Head Start programs assisted under this subchapter. Except as provided in paragraph (2), such criteria may provide (A) that children from low-income families shall be eligible for participation in programs assisted under this subchapter if their families' incomes are below the poverty line, or if their families are eligible or, in the absence of child care, would potentially be eligible for public assistance; and (B) pursuant to such regulations as the Secretary shall prescribe, that programs assisted under this subchapter may include, to a reasonable extent, participation of children in the area served who would benefit from such programs but whose families do not meet the low-income criteria prescribed pursuant to clause (A).

(2) Whenever a Head Start program is operated in a community with a population of 1,000 or less individuals and -

(A) there is no other preschool program in the community;

(B) the community is located in a medically underserved area, as designated by the Secretary pursuant to section 330(b)(3) of the Public Health Service Act [42 U.S.C. §254c(b)(3)] and is located in a health professional shortage area, as designated by the Secretary pursuant to section 332(a)(1) of such Act [42 U.S.C. §254e(a)(1)];

(C) the community is in a location which, by reason of remoteness, does not permit reasonable access to the types of services described in clauses (A) and (B); and

(D) not less than 50 percent of the families to be served in the community are eligible under the eligibility criteria established by the Secretary under paragraph (1);

the Head Start program in such locality shall establish the criteria for eligibility, except that no child residing in such community whose family is eligible under such eligibility criteria shall, by virtue of such project's eligibility criteria, be denied an opportunity to participate in such program. During the period beginning on the date of the enactment of the Human Services Reauthorization Act and ending on October 1, 1994, and unless specifically authorized in any statute of the United States enacted after such date of enactment, the Secretary may not make any change in the method, as in effect on April 25, 1984, of calculating income used to prescribe eligibility for the participation of persons in the Head Start programs assisted under this subchapter if such change would result in any reduction in, or exclusion from, participation of persons in any of such programs.

(b) The Secretary shall not prescribe any fee schedule or otherwise provide for the charging of any fees for participation in Head Start programs, unless such fees are authorized by legislation hereafter enacted. Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to prevent the families of children who participate in Head Start programs and who are willing and able to pay the full cost of such participation from doing so.

(c) Each Head Start program operated in a community shall be permitted to provide more than 1 year of Head Start services to eligible children (age 3 to compulsory school attendance) in the State.

(d)(1) An Indian tribe that--

(A) operates a Head Start program;

(B) enrolls as participants in the program all children in the community served by the tribe (including a community with a near-reservation designation, as defined by the Bureau of Indian Affairs) from families that meet the low-income criteria prescribed under subsection (a)(1)(A); and

(C) has the resources to enroll additional children in the community who do not meet the low-income criteria;

may enroll such additional children in a Head Start program, in accordance with this subsection, if the program predominantly serves children who meet the low-income criteria.

(2) The Indian tribe shall enroll the children in the Head Start program in accordance with such requirements as the Secretary may specify by regulation promulgated after consultation with Indian tribes.

(3) In providing services through a Head Start program to such children, the Indian tribe may not use funds that the Secretary has determined, in accordance with section 640(g)(3), are to be used for expanding Head Start programs under this subchapter.

PROGRAMS FOR FAMILIES WITH INFANTS AND TODDLERS

Sec. 645A. (a) IN GENERAL.-- The Secretary shall make grants, in accordance with the provisions of this section for--

(1) programs providing family-centered services for low-income families with very young children designed to promote the development of the children, and to enable their parents to fulfill their roles as parents and to move toward self-sufficiency; and

(2) provision of training and technical assistance to entities carrying out programs, and evaluation of programs, that were supported under the Comprehensive Child Development Act (42 U.S.C. 9881 et seq.), as in effect on the day before the date of enactment of this section.

(b) SCOPE AND DESIGN OF PROGRAMS.-- In carrying out a program described in subsection (a), an entity receiving assistance under this section shall--

(1) provide, either directly or through referral, early, continuous, intensive, and comprehensive child development and family support services that will enhance the physical, social, emotional, and intellectual development of participating children;

(2) ensure that the level of services provided to families responds to their needs and circumstances;

(3) promote positive parent-child interactions;

(4) provide services to parents to support their role as parents and to help the families move toward self-sufficiency (including educational and employment services as appropriate);

(5) coordinate services with services provided by programs in the State and programs in the community to ensure a comprehensive array of services (such as health and mental health services);

(6) ensure formal linkages with local Head Start programs in order to provide for continuity of services for children and families;

(7) in the case of a Head Start agency that operates a program and that also provides Head Start services through the age of mandatory school attendance, ensure that children and families participating in the program receive such services through such age; and

(8) meet such other requirements concerning design and operation of the program described in subsection (a) as the Secretary may establish.

(c) PERSONS ELIGIBLE TO PARTICIPATE.-- Persons who may participate in programs described in subsection (a)(1) include--

(1) pregnant women; and

(2) families with children under age 3 (or under age 5, in the case of children served by an entity specified in subsection (e)(3));

who meet the income criteria specified for families in section 645(a)(1).

(d) ELIGIBLE SERVICE PROVIDERS.-- To be eligible to receive assistance under this section, an entity shall submit an application to the Secretary at such time, in such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary may require. Entities that may apply to carry out activities under this section include--

(1) entities operating Head Start programs under this subchapter;

(2) entities that, on the day before the date of enactment of this section, were operating--

(A) Parent-Child Centers receiving financial assistance under section 640(a)(4), as in effect on such date; or

(B) programs receiving financial assistance under the Comprehensive Child Development Act, as in effect on such date; and

(3) other public entities, and nonprofit private entities, capable of providing child and family services that meet the standards for participation in programs under this subchapter and meet such other appropriate requirements relating to the activities under this section as the Secretary may establish.

(e) TIME-LIMITED PRIORITY FOR CERTAIN ENTITIES.--

(1) IN GENERAL.-- From amounts allotted pursuant to paragraphs (2) and (4) of section 640(a), the Secretary shall provide financial assistance in accordance with paragraphs (2) through (4).

(2) PARENT-CHILD CENTERS.-- The Secretary shall make financial assistance available under this section for each of fiscal years 1995, 1996, and 1997 to any entity that--

(A) complies with subsection (b); and

(B) received funding as a Parent-Child Center pursuant to section 640(a)(4), as in effect on the day before the date of enactment of this section, for fiscal year 1994.

(3) COMPREHENSIVE CHILD DEVELOPMENT CENTERS.--

(A) In the case of an entity that received a grant for fiscal year 1994 to operate a project under the Comprehensive Child Development Act, the Secretary--

(i) shall make financial assistance available under this section, in a comparable amount and scope to the assistance provided for fiscal year 1994, for the duration of the project period specified in the grant award to such entity under such Act; and

(ii) shall permit such entity, in carrying out activities assisted under this section, to serve children from birth through age 5.

(B) In the case of an entity that received a grant for fiscal year 1989 to operate a project under the Comprehensive Child Development Act, the Secretary shall make assistance available under this section for each of fiscal years 1995, 1996, and 1997 to any entity that complies with subsection (b).

(4) EVALUATIONS, TRAINING, AND TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE.-- The Secretary shall make financial assistance available under this section as necessary to provide for the evaluation of, and furnishing of training and technical assistance to, programs specified in paragraph (3)(A).

35

(f) SELECTION OF OTHER GRANT RECIPIENTS.-- From the balance remaining of the portion specified in section 640(a)(6), after making grants to the eligible entities specified in subsection (e), the Secretary shall award grants under this subsection on a competitive basis to applicants meeting the criteria specified in subsection (d) (giving priority to entities with a record of providing early, continuous, and comprehensive childhood development and family services).

(g) DISTRIBUTION.-- In awarding grants to eligible applicants under this section, the Secretary shall--

(1) ensure an equitable national geographic distribution of the grants; and

(2) award grants to applicants proposing to serve communities in rural areas and to applicants proposing to serve communities in urban areas.

(h) SECRETARIAL RESPONSIBILITIES.--

(1) GUIDELINES.-- Not later than September 30, 1994, the Secretary shall develop program guidelines concerning the content and operation of programs assisted under this section--

(A) in consultation with experts in early childhood development, experts in health, and experts in family services; and

(B) taking into consideration the knowledge and experience gained from other early childhood programs, including programs under the Comprehensive Child Development Act, and from migrant Head Start programs that serve a large number of infants and toddlers.

(2) STANDARDS.-- Not later than December 30, 1994, the Secretary shall develop and publish performance standards for programs assisted under this section, and a grant announcement based on the guidelines developed under paragraph (1).

(3) MONITORING, TRAINING, TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE, AND EVALUATION.-- In order to ensure the successful operation of programs assisted under this section, the Secretary shall use funds from the balance described in subsection (f) to monitor the operation of such programs, evaluate their effectiveness, and provide training and technical assistance tailored to the particular needs of such programs.

APPEALS, NOTICE, AND HEARING

Sec. 646. [42 U.S.C. 9841] (a) The Secretary shall prescribe procedures to assure that -

(1) special notice of and an opportunity for a timely and expeditious appeal to the Secretary will be provided for an agency or organization which desires to serve as a delegate agency under this subchapter and whose application to the Head start agency has been wholly or substantially rejected or has not been acted upon within a period of time deemed reasonable by the Secretary, in accordance with regulations which the Secretary shall prescribe;

(2) financial assistance under this subchapter shall not be suspended, except in emergency situations, unless the recipient agency has been given reasonable notice and opportunity to show cause why such action should not be taken;

(3) financial assistance under this subchapter shall not be terminated or reduced, an application for refunding shall not be denied, and a suspension of financial assistance shall not be continued for longer than 30 days, unless the recipient has been afforded reasonable notice and opportunity for a full and fair hearing; and

(4) the Secretary shall develop and publish procedures (including mediation procedures) to be used in order to--

(A) resolve in a timely manner conflicts potentially leading to adverse action between--

(i) recipients of financial assistance under this subchapter; and

(ii) delegate agencies or Head Start Parent Policy Councils; and

(B) avoid the need for an administrative hearing on an adverse action.

(b) In prescribing procedures for the mediation described in subsection (a)(4), the Secretary shall specify--

(1) the date by which a Head Start agency engaged in a conflict described in subsection (a)(4) will notify the appropriate regional office of the Department of the conflict; and

(2) a reasonable period for the mediation.

(c) The Secretary shall also specify--

(1) a timeline for an administrative hearing, if necessary, on an adverse action; and

(2) a timeline by which the person conducting the administrative hearing shall issue a decision based on the hearing.

(d) In any case in which a termination, reduction, or suspension of financial assistance under this subchapter is upheld in an administrative hearing under this section, such termination, reduction, or suspension shall not be stayed pending any judicial appeal of such administrative decision.

(e)(1) The Secretary shall by regulation specify a process by which an Indian tribe may identify and establish an alternative agency, and request that the alternative agency be designated under section 641 as the Head Start agency providing services to the tribe, if--

(A) the Secretary terminates financial assistance under section 646 to the only agency that was receiving financial assistance to provide Head Start services to the Indian tribe; and

(B) the tribe would otherwise be precluded from providing such services to the members of the tribe.

(2) The regulation required by this subsection shall prohibit such designation of an alternative agency that includes an employee who--

(A) served on the administrative staff or program staff of the agency described in paragraph (1)(A); and

(B) was responsible for a deficiency that--

(i) relates to the performance standards or financial management standards described in section 641A(a)(1); and

(ii) was the basis for the termination of financial assistance described in paragraph (1)(A);

as determined by the Secretary after providing the notice and opportunity described in subsection (a)(3).

RECORDS AND AUDITS

Sec. 647. [42 U.S.C. 9842] (a) Each recipient of financial assistance under this subchapter shall keep such records as the Secretary shall prescribe, including records which fully disclose the amount and disposition by such recipient of the proceeds of such financial assistance, the total cost of the project or undertaking in connection with which such financial assistance is given or used, the amount of that portion of the cost of the project or undertaking supplied by other sources, and such other records as will facilitate an effective audit.

(b) The Secretary and the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives, shall have access for the purpose of audit and examination to any books, documents, papers, and records of the recipients that are pertinent to the financial assistance received under this subchapter.

TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE AND TRAINING

Sec. 648. [42 U.S.C. 9843] (a) The Secretary shall provide, directly or through grants or other arrangements (1) technical assistance to communities in developing, conducting, and administering programs under this subchapter; and (2) training for specialized or other personnel needed in connection with Head Start programs, in accordance with the process, and the provisions for allocating resources, set forth in subsections (b) and (c).

(b) The process for determining the technical assistance and training activities to be carried out under this section shall--

(1) ensure that the needs of local Head Start agencies and programs relating to improving program quality and to program expansion are addressed to the maximum extent feasible; and

(2) incorporate mechanisms to ensure responsiveness to local needs, including an ongoing procedure for obtaining input from the individuals and agencies carrying out Head Start programs.

(c) In allocating resources for technical assistance and training under this section, the Secretary shall--

(1) give priority consideration to activities to correct program and management deficiencies identified through reviews pursuant to section 641A(c) (including the provision of assistance to local programs in the development of quality improvement plans under section 641A(d)(2));

(2) address the training and career development needs of classroom staff (including instruction for providing services to children with disabilities) and nonclassroom staff, including home visitors and other staff working directly with families, including training relating to increasing parent involvement and services designed to increase family literacy and improve parenting skills;

(3) assist Head Start agencies and programs in conducting and participating in communitywide strategic planning and needs assessment;

(4) assist Head Start agencies and programs in developing full-working-day and full-calendar-year programs where community need is clearly identified and making the transition to such programs, with particular attention to involving parents and programming for children throughout a longer day;

(5) assist Head Start agencies in better serving the needs of families with very young children;

(6) assist Head Start agencies and programs in the development of sound management practices, including financial management procedures; and

(7) assist in efforts to secure and maintain adequate facilities for Head Start programs; and

(8) assist Head Start agencies in developing innovative program models, including mobile and home-based programs.

(d) The Secretary may provide, either directly or through grants to public or private nonprofit entities, training for Head Start personnel in the use of the performing and visual arts and interactive programs using electronic media to enhance the learning experience of Head Start children. Special consideration shall be given to entities that have demonstrated effectiveness in educational programming for preschool children that includes components for parental involvement, care provider training, and developmentally appropriate related activities.

(e) The Secretary shall provide, either directly or through grants or other arrangements, funds from programs authorized under this subchapter to support an organization to administer a centralized child development and national assessment program leading to recognized credentials for personnel working in early childhood development and child care programs, training for personnel providing services to non-English language background children, training for personnel in helping children cope with community violence, and resource access projects for personnel working with disabled children.

STAFF QUALIFICATIONS AND DEVELOPMENT

Sec. 648A. (a) CLASSROOM TEACHERS.--

(1) DEGREE REQUIREMENTS.-- The Secretary shall ensure that not later than September 30, 1996, each Head Start classroom in a center-based program is assigned one teacher who has--

(A) a child development associate (CDA) credential that is appropriate to the age of the children being served in center-based programs;

(B) a State-awarded certificate for preschool teachers that meets or exceeds the requirements for a child development associate credential;

(C) an associate, a baccalaureate, or an advanced degree in early childhood education; or

(D) a degree in a field related to early childhood education with experience in teaching preschool children and a State-awarded certificate to teach in a preschool program.

(2) WAIVER.-- On request, the Secretary shall grant a 180-day waiver of the requirements of paragraph (1) with respect to an individual who--

(A) is first employed after September 30, 1996, by a Head Start agency as a teacher for a Head Start classroom;

(B) is enrolled in a program that grants any credential, certificate, or degree specified in subparagraph (A), (B), (C), or (D) of paragraph (1); and

(C) will receive such credential under the terms of such program not later than 180 days after beginning employment as a teacher with such agency.

(3) LIMITATION.-- The Secretary may not grant more than one such waiver with respect to such individual.

(b) MENTOR TEACHERS.--

(1) DEFINITION; FUNCTION.-- For purposes of this subsection, the term "mentor teacher" means an individual responsible for observing and assessing the classroom activities of a Head Start program and providing on-the-job guidance and training to the Head Start program staff and volunteers, in order to improve the qualifications and training of classroom staff, to maintain high quality education services, and to promote career development, in Head Start programs.

(2) REQUIREMENT.-- In order to assist Head Start agencies in establishing positions for mentor teachers, the Secretary shall--

(A) provide technical assistance and training to enable Head Start agencies to establish such positions;

(B) give priority consideration, in providing assistance pursuant to subparagraph (A), to Head Start programs that have substantial numbers of new classroom staff, that are experiencing difficulty in meeting applicable education standards, or that lack staff of a similar cultural background to that of the participating children and their families;

(C) encourage Head Start programs to give priority consideration for such positions to Head Start teachers at the appropriate level of career advancement in such programs; and

(D) promote the development of model curricula, designed to ensure the attainment of appropriate competencies of mentor teachers in Head Start programs.

(c) FAMILY SERVICE WORKERS.-- In order to improve the quality and effectiveness of staff providing in-home and other services (including needs assessment, development of service plans, family advocacy, and coordination of service delivery) to families of children participating in Head Start programs, the Secretary, in coordination with concerned public and private agencies and organizations examining the issues of standards and training for family service workers, shall--

(1) review and, as necessary, revise or develop new qualification standards for Head Start staff providing such services;

(2) promote the development of model curricula (on subjects including parenting training and family literacy) designed to ensure the attainment of appropriate competencies by individuals working or planning to work in the field of early childhood and family services; and

(3) promote the establishment of a credential that indicates attainment of the competencies and that is accepted nationwide.

(d) HEAD START FELLOWSHIPS.--

(1) AUTHORITY.-- The Secretary may establish a program of fellowships, to be known as 'Head Start Fellowships', in accordance with this subsection. The Secretary may award the fellowships to individuals, to be known as 'Head Start Fellows', who are staff in local Head Start programs or other individuals working in the field of child development and family services.

(2) PURPOSE.-- The fellowship program established under this subsection shall be designed to enhance the ability of Head Start Fellows to make significant contributions to programs authorized under this subchapter, by providing opportunities to expand their knowledge and experience through exposure to activities, issues, resources, and new approaches, in the field of child development and family services.

(3) ASSIGNMENTS OF FELLOWS.--

(A) PLACEMENT SITES.-- Fellowship positions under the fellowship program may be located (subject to subparagraphs (B) and (C))--

(i) in agencies of the Department of Health and Human Services administering programs authorized under this subchapter (in national or regional offices of such agencies);

(ii) in local Head Start agencies and programs;

(iii) in institutions of higher education;

(iv) in public or private entities and organizations concerned with services to children and families; and

(v) in other appropriate settings.

(B) LIMITATION FOR FELLOWS OTHER THAN HEAD START EMPLOYEES.-- A Head Start Fellow who is not an employee of a local Head Start agency or program may be placed only in a fellowship position located in an agency or program specified in clause (i) or (ii) of subparagraph (A).

(C) NO PLACEMENT IN LOBBYING ORGANIZATIONS.-- Head Start Fellowship positions may not be located in any agency whose primary purpose, or one of whose major purposes, is to influence Federal, State, or local legislation.

(4) SELECTION OF FELLOWS.-- Head Start Fellowships shall be awarded on a competitive basis to individuals (other than Federal

employees) selected from among applicants who are working, on the date of application, in local Head Start programs or otherwise working in the field of child development and children and family services.

(5) DURATION.-- Head Start Fellowships shall be for terms of 1 year, and may be renewed for a term of 1 additional year.

(6) AUTHORIZED EXPENDITURES.-- From amounts appropriated under this subchapter and allotted under section 640(a)(2)(D), the Secretary is authorized to make expenditures of not to exceed $1,000,000 for any fiscal year, for stipends and other reasonable expenses of the fellowship program.

(7) STATUS OF FELLOWS.-- Except as otherwise provided in this paragraph, Head Start Fellows shall not be considered to be employees or otherwise in the service or employment of the Federal Government. Head Start Fellows shall be considered to be employees for purposes of compensation for injuries under chapter 81 of title 5, United States Code. Head Start Fellows assigned to positions located in agencies specified in paragraph (3)(A)(i) shall be considered employees in the executive branch of the Federal Government for the purposes of chapter 11 of title 18, United States Code, and for purposes of any administrative standards of conduct applicable to the employees of the agency to which they are assigned.

(8) REGULATIONS.-- The Secretary shall promulgate regulations to carry out this subsection.

(e) MODEL STAFFING PLANS.-- Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this subsection, the Secretary, in consultation with appropriate public agencies, private agencies, and organizations and with individuals with expertise in the field of children and family services, shall develop model staffing plans to provide guidance to local Head Start agencies and programs on the numbers, types, responsibilities, and qualifications of staff required to operate a Head Start program.

RESEARCH, DEMONSTRATIONS, AND EVALUATION

Sec. 649. (a) IN GENERAL.--

(1) REQUIREMENT; GENERAL PURPOSES.-- The Secretary shall carry out a continuing program of research, demonstration, and evaluation activities, in order to--

(A) foster continuous improvement in the quality of the Head Start programs under this subchapter and in their effectiveness in enabling participating children and their families to succeed in school and otherwise; and

(B) use the Head Start programs to develop, test, and disseminate new ideas and approaches for addressing the needs of low-income preschool children (including children with disabilities) and their families and communities (including demonstrations of innovative noncenter-based program models such as home-based and mobile programs), and otherwise to further the purposes of this subchapter.

(2) PLAN.-- The Secretary shall develop, and periodically update, a plan governing the research, demonstration, and evaluation activities under this section.

(b) CONDUCT OF RESEARCH, DEMONSTRATION, AND EVALUATION ACTIVITIES.-- The Secretary, in order to conduct research, demonstration, and evaluation activities under this section--

(1) may carry out such activities directly, or through grants to, or contracts or cooperative agreements with, public or private entities;

(2) shall, to the extent appropriate, undertake such activities in collaboration with other Federal agencies, and with non-Federal agencies, conducting similar activities;

(3) shall ensure that evaluation of activities in a specific program or project is conducted by persons not directly involved in the operation of such program or project;

(4) may require Head Start agencies to provide for independent evaluations;

(5) may approve, in appropriate cases, community-based cooperative research and evaluation efforts to enable Head Start programs to collaborate with qualified researchers not directly involved in program administration or operation; and

(6) may collaborate with organizations with expertise in inclusive educational strategies for preschoolers with disabilities.

(c) CONSULTATION AND COLLABORATION.-- In carrying out activities under this section, the Secretary shall--

(1) consult with--

(A) individuals from relevant academic disciplines;

(B) individuals who are involved in the operation of Head Start programs and individuals who are involved in the operation of other child and family service programs; and

(C) individuals from other Federal agencies, and individuals from organizations, involved with children and families, ensuring that the individuals described in this subparagraph reflect the multicultural nature of the children and families served by the Head Start programs and the multidisciplinary nature of the Head Start programs;

(2) whenever feasible and appropriate, obtain the views of persons participating in and served by programs and projects assisted under this subchapter with respect to activities under this section; and

(3) establish, to the extent appropriate, working relationships with the faculties of institutions of higher education, as defined in section 1201(a) of the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1141(a)), located in the area in which any evaluation under this section is being conducted, unless there is no such institution of higher education willing and able to participate in such evaluation.

(d) SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES.--The research, demonstration, and evaluation activities under this subchapter shall include components designed to--

(1) permit ongoing assessment of the quality and effectiveness of the programs under this subchapter;

(2) contribute to developing knowledge concerning factors associated with the quality and effectiveness of Head Start programs and in identifying ways in which services provided under this subchapter may be improved;

(3) assist in developing knowledge concerning the factors that promote or inhibit healthy development and effective functioning of children and their families both during and following participation in a Head Start program;

(4) permit comparisons of children and families participating in Head Start programs with children and families receiving other child care, early childhood education, or child development services and with other appropriate control groups;

(5) contribute to understanding the characteristics and needs of population groups eligible for services provided under this subchapter and the impact of such services on the individuals served and the communities in which such services are provided;

(6) provide for disseminating and promoting the use of the findings from such research, demonstration, and evaluation activities; and

(7) promote exploration of areas in which knowledge is insufficient, and that will otherwise contribute to fulfilling the purposes of this subchapter.

(e) LONGITUDINAL STUDIES.-- In developing priorities for research, demonstration, and evaluation activities under this section, the Secretary shall give special consideration to longitudinal studies that--

(1) examine the developmental progress of children and their families both during and following participation in a Head Start program, including the examination of factors that contribute to or detract from such progress;

(2) examine factors related to improving the quality of the Head Start programs and the preparation the programs provide for children and their families to function effectively in schools and other settings in the years following participation in such a program; and

(3) as appropriate, permit comparison of children and families participating in Head Start programs with children and families receiving other child care, early childhood education, or child development services, and with other appropriate control groups.

(f) OWNERSHIP OF RESULTS.-- The Secretary shall take necessary steps to ensure that all studies, reports, proposals, and data produced or developed with Federal funds under this subchapter shall become the property of the United States.

REPORTS

Sec. 650. [42 U.S.C. §9846] At least once during every 2-year period, the Secretary shall prepare and submit, to the Committee on Education and Labor of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Labor and Human Resources of the Senate, a report concerning the status of children (including disabled and non-English language background children) in Head Start programs, including the number of children and the services being provided to such children. Such report shall include--

(1) a statement for the then most recently concluded fiscal year specifying--

(A) the amount of funds received by Head Start agencies designated under section 641 to provide Head Start services in a period before such fiscal year; and

(B) the amount of funds received by Head Start agencies newly designated under section 641 to provide such services in such fiscal year;

(2) a description of the distribution of Head Start services relative to the distribution of children who are eligible to participate in Head Start programs, including geographic distribution within States;

(3) a statement identifying how funds expended under section 640(a)(2), and funds allotted under section 640(a)(3), were distributed and used at national, regional, and local levels;

(4) a statement specifying the amount of funds provided by the State, and by local sources, to carry out Head Start programs;

(5) cost per child and how such cost varies by region;

(6) a description of the level and nature of participation of parents in Head Start programs as volunteers and in other capacities;

(7) information concerning Head Start staff, including salaries, education, training, experience, and staff turnover;

(8) information concerning children participating in programs that receive Head Start funding, including information on family income, racial and ethnic background, disability, and receipt of benefits under part A of title IV of the Social Security Act;

(9) the use and source of funds to extend Head Start services to operate full-day and year round;

(10) using data from the monitoring conducted under section 641A(c)--

(A) a description of the extent to which programs funded under this subchapter comply with performance standards and regulations in effect under this subchapter;

(B) a description of the types and conditions of facilities in which such programs are located;

(C) the types of organizations that receive Head Start funds under such programs; and

(D) the number of children served under each program option;

(11) the information contained in the documents entitled "Program Information Report" and "Head Start Cost Analyses System" (or any document similar to either), prepared with respect to Head Start programs;

(12) a description of the types of services provided to children and their families, both on-site and through referrals, including health, mental health, dental care, parenting education, physical fitness, and literacy training;

(13) a summary of information concerning the research, demonstration, and evaluation activities conducted under section 649, including--

(A) a status report on ongoing activities; and

(B) results, conclusions, and recommendations, not included in any previous report, based on completed activities; and

(14) a study of the delivery of Head Start programs to Indian children living on and near Indian reservations, to children of Alaskan Natives, and to children of migrant and seasonal farmworkers.

Promptly after submitting such report to the Committee on Education and Labor of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Labor and Human Resources of the Senate, the Secretary shall publish in the Federal Register a notice indicating that such report is available to the public and specifying how such report may be obtained.

COMPARABILITY OF WAGES

Sec. 653. [42 U.S.C. 9848] The Secretary shall take such action as may be necessary to assure that persons employed in carrying out programs financed under this subchapter shall not receive compensation at a rate which is (1) in excess of the average rate of compensation paid in the area where the program is carried out to a substantial number of persons providing substantially comparable services, or in excess of the average rate of compensation paid to a substantial number of the persons providing substantially comparable services in the area of the person's immediately preceding employment, whichever is higher; or (2) less than the minimum wage rate prescribed in section 6(a)(1) of the Fair Labor Standards Act of 1938. The Secretary shall encourage Head Start agencies to provide compensation according to salary scales that are based on training and experience.

NONDISCRIMINATION PROVISIONS

Sec. 654. [42 U.S.C. 9849] (a) The Secretary shall not provide financial assistance for any program, project, or activity under this subchapter unless the grant or contract with respect thereto specifically provides that no person with responsibilities in the operation thereof will discriminate with respect to any such program, project, or activity because of race, creed, color, national origin, sex, political affiliation, or beliefs.

(b) No person in the United States shall on the ground of sex be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, be subjected to discrimination under, or be denied employment in connection with any program or activity receiving assistance under this subchapter. The Secretary shall enforce the provisions of the preceding sentence in accordance with section 602 of the Civil Rights Act of 1964. Section 603 of such Act shall apply with respect to any action taken by the Secretary to enforce such sentence. This section shall not be construed as affecting any other legal remedy that a person may have if such person is excluded from participation in, denied the benefit of, subjected to discrimination under, or denied employment in connection with, any program, project, or activity receiving assistance under this subchapter.

(c) The Secretary shall not provide financial assistance for any program, project, or activity under this subchapter unless the grant or contract relating to the financial assistance specifically provides that no person with responsibilities in the operation of the program, project, or activity will discriminate against any individual because of a handicapping condition in violation of section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973.

LIMITATION WITH RESPECT TO CERTAIN UNLAWFUL ACTIVITIES

Sec. 655. [42 U.S.C. 9850] No individual employed or assigned by any Head Start agency or other agency assisted under this subchapter shall, pursuant to or during the performance of services rendered in connection with any program or activity conducted or assisted under this subchapter by such Head Start agency or such other agency, plan, initiate, participate in, or otherwise aid or assist in the conduct of any unlawful demonstration, rioting, or civil disturbance.

POLITICAL ACTIVITIES

Sec. 656. [42 U.S.C. 9851] (a) For purposes of chapter 15 of title 5, United States Code, any agency which assumes responsibility for planning, developing, and coordinating Head Start programs and receives assistance under this subchapter shall be deemed to be a State or local agency. For purposes of clauses (1) and (2) of section 150(a) of such title, any agency receiving assistance under this subchapter shall be deemed to be a State or local agency.

(b) Programs assisted under this subchapter shall not be carried on in a manner involving the use of program funds, the provision of services, or the employment or assignment of personnel in a manner supporting or resulting in the identification of such programs with (1) any partisan or nonpartisan political activity or any other political activity associated with a candidate, or contending faction or group, in an election for public or party office; (2) any activity to provide voters or prospective voters with transportation to the polls or similar assistance in connection with any such election; or (3) any voter registration activity. The Secretary, after consultation with the Office of Personnel Management, shall issue rules and regulations to provide for the enforcement of this section, which shall include provisions for summary suspension of assistance or other action necessary to permit enforcement on an emergency basis.

ADVANCE FUNDING

Sec. 657. [42 U.S.C. 9852] For the purpose of affording adequate notice of funding available under this subchapter, appropriations for carrying out this subchapter are authorized to be included in an appropriation Act for the fiscal year preceding the fiscal year for which they are available for obligation.

CONSULTATION WITH THE CORPORATION FOR NATIONAL AND COMMUNITY SERVICE

Sec. 657A. The Secretary shall consult with the Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation for National and Community Service regarding the dissemination of information about the Corporation's programs, to programs that receive funds under this subchapter.

The Human Services Amendments of 1994 provisions regarding Head Start which are not amendments to the Head Start Act:

SEC. 120. STUDY OF BENEFITS FOR HEAD START EMPLOYEES

(a) STUDY.-- The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall conduct a study regarding the benefits available to individuals employed by Head Start agencies under the Head Start Act (42 U.S.C. 9831 et seq.).

(b) REPORT.--

(1) PREPARATION.-- The Secretary shall prepare a report, containing the results of the study, that--

(A) describes the benefits, including health care benefits, family and medical leave, and retirement pension benefits, available to such individuals;

(B) includes recommendations for increasing the access of the individuals to benefits, including access to a retirement pension program; and

(C) addresses the feasibility of participation by such individuals in the Federal Employees' Retirement System under chapter 84 of title 5, United States Code.

(2) SUBMISSION.-- The Secretary shall submit the report to the appropriate committees of Congress.

SEC. 126. STUDY OF FULL-DAY AND FULL-YEAR HEAD START PROGRAMS

(a) STUDY.-- The Secretary of Health and Human Services shall conduct a study of the extent to which Head Start programs are addressing the need for Head Start services during a full-working-day or full-calendar-year among eligible low-income families with preschool children.

(b) REPORT.-- The Secretary shall prepare and submit a report to the Committee on Education and Labor of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Labor and Human Resources of the Senate not later than January 31, 1997, containing the results of the study, including--

(1) the number of eligible children in need of full-day or full-year Head Start programs;

(2) the number of full-day, full-year Head Start programs and the number of children served in such program[s] and those provided full-day or full-year services through cooperative arrangements with other funding sources;

(3) a description of promising models currently employed by Head Start programs for meeting such needs both directly and through arrangements with other service providers;

(4) a description of the barriers to meeting the need for full-day, full-year care among such families; and

(5) recommendations on how the barriers could be eliminated in order to meet the needs of children and families served.

SEC. 127. EFFECTIVE DATE AND APPLICATION

(a) EFFECTIVE DATE.-- This title, and the amendments made by this title shall take effect on the date of enactment of this title.

(b) APPLICATION.-- The requirements of this title and the amendments made by this title shall not apply to Head Start agencies and other recipients of financial assistance under the Head Start Act until October 1, 1994.

MANUAL FOR HEAD START ADMINISTRATORS

PART II

HEAD START REGULATIONS

CHAPTER XIII—OFFICE OF HUMAN DEVELOPMENT SERVICES, DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES

SUBCHAPTER A—OFFICE OF HUMAN DEVELOPMENT SERVICES, GENERAL PROVISIONS [RESERVED]

SUBCHAPTER B—THE ADMINISTRATION FOR CHILDREN, YOUTH AND FAMILIES, HEAD START PROGRAM

Part *Page*
1301 Head Start grants administration 201
1302 Policies and procedures for selection, initial funding, and refunding of Head Start grantees, and for selection of replacement grantees 208
1303 Appeal Procedures for Head Start grantees and current or prospective delegate agencies 212
1304 Program performance standards for operation of Head Start programs by grantees and delegate agencies 225
1305 Eligibility, recruitment, selection, enrollment and attendance in Head Start 242
1306 Head Start staffing requirements and program options 247
1308 Head Start program performance standards on services for children with disabilities 253

SUBCHAPTER A—OFFICE OF HUMAN DEVELOPMENT SERVICES, GENERAL PROVISIONS [RESERVED]

SUBCHAPTER B—THE ADMINISTRATION FOR CHILDREN, YOUTH AND FAMILIES, HEAD START PROGRAM

PART 1301—HEAD START GRANTS ADMINISTRATION

Subpart A—General

Sec.
1301.1 Purpose and scope.
1301.2 Definitions.

Subpart B—General Requirements

1301.10 General.
1301.11 Insurance and bonding.
1301.12 Annual audit of Head Start programs.
1301.13 Accounting system certification.

Subpart C—Federal Financial Assistance

1301.20 Matching requirements.
1301.21 Criteria for increase in Federal financial assistance.

Subpart D—Personnel and General Administration

1301.30 General requirements.
1301.31 Personnel policies.
1301.32 Limitations on costs of development and administration of a Head Start program.
1301.33 Delegation of program operations.
1301.34 Grantee appeals.

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 9831 et seq.

SOURCE: 44 FR 24061, Apr. 24, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General

§ 1301.1 Purpose and scope.

This part establishes regulations applicable to program administration and grants management for all grants under the Act, including grants for technical assistance and training and grants for research, demonstration, and pilot projects.

§ 1301.2 Definitions.

For the purposes of this part, unless the context requires otherwise:

Act means title V of the Economic Opportunity Act of 1964, as amended.

Budget period means the interval of time, into which a multi-year period of assistance (project period) is divided for budgetary and funding purposes.

Community means a city, county, a multi-city or multi-county unit within a state, an Indian reservation, or any neighborhood or other geographic area (irrespective of boundaries or political subdivisions) which provides a suitable organizational base and possesses the commonality of interest needed to operate a Head Start program.

Delegate agency means a public or private non-profit organization or agency to which a grantee has delegated all or part of its responsibility for operating a Head Start program.

Development and administrative costs mean costs incurred in accordance with an approved Head Start budget which do not directly relate to the provision of program component services, including services to children with disabilities, as set forth and described in the Head Start program performance standards (45 CFR part 1304).

Dual benefit costs mean costs incurred in accordance with an approved Head Start budget which directly relate to both development and administrative functions and to the program component services, including services to children with disabilities, as set forth and described in the Head Start program performance standards (45 CFR part 1304).

Head Start Agency or "grantee" means a local public or private nonprofit agency designated to operate a Head Start program by the responsible HHS official, in accordance with part 1302 of this chapter.

Head Start program means a program, funded under the Act and carried out by a Head Start agency or a delegate agency, that provides ongoing comprehensive child development services.

Independent auditor means an individual accountant or an accounting firm, public or private agency, association, corporation, or partnership, that is sufficiently independent of the agency being audited to render objective and unbiased opinions, conclusions, and judgments.

Indirect costs mean those costs of a Head Start agency, as approved by the cognizant agency, the agency which has authority to set the grantee's indirect cost rate, which are not readily identifiable with a particular project or program but nevertheless are necessary to the general operation of the agency and the conduct of its activities.

Major disaster means any natural disaster or catastrophe which is of such severity and magnitude as to directly affect the capability of the Head Start agency of agencies providing Head Start programs to the damaged community to continue the programs without an increase in the Federal share above 80 percent.

Program costs mean costs incurred in accordance with an approved Head Start budget which directly relate to the provision of program component services, including services to children with disabilities, as set forth and described in the Head Start Program Performance Standards (45 CFR part 1304).

Responsible HHS official means the official of the Department of Health and Human Services who has authority to make grants under the Act.

Total approved costs mean the sum of all costs of the Head Start program approved for a given budget period by the Administration on Children, Youth and Families, as indicated on the Financial Assistance Award. Total approved costs consist of the Federal share plus any approved non-Federal share, including non-Federal share above the statutory minimum.

[44 FR 24061, Apr. 24, 1979, as amended at 57 FR 41884, Sept. 14, 1992]

Subpart B—General Requirements

§ 1301.10 General.

(a) Except as specified in paragraph (b) of this section, the following HHS regulations shall apply to all grants made under the Act:

45 CFR part 16 Department grant appeals process (except as provided in § 1301.34)

45 CFR part 46 Protection of Human Subjects

45 CFR part 74 Administration of grants

45 CFR part 75 Informal grant appeals procedures (Indirect cost rates and other cost allocations)

45 CFR part 80 Nondiscrimination under programs receiving Federal assistance through the Department of Health and Human Services—Effectuation of title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964

45 CFR part 81 Practice and procedure for hearings under part 80

45 CFR part 84 Nondiscrimination on the basis of handicap in Federally assisted programs.

(b) 45 CFR part 74 is superseded as follows:

(1) Section 1301.11 of this subpart supersedes § 74.15 of part 74 with respect to insurance and bonding of private, non-profit Head Start agencies; and

(2) Section 1301.12 of this subpart supersedes § 74.61 of part 74 with respect to audit requirements for all Head Start agencies.

§ 1301.11 Insurance and bonding.

(a) Private nonprofit Head Start agencies and their delegate agencies shall carry reasonable amounts of student accident insurance, liability insurance for accidents of their premises, and transportation liability insurance.

(b) Private nonprofit Head Start and delegate agencies shall make arrangements for bonding officials and employees authorized to disburse program funds.

§ 1301.12 Annual audit of Head Start programs.

(a) An audit of the Head Start program covering the prior budget period of each Head Start agency and its delegate agencies, if any, shall be made by an independent auditor to determine:

(1) Whether the agency's financial statements are accurate;

(2) Whether the agency is complying with the terms and conditions of the grant; and

(3) Whether appropriate financial and administrative procedures and controls have been installed and are operating effectively. Head Start agencies shall either include delegate agency audits as a part of their own audits or provide

for separate independent audits of their delegate agencies.

(b) Upon a written request showing necessity, the responsible HHS official may approve a period other than the prior budget period to be covered by the annual audit.

(c) Unless otherwise approved by the responsible HHS official, the report of the audit shall be submitted to the responsible HHS official, in the manner and form prescribed by him or her, within 4 months after the prior budget period.

§ 1301.13 Accounting system certification.

(a) Upon request by the responsible HHS official, each Head Start agency or its delegate agency shall submit an accounting system certification, prepared by an independent auditor, stating that the accounting system or systems established by the Head Start agency, or its delegate, has appropriate internal controls for safeguarding assets, checking the accuracy and reliability of accounting data, and promoting operating efficiency.

(b) A Head Start agency shall not delegate any of its Head Start program responsibilities to a delegate agency prior to receiving a certification that the delegate agency's accounting system meets the requirements specified in paragraph (a) of this section.

Subpart C—Federal Financial Assistance

§ 1301.20 Matching requirements.

(a) Federal financial assistance granted under the act for a Head Start program shall not exceed 80 percent of the total costs of the program, unless:

(1) An amount in excess of that percentage is approved under section 1301.21; or

(2) The Head Start agency received Federal financial assistance in excess of 80 percent for any budget period falling within fiscal year 1973 or fiscal year 1974. Under the circumstances described in clause

(3) Of the preceding sentence, the agency is entitled to receive the same percentage of Federal financial assistance that it received during such budget periods.

(b) The non-Federal share will not be required to exceed 20 percent of the total costs of the program.

(c) Federal financial assistance awarded to Head Start grantees for training and technical assistance activities shall be included in the Federal share in determining the total approved costs of the program. Such financial assistance is, therefore, subject to the 20 percent non-Federal matching requirement of this subpart.

[44 FR 24061, Apr. 24, 1979, as amended at 57 FR 41884, Sept. 14, 1992]

§ 1301.21 Criteria for increase in Federal financial assistance.

The responsible HHS official, on the basis of a written application and any supporting evidence he or she may require, will approve financial assistance in excess of 80 percent if he or she concludes that the Head Start agency has made a reasonable effort to meet its required non-Federal share but is unable to do so; and the Head Start agency is located in a county:

(a) That has a personal per capita income of less that $3,000 per year; or

(b) That has been involved in a major disaster.

Subpart D—Personnel and General Administration

§ 1301.30 General requirements.

Head Start agencies and delegate agencies shall conduct the Head Start program in an effective and efficient manner, free of political bias or family favoritism. Each agency shall also provide reasonable public access to information and to the agency's records pertaining to the Head Start program.

§ 1301.31 Personnel policies.

(a) Head Start agencies must establish and implement personnel policies for themselves and their delegate agencies. At a minimum, such policies must govern the following: staff qualifications, recruitment and selection, classification of positions, salaries, employee benefits (including leave, holidays, overtime, and fringe benefits), conflicts of interest, official travel, career development, performance evaluations, and employee management relations (including employee grievances and adverse actions).

(b) The policies must be in writing, approved by the Head Start Policy Council or Committee, and made available to all Head Start grantee and delegate agency employees.

(c) The policies must require that all prospective employees must sign a declaration prior to employment which lists:

(1) All pending and prior criminal arrests and charges related to child sexual abuse and their disposition;

(2) Convictions related to other forms of child abuse and/or neglect; and

(3) All convictions of violent felonies.

(d) The declaration required by paragraph (c) of this section may exclude:

(1) Traffic fines of $50.00 or less;

(2) Any offense, other than any offense related to child abuse and/or child sexual abuse or violent felonies, committed before the prospective employee's 18th birthday, which was finally adjudicated in a juvenile court or under a youth offender law;

(3) Any conviction the record of which has been expunged under Federal or State law; and

(4) Any conviction set aside under the Federal Youth Corrections Act or similar State authority.

(e) The policies governing recruitment and selection of staff must require that before an employee is hired for a probationary period, the grantee or delegate agency will have conducted:

(1) An interview of the applicant, and

(2) A check of personal and employment references provided by the applicant, including verification of the accurary of the information provided by the applicant.

(f) The policies governing recruitment and selection of staff must provide for a probationary period for all new employees that allows time to monitor employee performance and to examine and act on the results of criminal record checks discussed in paragraph (g) of this section.

(g)(1) The personal policies governing recruitment and selection of permanent Head Start staff must require that before staff are hired on a permanent basis, the grantee or delegate agency will have conducted a State and/or national criminal record check if required by State law and/or administrative requirement.

(2) An agency must not adopt an arbitrary policy of refusal to hire solely on the basis of arrest, a pending criminal charge, or a conviction. The agency must review each case in order to assess the relevancy of an arrest charge or conviction to a hiring decision.

(h) Grantees or delegate agencies must develop a plan for responding to suspected or known child abuse or sexual abuse of Head Start children whether it occurs inside or outside the program. The policy was originally promulgated in the January 26, 1977 FEDERAL REGISTER (42 FR 4970–4971), "Identification and Reporting of Child Abuse and Neglect," and is published as an appendix to this section.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0980–0173)

[53 FR 5979, Feb. 29, 1988]

APPENDIX A TO § 1301.31—IDENTIFICATION AND REPORTING OF CHILD ABUSE AND NEGLECT

The Chapter N–30–356–1 in the Head Start Policy Manual reads as follows:

N–30–356–1–00 Purpose.
10 Scope.
20 Applicable law and policy.
30 Policy.

AUTHORITY: 80 Stat. 2304 (42 U.S.C. 2928h).

N–30–356–1–00 *Purpose.* This chapter sets forth the policy governing the prevention, identification, treatment, and reporting of child abuse and neglect in Head Start.

N–30–356–1–10 *Scope.* This policy applies to all Head Start and delegate agencies that operate or propose to operate a Full-Year or Summer Head Start program, or experimental or demonstration programs funded by Head Start. This issuance constitutes Head Start policy and noncompliance with this policy will result in appropriate action by the responsible HEW official.

N–30–356–1–20 *Applicable law and policy.* Section 511 of the Headstart-Follow Through Act, Pub. L. 93–644, requires Head Start agencies to provide comprehensive health, nutritional educational, social and other services to the children to attain their full potential. The prevention, identification, treatment, and reporting of child abuse and neglect is a part of the social services in Head Start. In order for a State to be eligible for grants under the Child Abuse Prevention and Treatment Act (hereinafter called "the Act"), Pub. L. 93–247, the State must have a child abuse and neglect reporting law which defines "child abuse and neglect" substantially as that term is defined in the regulations implementing the Act, 45 CFR 1340.1-2(b). That definition is as follows:

A. "(b) 'Child abuse and neglect' means harm or threatened harm to a child's health or welfare by a person responsible for the child's health or welfare.

"1. 'Harm or threatened harm to a child's health or welfare' can occur through: Nonaccidental physical or mental injury; sexual abuse, as defined by State law; or neglectful treatment or maltreatment, including the failure to provide adequate food, clothing, or shelter. Provided, however, that a parent or guardian legitimately practicing his religious beliefs who thereby does not provide specified medical treatment for a child, for that reason alone shall not be considered a negligent parent or guardian; however, such an exception shall not preclude a court from ordering that medical services to be provided to the child, where his health requires it.

"2. 'Child' means a person under the age of eighteen.

"3. 'A person responsible for a child's health or welfare' includes the child's parent, guardian, or other person responsible for the child's health or welfare, whether in the same home as the child, a relative's home, a foster care home, or a residential institution."

In addition, among other things, the State would have to provide for the reporting of known or suspected instances of child abuse and neglect.

It is to be anticipated that States will attempt to comply with these requirements. However, a Head Start program, in dealing with and reporting child abuse and neglect, will be subject to and will act in accordance with the law of the State in which it operates whether or not that law meets the requirements of the Act. Thus, it is the intention of this policy in the interest of the protection of children to insure compliance with and, in some respects, to supplement State or local law, not to supersede it. Thus, the phrase "child abuse and neglect," as used herein, refers to both the definition of abuse and neglect under applicable State or local law, and the evidentiary standard required for reporters under applicable State or local law.

N-30-356-1-30 *Policy—A. General provisions.* 1. Head start agencies and delegate agencies must report child abuse and neglect in accordance with the provisions of applicable State or local law.

a. In those States and localities with laws which require such reporting by pre-school and day care staff, Head Start agencies and delegate agencies must report to the State or local agencies designated by the State under applicable State or local Child Abuse and Neglect reporting law.

b. In those States and localities in which such reporting by pre-school and day care staff is "permissive" under State or local law, Head Start agencies and delegate agencies must report child abuse and neglect if applicable State or local law provides immunity from civil and criminal liability for goodfaith voluntary reporting.

2. Head Start agencies and delegate agencies will preserve the confidentiality of all records pertaining to child abuse or neglect in accordance with applicable State or local law.

3. Consistent with this policy, Head Start programs will not undertake, on their own, to treat cases of child abuse and neglect. Head Start programs will, on the other hand, cooperate fully with child protective service agencies in their communities and make every effort to retain in their programs children allegedly abused or neglected—recognizing that the child's participation in Head Start may be essential in assisting families with abuse or neglect problems.

4. With the approval of the policy council, Head Start programs may wish to make a special effort to include otherwise eligible children suffering from abuse or neglect, as referred by the child protective services agency.

However, it must be emphasized that Head Start is not nor is it to become a primary instrument for the treatment of child abuse and neglect. Nevertheless, Head Start has an important preventative role to play in respect to child abuse and neglect.

B. *Special provisions*—1. *Staff responsibility.* Directors of Head Start agencies and delegate agencies that have not already done so shall immediately designate a staff member who will have responsibility for:

a. Establishing and maintaining cooperative relationships with the agencies providing child protective services in the community, and with any other agency to which child abuse and neglect must be reported under State law, including regular formal and informal communication with staff at all levels of the agencies;

b. Informing parents and staff of what State and local laws require in cases of child abuse and neglect;

c. Knowing what community medical and social services are available for families with an abuse or neglect problem;

d. Reporting instances of child abuse and neglect among Head Start children reportable under State law on behalf of the Head Start program;

e. Discussing the report with the family if it appears desirable or necessary to do so;

f. Informing other staff regarding the process for identifying and reporting child abuse and neglect. (In a number of States it is a statutory requirement for professional child-care staff to report abuse and neglect. Each

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

program should establish a procedure for identification and reporting.)

2. *Training.* Head Start agencies and delegate agencies shall provide orientation and training for staff on the identification and reporting of child abuse and neglect. They should provide an orientation for parents on the need to prevent abuse and neglect and provide protection for abused and neglected children. Such orientation ought to foster a helpful rather than a punitive attitude toward abusing or neglecting parents and other caretakers.

[53 FR 5979, Feb. 29, 1988]

§ 1301.32 Limitations on costs of development and administration of a Head Start program.

(a) *General provisions.* (1) Allowable costs for developing and administering a Head Start program may not exceed 15 percent of the total approved costs of the program, unless the responsible HHS official grants a waiver approving a higher percentage for a specific period of time not to exceed twelve months.

(2) The limit of 15 percent for development and administrative costs is a maximum. In cases where the costs for development and administration are at or below 15 percent, but are judged by the responsible HHS official to be excessive, the grantee must eliminate excessive development and administrative costs.

(b) *Development and administrative costs.* (1) Costs classified as development and administrative costs are those costs related to the overall management of the program. These costs can be in both the personnel and non-personnel categories.

(2) Grantees must charge the costs of organization-wide management functions as development and administrative costs. These functions include planning, coordination and direction; budgeting, accounting, and auditing; and management of purchasing, property, payroll and personnel.

(3) Development and administrative costs include, but are not limited to, the salaries of the executive director, personnel officer, fiscal officer/bookkeeper, purchasing officer, payroll/insurance/property clerk, janitor for administrative office space, and costs associated with volunteers carrying out administrative functions.

(4) Other development and administrative costs include expenses related to administrative staff functions such as the costs allocated to fringe benefits, travel, per diem, transportation and training.

(5) Development and administrative costs include expenses related to bookkeeping and payroll services, audits, and bonding; and, to the extent they support development and administrative functions and activities, the costs of insurance, supplies, copy machines, postage, and utilities, and occupying, operating and maintaining space.

(c) *Program costs.* Program costs include, but are not limited to:

(1) Personnel and non-personnel costs directly related to the provision of program component services and component training and transportation for staff, parents and volunteers;

(2) Costs of functions directly associated with the delivery of program component services through the direction, coordination or implementation of a specific component;

(3) Costs of the salaries of program component coordinators and component staff, janitorial and transportation staff involved in program component efforts, and the costs associated with parent involvement and component volunteer services; and

(4) Expenses related to program staff functions, such as the allocable costs of fringe benefits, travel, per diem and transportation, training, food, center/classroom supplies and equipment, parent activities funds, insurance, and the occupation, operation and maintenance of program component space, including utilities.

(d) *Dual benefit costs.* (1) Some costs benefit both the program components as well as development and administrative functions within the Head Start program. In such cases, grantees must identify and allocate appropriately the portion of the costs that are for development and administration.

(2) Dual benefit costs include, but are not limited to, salaries, benefits and other costs (such as travel, per diem, and training costs) of staff who perform both program and development and administrative functions. Grantees must determine and allocate appropriately the part of these costs dedi-

cated to development and administration.

(3) Space costs, and costs related to space, such as utilities, are frequently dual benefit costs. The grantee must determine and allocate appropriately the amount or percentage of space dedicated to development and administration.

(e) *Relationship between development and administrative costs and indirect costs.* (1) Grantees must categorize costs in a Head Start program as development and administrative or program costs. These categorizations are separate from the decision to charge such costs directly or indirectly.

(2) Grantees must charge all costs, whether program or development and administrative, either directly to the project or as part of an indirect cost pool.

(f) *Requirements for compliance.* (1) Head Start grantees must calculate the percentage of their total approved costs allocated to development and administration as a part of their budget submission for initial funding, refunding or for a request for supplemental assistance in connection with a Head Start program. These costs may be a part of the direct or the indirect cost pool.

(2) The Head Start grant applicant shall delineate all development and administrative costs in its application.

(3) Indirect costs which are categorized as program costs must be fully explained in the application.

(g) *Waiver.* (1) The responsible HHS official may grant a waiver of the 15 percent limitation on development and administrative costs and approve a higher percentage for a specific period of time not to exceed twelve months. The conditions under which a waiver will be considered are listed below and encompass those situations under which development and administrative costs are being incurred, but the provision of actual services has not begun or has been suspended. A waiver may be granted when:

(i) A new Head Start grantee or delegate agency is being established or services are being expanded by an existing Head Start grantee or delegate agency, and the delivery of component services to children and families is delayed until all program development and planning is well underway or completed; or

(ii) Component services are disrupted in an existing Head Start program due to circumstances not under the control of the grantee.

(2) A Head Start grantee that estimates that the cost of development and administration will exceed 15 percent of total approved costs must submit a request for a waiver that explains the reasons for exceeding the limitation. This must be done as soon as the grantee determines that it cannot comply with the 15 percent limit, regardless of where the grantee is within the grant funding cycle.

(3) The request for the waiver must include the period of time for which the waiver is requested. It must also describe the action the grantee will take to reduce its development and administrative costs so that the grantee will be able to assure that these costs will not exceed 15 percent of the total approved costs of the program after the completion of the waiver period.

(4) If granted, the waiver and the period of time for which it will be granted will be indicated on the Financial Assistance Award.

(5) If a waiver requested as a part of a grant application for funding or refunding is not approved, no Financial Assistance Award will be awarded to the Head Start program until the grantee resubmits a revised budget that complies with the 15 percent limitation.

(Information collection requirements contained in paragraphs (f) (2) and (3) of this section were approved on January 26, 1993, by the Office of Management and Budget under Control Number 0980-1043).

[57 FR 41885, Sept. 14, 1992, as amended at 58 FR 26918, May 6, 1993]

§1301.33 Delegation of program operations.

Federal financial assistance is not available for program operations where such operations have been delegated to a delegate agency by a Head Start agency unless the delegation of program operations is made by a written agreement and has been approved by the responsible HHS official before the delegation is made.

§ 1301.34 Grantee appeals.

An agency receiving a grant under the Act for technical assistance and training, or for a research, demonstration, or pilot project may appeal adverse decisions in accordance with part 16 of this title. Head Start agencies are also subject to the appeal procedures in part 16 except appeals by those agencies for suspension, termination and denial of refunding are subject to part 1303 of this title.

PART 1302—POLICIES AND PROCEDURES FOR SELECTION, INITIAL FUNDING, AND REFUNDING OF HEAD START GRANTEES, AND FOR SELECTION OF REPLACEMENT GRANTEES

Subpart A—General

Sec.

1302.1 Purpose and scope.
1302.2 Definitions.
1302.3 Consultation with public officials and consumers.
1302.4 Transfer of unexpended balances.
1302.5 Notice for show cause and hearing.

Subpart B—Basis for Selection of Grantees

1302.10 Selection among applicants.
1302.11 Selection among applicants to replace grantee.
1302.12 Priority for previously selected Head Start agencies.

Subpart C—Change in Grantee Requiring Amendment of Approved Application or Replacement of Head Start Program

1302.20 Grantee to show both legal status and financial viability.
1302.21 Grantee shows legal status but not financial viability.
1302.22 Suspension or termination of grantee which shows financial viability but not legal status.
1302.23 Suspension or termination of grantee which shows legal status but not financial viability.
1302.24 Denial of refunding of grantee.
1302.25 Control of funds of grantee scheduled for change.

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 9831 et seq.

SOURCE: 44 FR 24062, Apr. 24, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General

§ 1302.1 Purpose and scope.

The purpose of this part is to set forth policies and procedures for the selection, initial funding and refunding of Head Start grantees and for the selection of replacement grantees in the event of the voluntary or involuntary termination, or denial of refunding, of Head Start programs. It particularly provides for consideration of the need for selection of a replacement grantee where the continuing eligibility (legal status) and fiscal capability (financial viability) of a grantee to operate a Head Start program is cast in doubt by the cessation of funding under section 519 of the Act or by the occurrence of some other major change. It is intended that Head Start programs be administered effectively and responsibly; that applicants to administer programs receive fair and equitable consideration; and that the legal rights of current Head Start grantees be fully protected.

§ 1302.2 Definitions.

As used in this part—

Act means Title V of The Economic Opportunity Act of 1964, as amended.

Approvable application means an application for a Head Start program, either as an initial application or as an application to amend an approved application governing an on-going Head Start program, which, in addition to showing that the applicant has legal status and financial viability, provides for comprehensive services for children and families and for effective and responsible administration which are in conformity with the Act and applicable regulations, the Head Start Manual and Head Start policies.

Community action agency means a public or private nonprofit agency or organization designated as a community action agency by the Director of the Community Services Administration pursuant to section 210(a) or section 210(d) of the Act.

Community action program means a program operated by a community action agency.

Financial viability means the capability of an applicant or the continuing capability of a grantee to furnish the non-Federal share of the cost of operating an approvable or approved Head Start program.

Head Start grantee or *grantee* means a public or private nonprofit agency or organization whose application to operate a Head Start program pursuant to section 514 of the Act has been approved by the responsible HHS official.

Legal status means the existence of an applicant or grantee as a public agency or organization under the law of the State in which it is located, or existence as a private nonprofit agency or organization as a legal entity recognized under the law of the State in which it is located. Existence as a private non-profit agency or organization may be established under applicable State or Federal law.

Responsible HHS official means the official of the Department of Health and Human Services who has authority to make grants under the Act.

§ 1302.3 Consultation with public officials and consumers.

Responsible HHS officials will consult with Governors, or their representatives, appropriate local general purpose government officials, and Head Start Policy Council and other appropriate representatives of communities to be served on the proposed replacement of Head Start grantees.

§ 1302.4 Transfer of unexpended balances.

When replacing a grantee, unexpended balances of funds in the possession of such grantee in the fiscal year following the fiscal year for which the funds were appropriated may be transferred to the replacement grantee if the approved application of the replacement grantee provides for the continuation of the Head Start services without significant change to the same enrollees and their parents and undertakes to offer employment to the staff of the terminating grantee. A letter of concurrence in the change should be obtained from the terminating grantee whenever possible.

§ 1302.5 Notice for show cause and hearing.

(a) Except in emergency situations, the responsible HHS official will not suspend financial assistance under the Act unless the grantee has been given an opportunity, in accordance with part 1303, subpart D, of this chapter, to show cause why such action should not be taken.

(b) The responsible HHS official will not terminate a grant, suspend a grant for longer than 30 days, or deny refunding to a grantee, unless the grantee has been given an opportunity for a hearing in accordance with part 1303 of this chapter.

Subpart B—Bases for Selection of Grantees

§ 1302.10 Selection among applicants.

(a) The basis for selection of applicants proposing to operate a Head Start program will be the extent to which the applicants demonstrate in their application the most effective Head Start program.

(b) In addition to the applicable criteria at section 641(d) of the Head Start Act, the criteria for selection will include:

(1) The cost effectiveness of the proposed program;

(2) The qualifications and experience of the applicant and the applicant's staff in planning, organizing and providing comprehensive child development services at the community level, including the administrative and fiscal capability of the applicant to administer all Head Start programs carried out in the designated service area;

(3) The quality of the proposed program as indicated by adherence to or evidence of the intent and capability to adhere to Head Start Performance Standards (in 45 CFR part 1304) and program policies, including the opportunities provided for employment of target area residents and career development for paraprofessional and other staff and provisions made for the direct participation of parents in the planning, conduct and administration of the program;

(4) The proposed program design and option including the suitability of facilities and equipment proposed to be used in carrying out the program, as it relates to community needs and as the applicant proposes to implement the

program in accordance with program policies and regulations; and

(5) The need for Head Start services in the community served by the applicant.

[57 FR 41887, Sept. 14, 1992]

§ 1302.11 Selection among applicants to replace grantee.

The bases for making a selection among applicants which submit approvable applications to replace a grantee, in addition to the basis in § 1302.10 of this part, shall be:

(a) The extent to which provision is made for a continuation of services to the eligible children who have been participating as enrollees in the program;

(b) The extent to which provision is made for continuation of services to the target area or areas served by the program; and

(c) The extent to which provision is made for continued employment by the applicant of the qualified personnel of the existing program.

§ 1302.12 Priority for previously selected Head Start agencies.

Before selecting Head Start agency, the responsible HHS official, in addition to considering the factors specified in §§ 1302.10 and 1302.11, will give priority to an agency which was receiving funds under the Act on January 4, 1975, to operate a Head Start program.

Subpart C—Change in Grantee Requiring Amendment of Approved Application or Replacement of Head Start Program

§ 1302.20 Grantee to show both legal status and financial viability.

(a) Upon the occurrence of a change in the legal condition of a grantee or of a substantial diminution of the financial resources of a grantee, or both, for example, such as might result from cessation of grants to the grantee under section 514 of the Act, the grantee is required within 30 days after the effective date of the regulations in this Part or the date the grantee has notice or knowledge of the change, whichever is later, to show in writing to the satisfaction of the responsible HHS official that it has and will continue to have legal status and financial viability. Failure to make this showing may result in suspension, termination or denial of refunding.

(b) The responsible HHS official will notify the grantee in writing of the decision as to the grantee's legal status and financial viability within 30 days after receiving the grantee's written submittal.

(c) When it is consistent with proper and efficient administration, the responsible HHS official may extend a grantee's program year to end on the date when a change in its legal condition or a substantial diminution of financial resources, or both, is scheduled to take place.

§ 1302.21 Grantee shows legal status but not financial viability.

(a) If a grantee shows legal status but impaired financial viability the responsible HHS official will entertain a timely request for amendment of the grantee's approved application which restores the grantee's financial viability either by a reduction in the program which produces minimum disruption to services and functions, or by an amendment which incorporates essential functions and services not previously funded as part of the total cost of the Head Start program, and, therefore, requires an increase in the amount of the Head Start grant but which will not result in a Federal share of the total cost of the Head Start program in excess of the percentage authorized by the Act or applicable regulations. In considering such a request which includes an increase in the Head Start grant the responsible HHS official will take into account the funds available to him for obligation and whether the proposed increase is consistent with that distribution of Head Start funds which:

(1) Maximizes the number of childen served within his area of responsibility, or in the case of experimental or demonstration programs, the experimental or demonstration benefits to be achieved, and

(2) Maintains approximately the same distribution of Head Start program funds to States as exist during

the fiscal year in which his decision is made.

(b) A request for amendment will be considered to be timely if it is included with the written submittal required by §1302.20(a) of this part, submitted within 30 days after receiving the notice required by §1302.20(b) of this part, or submitted as a part of a timely application for refunding.

(c) The grantee will be notified in writing by the responsible HHS official within 30 days after submission of the requested amendment of the decision to approve or disapprove the requested amendment. If the requested amendment is disapproved the notice will contain a statement of the reasons for disapproval.

§1302.22 Suspension or termination of grantee which shows financial viability but not legal status.

If a grantee fails to show that it will continue to have legal status after the date of change even though it may show financial viability, the grant shall be suspended or terminated or refunding shall be denied as of the date of change. If it appears reasonable to the responsible HHS official that the deficiency in legal status will be corrected within 30 days he may suspend the grant for not to exceed 30 days after the date of change or the date of submission of a timely request for amendment. If such correction has not been made within the 30 day period the grant shall be terminated.

§1302.23 Suspension or termination of grantee which shows legal status but not financial viability.

(a) If the date of change of financial viability precedes or will precede the end of the grantee's program year the grant will be suspended or terminated on that date, or, if a request for amendment has been submitted under §1302.21 of this part, upon written notice of disapproval of the requested amendment, whichever is later. If it appears reasonable to the responsible HHS official that the deficiency in financial viability will be corrected within 30 days he may suspend the grant for not to exceed 30 days after the date of change or notice of disapproval. If such correction has not been made within the 30 day period the grant will be terminated.

§1302.24 Denial of refunding of grantee.

(a) If the date of change will coincide with or will come after the end of the program year and the grantee has notice or knowledge of such change prior to the end of the program year any action taken to approve the grantee's application for refunding for the following program year shall be subject to rescission or ratification depending upon the decision of the responsible HHS official on the grantee's legal status and financial viability and on any requested amendment submitted by the grantee. If the requested amendment is disapproved the responsible HHS official may extend the program year in accordance with §1302.20(c) of this part.

(b) If the date of change coincides with the end of the program year and the grantee does not have notice or knowledge of the change prior thereto and the grantee's application for refunding for the following program year has been approved, such approval shall be subject to rescission or ratification depending upon the decision of the responsible HHS official on the grantee's legal status and viability and on any requested financial amendment submitted by the grantee.

(c) If the date of change will coincide with or will come after the end of the program year and if the responsible HHS official has prior notice thereof from the grantee or other official source such as the Community Services Administration action to approve any application for refunding submitted by the grantee shall be deferred pending decision by the responsible HHS official on the grantee's legal status and financial viability and any requested amendment submitted by the grantee.

(d) When the responsible HHS official determines to approve a requested amendment for refunding he will approve it for the full term of the proposed program period, if that period as approved is no longer than a program year.

§ 1302.25 Control of funds of grantee scheduled for change.

Responsible HHS officials will place strict controls on the release of grant funds to grantees which are scheduled for change by cessation of their grants under section 519 of the Act. Specifically, the following controls will be established:

(a) Funds will be released on a monthly basis regardless of the form of grant payment.

(b) Funds released each month will be limited to the amount required to cover actual disbursements during that period for activities authorized under the approved Head Start program.

(c) The amount of funds released must be approved each month by the responsible HHS official.

PART 1303—APPEAL PROCEDURES FOR HEAD START GRANTEES AND CURRENT OR PROSPECTIVE DELEGATE AGENCIES

Subpart A—General

Sec.
1303.1 Purpose and application.
1303.2 Definitions.
1303.3 Right to attorney, attorney fees, and travel costs.
1303.4 Remedies.
1303.5 Service of process.
1303.6 Successor agencies and officials.
1303.7 Effect of failure to file or serve documents in a timely manner.
1303.8 Waiver of requirements.

Subpart B—Appeals by Grantees

1303.10 Purpose.
1303.11 Suspension on notice and opportunity to show cause.
1303.12 Summary suspension and opportunity to show cause.
1303.13 Appeal by a grantee of a suspension continuing for more than 30 days.
1303.14 Appeal by a grantee from a termination of financial assistance.
1303.15 Appeal by a grantee from a denial of refunding.
1303.16 Conduct of hearing.

Subpart C—Appeals by Current or Prospective Delegate Agencies

1303.20 Appeals to grantees by current or prospective delegate agencies of rejection of an application, failure to act on an application, or termination of a grant or contract.
Sec.
1303.21 Procedures for appeal by current or prospective delegate agencies to the responsible HHS official from denials by grantees of an application or failure to act on an application.
1303.22 Decision on appeal in favor of grantee.
1303.23 Decision on appeal in favor of the current or prospective delegate agency.
1303.24 OMB control number.

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 9801 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 57 FR 59264, Dec. 14, 1992, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General

§ 1303.1 Purpose and application.

This part prescribes regulations based on section 646 of the Head Start Act, 42 U.S.C. 9841, as it applies to grantees and current or prospective delegate agencies engaged in or wanting to engage in the operation of Head Start programs under the Act. It prescribes the procedures for appeals by current and prospective delegate agencies from specified actions or inaction by grantees. It also provides procedures for reasonable notice and opportunity to show cause in cases of suspension of financial assistance by the responsible HHS official and for an appeal to the Departmental Appeals Board by grantees in cases of denial of refunding, termination of financial assistance, and suspension of financial assistance.

§ 1303.2 Definitions.

As used in this part:

Act means the Head Start Act, 42 U.S.C. section 9831, *et seq.*

ACYF means the Administration on Children, Youth and Families in the Department of Health and Human Services, and includes Regional staff.

Agreement means either a grant or a contract between a grantee and a delegate agency for the conduct of all or part of the grantee's Head Start program.

Day means the 24 hour period beginning at 12 a.m. local time and continuing for the next 24 hour period. It includes all calendar days unless otherwise expressly noted.

Delegate Agency means a public or private non-profit organization or agency to which a grantee has delegated by written agreement the carrying out of all or part of its Head Start program.

Denial of Refunding means the refusal of a funding agency to fund an application for a continuation of a Head Start program for a subsequent program year when the decision is based on a determination that the grantee has improperly conducted its program, or is incapable of doing so properly in the future, or otherwise is in violation of applicable law, regulations, or other policies.

Funding Agency means the agency that provides funds directly to either a grantee or a delegate agency. ACYF is the funding agency for a grantee, and a grantee is the funding agency for a delegate agency.

Grantee means the local public or private non-profit agency which has been designated as a Head Start agency under 42 U.S.C. 9836 and which has been granted financial assistance by the responsible HHS official to operate a Head Start program.

Interim Grantee means an agency which has been appointed to operate a Head Start program for a period of time not to exceed one year while an appeal of a denial of refunding, termination or suspension action is pending.

Prospective Delegate Agency means a public or private non-profit agency or organization which has applied to a grantee to serve as a delegate agency.

Responsible HHS Official means the official who is authorized to make the grant of financial assistance to operate a Head Start program or his or her designee.

Submittal means the date of actual receipt or the date the material was served in accordance with § 1303.5 of this part for providing documents or notices of appeals, and similar matters, to either grantees, delegate agencies, prospective delegate agencies, or ACYF.

Substantial Rejection means that a funding agency requires that the funding of a current delegate agency be reduced to 80 percent or less of the current level of operations for any reason other than a determination that the delegate agency does not need the funds to serve all the eligible persons it proposes to serve.

Suspension of a grant means temporary withdrawal of the grantee's authority to obligate grant funds pending corrective action by the grantee.

Termination of a grant or delegate agency agreement means permanent withdrawal of the grantee's or delegate agency's authority to obligate previously awarded grant funds before that authority would otherwise expire. It also means the voluntary relinquishment of that authority by the grantee or delegate agency. Termination does not include:

(1) Withdrawal of funds awarded on the basis of the grantee's or delegate agency's underestimate of the unobligated balance in a prior period;

(2) Refusal by the funding agency to extend a grant or award additional funds (such as refusal to make a competing or noncompeting continuation renewal, extension or supplemental award);

(3) Withdrawal of the unobligated balance as of the expiration of a grant;

(4) Annulment, i.e., voiding of a grant upon determination that the award was obtained fraudulently or was otherwise illegal or invalid from its inception.

Work day means any 24 hour period beginning at 12 a.m. local time and continuing for 24 hours. It excludes Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays. Any time ending on one of the excluded days shall extend to 5 p.m. of the next full work day.

§ 1303.3 Right to attorney, attorney fees, and travel costs.

(a) All parties to proceedings under this part, including informal proceedings, have the right to be represented by an attorney.

(1) Attorney fees may be charged to the program grant in an amount equal to the usual and customary fees charged in the locality. However, such fees may not exceed $250.00 per day, adjusted annually to reflect the percentage change in the Consumer Price Index for All Urban Consumers (issued by the Bureau of Labor Statistics) beginning one year after the effective date of these regulations. The grantee or delegate agency may use current operating funds to pay these costs. The fees of only one attorney may be charged to the program grant with re-

spect to a particular dispute. Such fees may not be charged if the grantee or delegate agency has an attorney on its staff, or if it has a retainer agreement with an attorney which fully covers fees connected with litigation. The grantee or delegate agency shall have the burden of establishing the usual and customary fees and shall furnish documentation to support that determination that is satisfactory to the responsible HHS official.

(2) A grantee or delegate agency may designate up to two persons to attend and participate in proceedings held under this Part. Travel and per diem costs of such persons, and of an attorney representing the grantee or delegate agency, shall not exceed those allowable under Standard Governmental Travel Regulations in effect at the time of the travel.

(b) In the event that use of program funds under this section would result in curtailment of program operations or inability to liquidate prior obligations, the party so affected may apply to the responsible HHS official for payment of these expenses.

(c) The responsible HHS official, upon being satisfied that these expenditures would result in curtailment of program operations or inability to liquidate prior obligations, must make payment therefor to the affected party by way of reimbursement from currently available funds.

§ 1303.4 Remedies.

The procedures established by subparts B and C of this Part shall not be construed as precluding ACYF from pursuing any other remedies authorized by law.

§ 1303.5 Service of process.

Whenever documents are required to be filed or served under this part, or notice provided under this part, certified mail shall be used with a return receipt requested. Alternatively, any other system may be used that provides proof of the date of receipt of the documents by the addressee. If this regulation is not complied with, and if a party alleges that it failed to receive documents allegedly sent to it, there will be a rebuttable presumption that the documents or notices were not sent as required by this part, or as alleged by the party that failed to use the required mode of service. The presumption may be rebutted only by a showing supported by a preponderance of evidence that the material was in fact submitted in a timely manner.

§ 1303.6 Successor agencies and officials.

Wherever reference is made to a particular Federal agency, office, or official it shall be deemed to apply to any other agency, office, or official which subsequently becomes responsible for administration of the program or any portion of it.

§ 1303.7 Effect of failure to file or serve documents in a timely manner.

(a) Whenever an appeal is not filed within the time specified in these or related regulations, the potential appellant shall be deemed to have consented to the proposed action and to have waived all rights of appeal.

(b) Whenever a party has failed to file a response or other submission within the time required in these regulations, or by order of an appropriate HHS responsible official, the party shall be deemed to have waived the right to file such response or submission.

(c) A party fails to comply with the requisite deadlines or time frames if it exceeds them by any amount.

(d) The time to file an appeal, response, or other submission may be waived in accordance with § 1303.8 of this part.

§ 1303.8 Waiver of requirements.

(a) Any procedural requirements required by these regulations may be waived by the responsible HHS official or such waiver requests may be granted by the Departmental Appeals Board in those cases where the Board has jurisdiction. Requests for waivers must be in writing and based on good cause.

(b) Approvals of waivers must be in writing and signed by the responsible HHS official or by the Departmental Appeals Board when it has jurisdiction.

(c) "Good cause" consists of the following:

(1) Litigation dates cannot be changed;

(2) Personal emergencies pertaining to the health of a person involved in and essential to the proceeding or to a member of that person's immediate family, spouse, parents, or siblings;

(3) The complexity of the case is such that preparation of the necessary documents cannot reasonably be expected to be completed within the standard time frames;

(4) Other matters beyond the control of the party requesting the waiver, such as strikes and natural disasters.

(d) Under no circumstances may "good cause" consist of a failure to meet a deadline due to the oversight of either a party or its representative.

(e) Waivers of timely filing or service shall be granted only when necessary in the interest of fairness to all parties, including the Federal agency. They will be granted sparingly as prompt resolution of disputes is a major goal of these regulations. The responsible HHS official or the Departmental Appeals Board shall have the right, on own motion or on motion of a party, to require such documentation as deemed necessary in support of a request for a waiver.

(f) A request for an informal meeting by a delegate agency, including a prospective delegate agency, may be denied by the responsible HHS official, on motion of the grantee or on his or her own motion, if the official concludes that the written appeal fails to state plausible grounds for reversing the grantee's decision or the grantee's failure to act on an application.

(g) The requirements of this section may not be waived.

Subpart B—Appeals by Grantees

§1303.10 Purpose.

(a) This subpart establishes rules and procedures for the suspension of a grantee, denial of a grantee's application for refunding, or termination of assistance under the Act for circumstances related to the particular grant, such as ineffective or improper use of Federal funds or for failure to comply with applicable laws, regulations, policies, instructions, assurances, terms and conditions or, in accordance with part 1302 of this chapter, upon loss by the grantee of legal status or financial viability.

(b) This subpart does not apply to any administrative action based upon any violation, or alleged violation, of title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964.

§1303.11 Suspension on notice and opportunity to show cause.

(a) After receiving concurrence from the Commissioner, ACYF, the responsible HHS official may suspend financial assistance to a grantee in whole or in part for breach or threatened breach of any requirement stated in §1303.10 pursuant to notice and opportunity to show cause why assistance should not be suspended.

(b) The responsible HHS official will notify the grantee as required by §1303.5 or by telegram that ACYF intends to suspend financial assistance, in whole or in part, unless good cause is shown why such action should not be taken. The notice will include:

(1) The grounds for the proposed suspension;

(2) The effective date of the proposed suspension;

(3) Information that the grantee has the opportunity to submit written material in opposition to the intended suspension and to meet informally with the responsible HHS official regarding the intended suspension;

(4) Information that the written material must be submitted to the responsible HHS official at least seven days prior to the effective date of the proposed suspension and that a request for an informal meeting must be made in writing to the responsible HHS official no later than seven days after the day the notice of intention to suspend was mailed to the grantee;

(5) Invitation to correct the deficiency by voluntary action; and

(6) A copy of this subpart.

(c) If the grantee requests an informal meeting, the responsible HHS official will fix a time and place for the meeting. In no event will such meeting be scheduled less than seven days after the notice of intention to suspend was sent to the grantee.

(d) The responsible HHS official may at his or her discretion extend the period of time or date for making requests or submitting material by the

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

grantee and will notify the grantee of any such extension.

(e) At the time the responsible HHS official sends the notice of intention to suspend financial assistance to the grantee, the official will send a copy of it to any delegate agency whose activities or failures to act are a substantial cause of the proposed suspension, and will inform such delegate agency that it is entitled to submit written material in opposition and to participate in the informal meeting with the responsible HHS official if one is held. In addition, the responsible HHS official may give such notice to any other Head Start delegate agency of the grantee.

(f) Within three days of receipt of the notice of intention to suspend financial assistance, the grantee shall send a copy of such notice and a copy of this subpart to all delegate agencies which would be financially affected by the proposed suspension action. Any delegate agency that wishes to submit written material may do so within the time stated in the notice. Any delegate agency that wishes to participate in the informal meeting regarding the intended suspension, if not otherwise afforded a right to participate, may request permission to do so from the responsible HHS official, who may grant or deny such permission. In acting upon any such request from a delegate agency, the responsible HHS official will take into account the effect of the proposed suspension on the particular delegate agency, the extent to which the meeting would become unduly complicated as a result of granting such permission, and the extent to which the interests of the delegate agency requesting such permission appear to be adequately represented by other participants.

(g) The responsible HHS official will consider any timely material presented in writing, any material presented during the course of the informal meeting as well as any showing that the grantee has adequately corrected the deficiency which led to the suspension proceedings. The decision of the responsible HHS official will be made within five days after the conclusion of the informal meeting, or, if no informal meeting is held, within five days of receipt by the responsible HHS official of written material from all concerned parties. If the responsible HHS official concludes that the grantee has failed to show cause why financial assistance should not be suspended, the official may suspend financial assistance in whole or in part and under such terms and conditions as he or she specifies.

(h) Notice of such suspension will be promptly transmitted to the grantee as required in §1303.5 of this part or by some other means showing the date of receipt, and shall become effective upon delivery or on the date delivery is refused or the material is returned. Suspension shall not exceed 30 days unless the responsible HHS official and the grantee agree to a continuation of the suspension for an additional period of time. If termination proceedings are initiated in accordance with §1303.14, the suspension of financial assistance will be rescinded.

(i) New obligations incurred by the grantee during the suspension period will be not be allowed unless the granting agency expressly authorizes them in the notice of suspension or an amendment to it. Necessary and otherwise allowable costs which the grantee could not reasonably avoid during the suspension period will be allowed if they result from obligations properly incurred by the grantee before the effective date of the suspension and not in anticipation of suspension or termination. At the discretion of the granting agency, third-party in-kind contributions applicable to the suspension period may be allowed in satisfaction of cost sharing or matching requirements.

(j) The responsible HHS official may appoint an agency to serve as an interim grantee to operate the program until the grantee's suspension is lifted.

(k) The responsible HHS official may modify the terms, conditions and nature of the suspension or rescind the suspension action at any time on his or her own initiative or upon a satisfactory showing that the grantee has adequately corrected the deficiency which led to the suspension and that repetition is not threatened. Suspension partly or fully rescinded may, at the discretion of the responsible HHS official, be reimposed with or without further proceedings, except that the total time of suspension may not exceed 30 days unless termination proceedings are initiated in accordance with §1303.14 or unless the responsible HHS official and the grantee agree to continuation of the suspension for an additional period of time. If termination proceedings are initiated, the suspension of financial assistance will be rescinded.

§1303.12 Summary suspension and opportunity to show cause.

(a) After receiving concurrence from the Commissioner, ACYF, the responsible HHS official may suspend financial assistance in whole or in part without prior notice and an opportunity to show cause if it is determined that immediate suspension is necessary because of a serious risk of:

(1) Substantial injury to property or loss of project funds; or

(2) Violation of a Federal, State, or local criminal statute; or

(3) If staff or participants' health and safety are at risk.

(b) The notice of summary suspension will be given to the grantee as required by §1303.5 of this part, or by some other means showing the date of receipt, and shall become effective on delivery or on the date delivery is refused or the material is returned unclaimed.

(c) The notice must include the following items:

(1) The effective date of the suspension;

(2) The grounds for the suspension;

(3) The extent of the terms and conditions of any full or partial suspension;

(4) A statement prohibiting the grantee from making any new expenditures or incurring any new obligations in connection with the suspended portion of the program; and

(5) A statement advising the grantee that it has an opportunity to show cause at an informal meeting why the suspension should be rescinded. The request for an informal meeting must be made by the grantee in writing to the responsible HHS official no later than five workdays after the effective date of the notice of summary suspension as described in paragraph (b) of this section.

(d) If the grantee requests in writing the opportunity to show cause why the suspension should be rescinded, the responsible HHS official will fix a time and place for an informal meeting for this purpose. This meeting will be held within five workdays after the grantee's request is received by the responsible HHS official. Notwithstanding the provisions of this paragraph, the responsible HHS official may proceed to deny refunding or initiate termination proceedings at any time even though financial assistance of the grantee has been suspended in whole or in part.

(e) Notice of summary suspension must also be furnished by the grantee to its delegate agencies within two workdays of its receipt of the notice from ACYF by certified mail, return receipt requested, or by any other means showing dates of transmittal and receipt or return as undeliverable or unclaimed. Delegate agencies affected by the summary suspension have the right to participate in the informal meeting as set forth in paragraph (d) of this section.

(f) The effective period of a summary suspension of financial assistance may not exceed 30 days unless:

(1) The conditions creating the summary suspension have not been corrected; or

(2) The parties agree to a continuation of the summary suspension for an additional period of time; or

(3) The grantee, in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section, requests an opportunity to show cause why the summary suspension should be rescinded, in which case it may remain in effect in accordance with paragraph (h) of this section; or

(4) Termination or denial of refunding proceedings are initiated in accordance with §1303.14 or §1303.15.

(g) Any summary suspension that remains in effect for more than 30 days is subject to the requirements of §1303.13 of this part. The only exceptions are where there is an agreement under paragraph (f)(2) of this section, or the circumstances described in paragraph (f)(4) or (h)(1) of this section exist.

(h)(1) If the grantee requests an opportunity to show cause why a summary suspension should be rescinded, the suspension of financial assistance will continue in effect until the grantee has been afforded such opportunity and a decision has been made by the responsible HHS official.

(2) If the suspension continues for more than 30 days, the suspension remains in effect even if it is appealed to the Departmental Appeals Board.

(3) Notwithstanding any other provisions of these or other regulations, if a denial of refunding occurs or a termination action is instituted while the summary suspension is in effect, the suspension shall merge into the later action and funding shall not be available until the action is rescinded or a decision favorable to the grantee is rendered.

(i) The responsible HHS official must consider any timely material presented in writing, any material presented during the course of the informal meeting, as well as any other evidence that the grantee has adequately corrected the deficiency which led to the summary suspension.

(j) A decision must be made within five work days after the conclusion of the informal meeting with the responsible HHS official. If the responsible HHS official concludes, after considering the information provided at the informal meeting, that the grantee has failed to show cause why the suspension should be rescinded, the responsible HHS official may continue the suspension, in whole or in part and under the terms and conditions specified in the notice of suspension.

(k) New obligations incurred by the grantee during the suspension period will not be allowed unless the granting agency expressly authorizes them in the notice of suspension or by an amendment to the notice. Necessary and otherwise allowable costs which the grantee could not reasonably avoid during the suspension period will be allowed if they result from obligations properly incurred by the grantee before the effective date of the suspension and not in anticipation of suspension, denial of refunding or termination.

(l) The responsible HHS official may appoint an agency to serve as an interim grantee to operate the program until either the grantee's summary suspension is lifted or a new grantee is selected in accordance with subpart B of this part.

(m) At the discretion of the funding agency, third-party in-kind contributions applicable to the suspension period may be allowed in satisfaction of cost sharing or matching requirements.

(n) The responsible HHS official may modify the terms, conditions and nature of the summary suspension or rescind the suspension action at any time upon receiving satisfactory evidence that the grantee has adequately corrected the deficiency which led to the suspension and that the deficiency will not occur again. Suspension partly or fully rescinded may, at the discretion of the responsible HHS official, be reimposed with or without further proceedings.

§ 1303.13 Appeal by a grantee of a suspension continuing for more than 30 days.

(a) This section applies to summary suspensions that are initially issued for more than 30 days and summary suspensions continued for more than 30 days except those identified in paragraph § 1303.12(g) of this part.

(b) After receiving concurrence from the Commissioner, ACYF, the responsible HHS official may suspend a grant for more than 30 days. A suspension may, among other bases, be imposed for the same reasons that justify termination of financial assistance or which justify a denial of refunding of a grant.

(c) A notice of a suspension under this section shall set forth:

(1) The reasons for the action;

(2) The duration of the suspension, which may be indefinite;

(3) The fact that the action may be appealed to the Departmental Appeals Board and the time within which it must be appealed.

(d) During the period of suspension a grantee may not incur any valid obligations against Federal Head Start grant funds, nor may any grantee expenditure or provision of in-kind services or items of value made during the period be counted as applying toward any required matching contribution required of a grantee, except as otherwise provided in this part.

(e) The responsible HHS official may appoint an agency to serve as an interim grantee to operate the program until either the grantee's suspension is lifted or a new grantee is selected in accordance with subparts B and C of 45 CFR part 1302.

(f) Any appeal to the Departmental Appeals Board must be made within five days of the grantee's receipt of notice of suspension or return of the notice as undeliverable, refused, or unclaimed. Such an appeal must be in writing and it must fully set forth the grounds for the appeal and be accompanied by all documentation that the grantee believes is relevant and supportive of its position.

All such appeals shall be addressed to the Departmental Appeals Board, and the appellant will send a copy of the appeal to the Commissioner, ACYF, and the responsible HHS official. Appeals will be governed by the Departmental Appeals Board's regulations at 45 CFR part 16, except as otherwise provided in the Head Start appeals regulations. Any grantee requesting a hearing as part of its appeal shall be afforded one by the Departmental Appeals Board.

(g) If a grantee is successful on its appeal any costs incurred during the period of suspension that are otherwise allowable may be paid with Federal grant funds. Moreover, any cash or in-kind contributions of the grantee during the suspension period that are otherwise allowable may be counted toward meeting the grantee's non-Federal share requirement.

(h) If a grantee's appeal is denied by the Departmental Appeals Board, but the grantee is subsequently restored to the program because it has corrected those conditions which warranted the suspension, its activities during the period of the suspension remain outside the scope of the program.

Federal funds may not be used to offset any costs during the period, nor may any cash or in-kind contributions received during the period be used to meet non-Federal share requirements.

(i) If the Federal agency institutes termination proceedings during a suspension, or denies refunding, the two actions shall merge and the grantee need not file a new appeal. Rather, the Departmental Appeals Board will be notified by the Federal agency and will automatically be vested with jurisdiction over the termination action or the denial of refunding and will, pursuant to its rules and procedures, permit the grantee to respond to the notice of termination. In a situation where a suspension action is merged into a termination action in accordance with this section, the suspension continues until there is an administrative decision by the Departmental Appeals Board on the grantee's appeal.

§ 1303.14 Appeal by a grantee from a termination of financial assistance.

(a) After receiving concurrence from the Commissioner, ACYF, the responsible HHS official may terminate financial assistance to a grantee. Financial assistance may be terminated in whole or in part.

(b) Financial assistance may be terminated for any or all of the following reasons:

(1) The grantee is no longer financially viable;

(2) The grantee has lost the requisite legal status or permits;

(3) The grantee has failed to comply with the required fiscal or program reporting requirements applicable to grantees in the Head Start program;

(4) The grantee has failed to meet the performance standards for operation of Head Start programs that are applicable to grantees;

(5) The grantee has failed to comply with the eligibility requirements and limitations on enrollment in the Head Start program, or both;

(6) The grantee has failed to comply with the Head Start grants administration requirements set forth in 45 CFR part 1301;

(7) The grantee has failed to comply with the requirements of the Head Start Act;

(8) The grantee is debarred from receiving Federal grants or contracts;

(9) The grantee fails to abide by any other terms and conditions of its award of financial assistance, or any other applicable laws, regulations, or other applicable Federal or State requirements or policies.

(c) A notice of termination shall set forth:

(1) The violations or actions justifying the termination.

(2) The fact that the termination may be appealed within 10 days to the Departmental Appeals Board (with a copy of the appeal sent to the responsible HHS official and the Commissioner, ACYF) and that such appeals shall be governed by 45 CFR part 16, except as otherwise provided in the Head Start appeals regulations, and that any grantee which requests a hearing shall be afforded one, as mandated by 42 U.S.C. 9841. Such an appeal must be in writing and must fully set forth the grounds for the appeal and be accompanied by all of the documentation that the grantee believes is relevant and supportive of its position.

(3) That the appeal may be made only by the Board of Directors of the grantee or an official acting on behalf of such Board.

(4) That, if the activities of a delegate agency are the basis, in whole or in part, for the proposed termination, the identity of the delegate agency.

(5) Information that the grantee has a right to request a hearing in writing within a period of time specified in the notice which is not later than 10 days from the date of sending the notice.

(d) (1) During a grantee's appeal of a termination decision, funding will continue until an adverse decision is rendered or until expiration of the then current budget period. At the end of the current budget period, if a decision has not been rendered, the responsible HHS official shall award an interim grant to the grantee until a decision is made.

(2) If a grantee's funding has been suspended, no funding shall be available during the termination proceedings, or at any other time, unless the action is rescinded or the grantee's appeal is successful. An interim grantee will be appointed during the appeal period.

(3) If a grantee does not appeal an administrative decision to court within 30 days of its receipt of the decision, a replacement grantee will be immediately sought. An interim grantee may be named, if needed, pending the selection of a replacement grantee.

(4) An interim grantee may be sought even though the grantee has appealed an administrative decision to court within 30 days, if the responsible HHS official determines it necessary to do so. Examples of circumstances that warrant an interim grantee are to protect children and families from harm and Federal funds from misuse or dissipation or both.

(e) If a grantee requests a hearing, it shall send a copy of its request to all delegate agencies which would be financially affected by the termination of assistance and to each delegate agency identified in the notice. The copies of the request shall be sent to these delegate agencies at the same time the grantee's request is made of ACYF. The grantee shall promptly send ACYF a list of the delegate agencies to which it has sent the copies and the date on which they were sent.

(f) If the Departmental Appeals Board informs a grantee that a proposed termination action has been set down for hearing, the grantee shall, within five days of its receipt of this notice, send a copy of it to all delegate agencies which would be financially affected by the termination and to each delegate agency identified in the notice. The grantee shall send the Departmental Appeals Board and the responsible HHS official a list of all delegate agencies notified and the dates of notification.

(g) If the responsible HHS official has initiated termination proceedings because of the activities of a delegate agency, that delegate agency may participate in the hearing as a matter of right. Any other delegate agency, person, agency or organization that wishes to participate in the hearing may request permission to do so from the presiding officer of the hearing. Such participation shall not, without the consent of ACYF and the grantee, alter the time limitations for the delivery of papers or other procedures set forth in this section.

(h) The results of the proceeding and any measure taken thereafter by ACYF pursuant to this part shall be fully binding upon the grantee and all its delegate agencies, whether or not they actually participated in the hearing.

(i) A grantee may waive a hearing and submit written information and argument for the record. Such material shall be submitted within a reasonable period of time to be fixed by the Departmental Appeals Board upon the request of the grantee. The failure of a grantee to request a hearing, or to appear at a hearing for which a date had been set, unless excused for good cause, shall be deemed a waiver of the right to a hearing and consent to the making of a decision on the basis of written information and argument submitted by the parties to the Departmental Appeals Board.

(j) The responsible HHS official may attempt, either personally or through a representative, to resolve the issues in dispute by informal means prior to the hearing.

§ 1303.15 Appeal by a grantee from a denial of refunding.

(a) After receiving concurrence from the Commissioner, ACYF, a grantee's application for refunding may be denied by the responsible HHS official for circumstances described in paragraph (c) of this section.

(b) When an intention to deny a grantee's application for refunding is arrived at on a basis to which this subpart applies, the responsible HHS official will provide the grantee as much advance notice thereof as is reasonably possible, in no event later than 30 days after the receipt by ACYF of the application. The notice will inform the grantee that it has the opportunity for a full and fair hearing on whether refunding should be denied.

(1) Such appeals shall be governed by 45 CFR part 16, except as otherwise provided in the Head Start appeals regulations. Any grantee which requests a hearing shall be afforded one, as mandated by 42 U.S.C. 9841.

(2) Any such appeals must be filed within ten work days after the grantee receives notice of the decision to deny refunding.

(c) Refunding of a grant may be denied for any or all of the reasons for which a grant may be terminated, as set forth in § 1303.14(b) of this part.

(d) Decisions to deny refunding shall be in writing, signed by the responsible HHS official, dated, and sent in compliance with § 1303.5 of this part or by telegram, or by any other mode establishing the date sent and received by the addressee, *or the date it was determined* delivery could not be made, or the date delivery was refused. A Notice of Decision shall contain:

(1) A statement that indicates the grounds which justify the proposed denial of refunding;

(2) The identity of the delegate agency, if the activities of that delegate agency are the basis, in whole or in part, for the proposed denial of refunding; and

(3) A statement that, if the grantee wishes to appeal the denial of refunding of financial assistance, it must appeal directly to the Departmental Appeals Board, and send a copy of the appeal to the responsible HHS official and the Commissioner, ACYF. Such an appeal must be in writing and it must fully set forth the grounds for the appeal and be accompanied by all documentation that the grantee believes is relevant and supportive of its position. Appeals will be governed by the Departmental Appeals Board's regulations at 45 CFR part 16, except as otherwise provided in the Head Start appeals regulations.

(e) The appeal may be made only by the Board of Directors of the grantee or by an official acting on behalf of such Board.

§ 1303.16 Conduct of hearing.

(a) The presiding officer shall conduct a full and fair hearing, avoid delay, maintain order, and make a sufficient record of the facts and issues. To accomplish these ends, the presiding officer shall have all powers authorized by law, and may make all procedural and evidentiary rulings necessary for the conduct of the hearing. The hearing shall be open to the public unless the presiding officer for good cause shown otherwise determines.

(b) Communications outside the record are prohibited as provided by 45 CFR 16.17.

(c) Both ACYF and the grantee are entitled to present their case by oral or documentary evidence, to submit rebuttal evidence and to conduct such examination and cross-examination as may be required for a full and true disclosure of all facts bearing on the issues. The issues shall be those stated in the notice required to be filed by paragraph (g) of this section, those stipulated in a prehearing conference or those agreed to by the parties.

(d) In addition to ACYF, the grantee, and any delegate agencies which have a right to appear, the presiding officer may permit the participation in the proceedings of such persons or organizations as deemed necessary for a proper determination of the issues involved. Such participation may be limited to those issues or activities which the presiding officer believes will meet the needs of the proceeding, and may be limited to the filing of written material.

(e) Any person or organization that wishes to participate in a proceeding may apply for permission to do so from the presiding officer. This application, which shall be made as soon as possible after the notice of termination, denial of refunding or suspension has been received by the grantee, shall state the applicant's interest in the proceeding, the evidence or arguments the applicant intends to contribute, and the necessity for the introduction of such evidence or arguments.

(f) The presiding officer shall permit or deny such participation and shall give notice of his or her decision to the applicant, the grantee, and ACYF, and, in the case of denial, a brief statement of the reasons therefor. Even if previously denied, the presiding officer may subsequently permit such participation if, in his or her opinion, it is warranted by subsequent circumstances. If participation is granted, the presiding officer shall notify all parties of that fact and may, in appropriate cases, include in the notification a brief statement of the issues as to which participation is permitted.

(g) The Departmental Appeals Board will send the responsible HHS official, the grantee and any other party a notice which states the time, place, nature of the hearing, and the legal authority and jurisdiction under which the hearing is to be held. The notice will also identify with reasonable specificity and ACYF requirements which the grantee is alleged to have violated. The notice will be served and filed not later than ten work days prior to the hearing.

Subpart C—Appeals by Current or Prospective Delegate Agencies

§ 1303.20 Appeals to grantees by current or prospective delegate agencies of rejection of an application, failure to act on an application or termination of a grant or contract.

(a) A grantee must give prompt, fair and adequate consideration to applications submitted by current or prospective delegate agencies to operate Head Start programs. The failure of the grantee to act within 30 days after receiving the application is deemed to be a rejection of the application.

(b) A grantee must notify an applicant in writing within 30 days after receiving the application of its decision to either accept or to wholly or substantially reject it. If the decision is to wholly or substantially reject the application, the notice shall contain a statement of the reasons for the decision and a statement that the applicant has a right to appeal the decision within ten work days after receipt of the notice. If a grantee fails to act on the application by the end of the 30 day period which grantees have to review applications, the current or prospective delegate agency may appeal to the grantee, in writing, within 15 work days of the end of the 30 day grantee review period.

(c) A grantee must notify a delegate agency in writing of its decision to terminate its agreement with the delegate agency, explaining the reasons for its decision and that the delegate agency has the right to appeal the decision to the grantee within ten work days after receipt of the notice.

(d) The grantee has 20 days to review the written appeal and issue its decision. If the grantee sustains its earlier termination of an award or its rejection of an application, the current or prospective delegate agency then may appeal, in writing, to the responsible HHS official. The appeal must be submitted to the responsible HHS official within ten work days after the receipt of the grantee's final decision. The appeal must fully set forth the grounds for the appeal.

(e) A grantee may not reject the application or terminate the operations of a delegate agency on the basis of defects or deficiencies in the application or in the operation of the program without first:

(1) Notifying the delegate agency of the defects and deficiencies;

(2) Providing, or providing for, technical assistance so that defects and deficiencies can be corrected by the delegate agency; and

(3) Giving the delegate agency the opportunity to make appropriate corrections.

(f) An appeal filed pursuant to a grantee failing to act on a current or prospective delegate agency's application within a 30 day period need only contain a copy of the application, the date filed, and any proof of the date the grantee received the application. The grantee shall have five days in which to respond to the appeal.

(g) Failure to appeal to the grantee regarding its decision to reject an application, terminate an agreement, or failure to act on an application shall bar any appeal to the responsible HHS official.

§1303.21 Procedures for appeal by current or prospective delegate agencies to the responsible HHS official from denials by grantees of an application or failure to act on an application.

(a) Any current or prospective delegate agency that is dissatisfied with the decision of a grantee rendered under §1303.20 may appeal to the responsible HHS official whose decision is final and not appealable to the Commissioner, ACYF. Such an appeal must be in writing and it must fully set forth the grounds for the appeal and be accompanied by all documentation that the current or prospective delegate agency believes is relevant and supportive of this position, including all written material or documentation submitted to the grantee under the procedures set forth in §1303.20, as well as a copy of any decision rendered by the grantee. A copy of the appeal and all material filed with the responsible HHS official must be simultaneously served on the grantee.

(b) In providing the information required by paragraph (a) of this section, delegate agencies must set forth:

(1) Whether, when and how the grantee advised the delegate agency of alleged defects and deficiencies in the delegate agency's application or in the operation of its program prior to the grantee's rejection or termination notice;

(2) Whether the grantee provided the delegate agency reasonable opportunity to correct the defects and deficiencies, the details of the opportunity that was given and whether or not the grantee provided or provided for technical advice, consultation, or assistance to the current delegate agency concerning the correction of the defects and deficiencies;

(3) What steps or measures, if any, were undertaken by the delegate agency to correct any defects or deficiencies;

(4) When and how the grantee notified the delegate agency of its decision;

(5) Whether the grantee told the delegate agency the reasons for its decision and, if so, how such reasons were communicated to the delegate agency and what they were;

(6) If it is the delegate agency's position that the grantee acted arbitrarily or capriciously, the reasons why the delegate agency takes this position; and

(7) Any other facts and circumstances which the delegate agency believes supports its appeal.

(c) The grantee may submit a written response to the appeal of a prospective delegate agency. It may also submit additional information which it believes is relevant and supportive of its position.

(d) In the case of an appeal by a delegate agency, the grantee must submit a written statement to the responsible HHS official responding to the items specified in paragraph (b) of this section. The grantee must include information that explains why it acted properly in arriving at its decision or in failing to act, and any other facts and circumstances which the grantee believes supports its position.

(e)(1) The responsible HHS official may meet informally with the current or prospective delegate agency if such official determines that such a meeting would be beneficial to the proper resolution of the appeal. Such meetings may be conducted by conference call.

(2) An informal meeting must be requested by the current or prospective delegate agency at the time of the appeal. In addition, the grantee may request an informal meeting with the responsible HHS official. If none of the parties requests an informal meeting, the responsible HHS official may hold such a meeting if he or she believes it would be beneficial for a proper resolution of the dispute. Both the grantee and the current or prospective delegate agency may attend any informal meeting concerning the appeal. If a party wishes to oppose a request for a meeting it must serve its opposition on the responsible HHS official and any other party within five work days of its receipt of the request.

(f) A grantee's response to appeals by current or prospective delegate agencies must be submitted to the responsible HHS official within ten work days of receipt of the materials served on it by the current or prospective delegate agency in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section. The grantee must serve a copy of its response on the current or prospective delegate agency.

(g) The responsible HHS official shall notify the current or prospective delegate agency and the grantee whether or not an informal meeting will be held. If an informal meeting is held, it must be held within ten work days after the notice by the responsible HHS official is mailed. The responsible HHS official must designate either the Regional Office or the place where the current or prospective delegate agency or grantee is located for holding the informal meeting.

(h) If an informal meeting is not held, each party shall have an opportunity to reply in writing to the written statement submitted by the other party. The written reply must be submitted to the responsible HHS official within five work days after the notification required by paragraph (g) of this section. If a meeting is not to be held, notice of that fact shall be served on the parties within five work days of the receipt of a timely response to such a request or the expiration of the time for submitting a response to such a request.

(i) In deciding an appeal under this section, the responsible HHS official will arrive at his or her decision by considering:

(1) The material submitted in writing and the information presented at any informal meeting;

(2) The application of the current or prospective delegate agency;

(3) His or her knowledge of the grantee's program as well as any evaluations of his or her staff about the grantee's program and current or prospective delegate agency's application and prior performance; and

(4) Any other evidence deemed relevant by the responsible HHS official.

§ 1303.22 Decision on appeal in favor of grantee.

(a) If the responsible HHS official finds in favor of the grantee, the appeal will be dismissed unless there is cause to remand the matter back to the grantee.

(b) The grantee's decision will be sustained unless it is determined by the responsible HHS official that the grantee acted arbitrarily, capriciously, or otherwise contrary to law, regulation, or other applicable requirements.

(c) The decision will be made within ten workdays after the informal meeting. The decision, including a statement of the reasons therefor, will be in writing, and will be served on the parties within five workdays from the date of the decision by the responsible HHS official.

(d) If the decision is made on the basis of written materials only, the decision will be made within five workdays of the receipt of the materials. The decision will be served on the parties no more than five days after it is made.

§ 1303.23 Decision on appeal in favor of the current or prospective delegate agency.

(a) The responsible HHS official will remand the rejection of an application or termination of an agreement to the grantee for prompt reconsideration and decision if the responsible HHS official's decision does not sustain the grantee's decision, and if there are issues which require further development before a final decision can be made. The grantee's reconsideration and decision must be made in accordance with all applicable requirements of this part as well as other relevant regulations, statutory provisions, and program issuances. The grantee must issue its decision on remand in writing to both the current or prospective delegate agency and the responsible HHS official within 15 workdays after the date of receipt of the remand.

(b) If the current or prospective delegate agency is dissatisfied with the grantee's decision on remand, it may appeal to the responsible HHS official within five workdays of its receipt of that decision. Any such appeal must comply with the requirements of § 1303.21 of this part.

(c) If the responsible HHS official finds that the grantee's decision on remand is incorrect or if the grantee fails to issue its decision within 15 work days, the responsible HHS official will entertain an application by the current or prospective delegate agency for a direct grant.

(1) If such an application is approved, there will be a commensurate reduction in the level of funding of the grantee and whatever other action is deemed appropriate in the circumstances. Such reduction in funding shall not be considered a termination or denial of refunding and may not be appealed under this part.

(2) If such an application is not approved, the responsible HHS official will take whatever action he or she deems appropriate under the circumstances.

(d) If, without fault on the part of a delegate agency, its operating funds are exhausted before its appeal has been decided, the grantee will furnish sufficient funds for the maintenance of the delegate agency's current level of operations until a final administrative decision has been reached.

(e) If the responsible HHS official sustains the decision of the grantee following remand, he or she shall notify the parties of the fact within 15 work days of the receipt of final submittal of documents, or of the conclusion of any meeting between the official and the parties, whichever is later.

§ 1303.24 OMB control number.

The collection of information requirements in sections 1303.10 through 1303.23 of this part were approved on January 22, 1993, by the Office of Management and Budget and assigned OMB control number 0980–0242.

[58 FR 13019, Mar. 9, 1993]

PART 1304—PROGRAM PERFORMANCE STANDARDS FOR OPERATION OF HEAD START PROGRAMS BY GRANTEES AND DELEGATE AGENCIES

Subpart A—General

Sec.
1304.1–1 Purpose and application.
1304.1–2 Definitions.
1304.1–3 Head Start Program goals.
1304.1–4 Performance standards plan development.
1304.1–5 Performance standards implementation and enforcement.

Subpart B—Education Services Objectives and Performance Standards

1304.2–1 Education services objectives.
1304.2–2 Education services plan content: Operations.
1304.2–3 Education services plan content: Facilities.

Subpart C—Health Services Objectives and Performance Standards

1304.3–1 Health services general objectives.
1304.3–2 Health Services Advisory Committee.
1304.3–3 Medical and dental history, screening, and examination.
1304.3–4 Medical and dental treatment.
1304.3–5 Medical and dental records.
1304.3–6 Health education.
1304.3–7 Mental health objectives.
1304.3–8 Mental health services.
1304.3–9 Nutrition objectives.
1304.3–10 Nutrition services.

Subpart D—Social Services Objectives and Performance Standards

1304.4–1 Social services objectives.
1304.4–2 Social services plan content.

Subpart E—Parent Involvement Objectives and Performance Standards

1304.5–1 Parent involvement objectives.
1304.5–2 Parent Involvement Plan content: Parent participation.
1304.5–3 Parent Involvement Plan content: Enhancing development of parenting skills.

Sec.
1304.5-4 Parent Involvement Plan content: Communications among program management, program staff, and parents.
1304.5-5 Parent Involvement Plan content: Parents, area residents, and the program.
APPENDIX A TO PART 1304—[RESERVED]
APPENDIX B TO PART 1304—HEAD START POLICY MANUAL: THE PARENTS

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 9801 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 40 FR 27562, June 30, 1975, unless otherwise noted.

EDITORIAL NOTE: Nomenclature changes to Part 1304 appear at 58 FR 5518, Jan. 21, 1993.

Subpart A—General

§ 1304.1-1 Purpose and application.

This part sets out the goals of the Head Start program as they may be achieved by the combined attainment of the objectives of the basic components of the program, with emphasis on the program performance standards necessary and required to attain those objectives. With the required development of plans covering the implementation of the performance standards, grantees and delegate agencies will have firm basès for operations most likely to lead to demonstrable benefits to children and their families. While compliance with the performance standards is required as a condition of Federal Head Start funding, it is expected that the standards will be largely self-enforcing. This part applies to all Head Start grantees and delegate agencies.

§ 1304.1-2 Definitions.

As used in this part:

(a) The term *ACYF* means the Administration on Children, Youth and Families, Administration for Children and Families, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, and includes appropriate Regional Office staff.

(b) The term *responsible HHS official* means the official who is authorized to make the grant of assistance in question, or his designee.

(c) The term *Commissioner* means the Commissioner of the Administration on Children, Youth and Families.

(d) The term *grantee* means the public or private non-profit agency which has been granted assistance by ACYF to carry on a Head Start program.

(e) The term *delegate agency* means a public or private nonprofit organization or agency to which a grantee has delegated the carrying on of all or part of its Head Start program.

(f) The term *goal* means the ultimate purpose or interest toward which total Head Start program efforts are directed.

(g) The term *objective* means the ultimate purpose or interest toward which Head Start program component efforts are directed.

(h) The term *program performance standards* or *performance standards* means the Head Start program functions, activities and facilities required and necessary to meet the objectives and goals of the Head Start program as they relate directly to children and their families.

(i) The term "children with disabilities" means children with mental retardation, hearing impairments including deafness, speech or language impairments, visual impairments including blindness, serious emotional disturbance, orthopedic impairments, autism, traumatic brain injury, other health impairments, or specific learning disabilities who, by reason thereof need special education and related services. The term "children with disabilities" for children aged 3 to 5, inclusive, may, at a State's discretion, include children experiencing developmental delays, as defined by the State and as measured by appropriate diagnostic instruments and procedures, in one or more of the following areas: physical development, cognitive development, communication development, social or emotional development, or adaptive development; and who, by reason thereof, need special education and related services.

[40 FR 27562, June 30, 1975, as amended at 58 FR 5518, Jan. 21, 1993]

§ 1304.1-3 Head Start Program goals.

(a) The Head Start Program is based on the premise that all children share certain needs, and that children of low income families, in particular, can benefit from a comprehensive developmental program to meet those needs. The Head Start program approach is based on the philosophy that:

(1) A child can benefit most from a comprehensive, interdisciplinary program to foster development and remedy problems as expressed in a broad range of services, and that

(2) The child's entire family, as well as the community must be involved. The program should maximize the strengths and unique experiences of each child. The family, which is perceived as the principal influence on the child's development, must be a direct participant in the program. Local communities are allowed latitude in developing creative program designs so long as the basic goals, objectives and standards of a comprehensive program are adhered to.

(b) The overall goal of the Head Start program is to bring about a greater degree of social competence in children of low income families. By social competence is meant the child's everyday effectiveness in dealing with both present environment and later responsibilities in school and life. Social competence takes into account the interrelatedness of cognitive and intellectual development, physical and mental health, nutritional needs, and other factors that enable a child to function optimally. The Head Start program is a comprehensive developmental approach to helping children achieve social competence. To the accomplishment of this goal, Head Start objectives and performance standards provide for:

(1) The improvement of the child's health and physical abilities, including appropriate steps to correct present physical and mental problems and to enhance every child's access to an adequate diet. The improvement of the family's attitude toward future health care and physical abilities.

(2) The encouragement of self-confidence, spontaneity, curiosity, and self-discipline which will assist in the development of the child's social and emotional health.

(3) The enhancement of the child's mental processes and skills with particular attention to conceptual and communications skills.

(4) The establishment of patterns and expectations of success for the child, which will create a climate of confidence for present and future learning efforts and overall development.

(5) An increase in the ability of the child and the family to relate to each other and to others.

(6) The enhancement of the sense of dignity and self-worth within the child and his family.

§ 1304.1-4 Performance standards plan development.

Each grantee and delegate agency shall develop a plan for implementing the performance standards prescribed in Subparts B, C, D, and E of this part for use in the operation of its Head Start program (hereinafter called "plan," or "performance standards plan"). The plan shall provide that the Head Start program covered thereby shall meet or exceed the performance standards. The plan shall be in writing and shall be developed by the appropriate professional Head Start staff of the grantee or delegate agency with cooperation from other Head Start staff, with technical assistance and advice as needed from personnel of the Regional Office and professional consultants, and with the advice and concurrence of the policy council or policy committee. The plan must be reviewed by grantee or delegate agency staff and the policy council or policy committee at least annually and revised and updated as may be necessary.

§ 1304.1-5 Performance standards implementation and enforcement.

(a) Grantees and delegate agencies must be in compliance with or exceed the performance standards prescribed in subparts B, C, D, and E, of this part at the commencement of the grantee's program year next following July 1, 1975, effective date of the regulations in this part, or 6 months after that date, whichever is later, and thereafter, unless the period for full compliance is extended in accordance with paragraph (f) of this section.

(b) If the responsible HHS official as a result of information obtained from program self-evaluation, pre-review, or routine monitoring, is aware or has reason to believe that a Head Start program, with respect to performance standards other than those for which the time for compliance has been extended in accordance with paragraph (f) of this section, is not in compliance with performance standards, he shall notify the grantee promptly in writing of the deficiencies and inform the grantee that it, or if the deficiencies are in a Head Start program operated by a delegate agency, the delegate agency, has a period stated in the notice not to exceed 90 days to come into compliance. If the notice is with respect to a delegate agency, the grantee shall immediately notify the delegate agency and inform it of the time within which the deficiencies must be corrected. Upon receiving the notice the grantee or delegate agency shall immediately analyze its operations to determine how it might best comply with the performance standards. In this process it shall review, among other things, its utilization of all available local resources, and whether it is receiving the benefits of State and other Federal programs for which it is eligible and which are available. It shall review and realign where feasible program priorities, operations, and financial and manpower allocations. It shall also consider the possibility of choosing an alternate program option for the delivery of Head Start Services in accordance with ACYF Notice N–30–334–1, Program Options for Project Head Start, attached hereto as Appendix A, which the grantee, with ACYF concurrence, determines that it would be able to operate as a quality program in compliance with performance standards.

(c) The grantee or delegate agency shall report in writing in detail its efforts to meet the performance standards within the time given in the notice to the responsible HHS official. A delegate agency shall report through the grantee. If the reporting agency, grantee or delegate agency, determines that it is unable to comply with the performance standards, the responsible HHS official shall be notified promptly in writing by the grantee, which notice shall contain a description of the deficiencies not able to be corrected and the reasons therefor. If insufficient funding is included as a principal reason for inability to comply with performance standards, the notice shall specify the exact amount, and basis for, the funding deficit and efforts made to obtain funding from other sources.

(d) The responsible HHS official on the basis of the reports submitted pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section, will undertake to assist grantees, and delegate agencies through their grantees, to comply with the performance standards, including by furnishing or by recommending technical assistance.

(e) If the grantee or delegate agency has not complied with the performance standards, other than those for which the time for compliance has been extended in accordance with paragraph (f) of this section, within the period stated in the notice issued under paragraph (b) of this section, the grantee shall be notified promptly by the responsible HHS official of the commencement of suspension or termination proceedings or of the intention to deny refunding, as may be appropriate, under part 1303 (appeals procedures) of this chapter.

(f) The time within which a grantee or delegate agency shall be required to correct deficiencies in implementation of the performance standards may be extended by the responsible HHS official to a maximum of one year, only with respect to the following deficiencies:

(1) The space per child provided by the Head Start program does not comply with the Education Services performance standard but there is no risk to the health or safety of the children;

(2) The Head Start program is unable to provide Medical or Dental Treatment Services as required by Health Services Performance Standards because funding is insufficient and there are no community or other resources available;

(3) The services of a mental health professional is not available or accessible to the program as required by the Health Services Performance Standards; or

(4) The deficient service is not able to be corrected within the 90 days notice period, notwithstanding full effort at compliance, because of lack of funds and outside community resources, but it is reasonable to expect that the services will be brought into compliance within the extended period, and, the

overall high quality of the Head Start program otherwise will be maintained during the extension.

Subpart B—Education Services Objectives and Performance Standards

§ 1304.2–1 Education services objectives.

The objectives of the Education Service component of the Head Start program are to:

(a) Provide children with a learning environment and the varied experiences which will help them develop socially, intellectually, physically, and emotionally in a manner appropriate to their age and stage of development toward the overall goal of social competence.

(b) Integrate the educational aspects of the various Head Start components in the daily program of activities.

(c) Involve parents in educational activities of the program to enhance their role as the principal influence on the child's education and development.

(d) Assist parents to increase knowledge, understanding, skills, and experience in child growth and development.

(e) Identify and reinforce experience which occur in the home that parents can utilize as educational activities for their children.

§ 1304.2–2 Education services plan content: Operations.

(a) The education services component of the performance standards plan shall provide strategies for achieving the education objectives. In so doing it shall provide for program activities that include an organized series of experiences designed to meet the individual differences and needs of participating children, the special needs of handicapped children, the needs of specific educational priorities of the local population and the community. Program activities must be carried out in a manner to avoid sex role stereotyping. In addition, the plan shall provide methods for assisting parents in understanding and using alternative ways to foster learning and development of their children.

(b) The education services component of the plan shall provide for:

(1) *A supportive social and emotional climate* which:

(i) Enhances children's understanding of themselves as individuals, and in relation to others, by providing for individual, small group, and large group, activities;

(ii) Gives children many opportunities for success through program activities;

(iii) Provides an environment of acceptance which helps each child build ethnic pride, a positive self-concept, enhance his individual strengths, and develop facility in social relationships.

(2) Development of intellectual skills by:

(i) Encouraging children to solve problems, initiate activities, explore, experiment, question, and gain mastery through learning by doing;

(ii) Promoting language understanding and use in an atmosphere that encourages easy communication among children and between children and adults;

(iii) Working toward recognition of the symbols for letters and numbers according to the individual developmental level of the children;

(iv) Encouraging children to organize their experiences and understand concepts; and

(v) Providing a balanced program of staff directed and child initiated activities.

(3) Promotion of physical growth by:

(i) Providing adequate indoor and outdoor space, materials, equipment, and time for children to use large and small muscles to increase their physical skills; and

(ii) Providing appropriate guidance while children are using equipment and materials in order to promote children's physical growth.

(c) The education services component of the plan shall provide for a program which is individualized to meet the special needs of children from various populations by:

(1) Having a curriculum which is relevant and reflective of the needs of the population served (bilingual/bicultural, multi-cultural, rural, urban, reservation, migrant, etc.);

(2) Having staff and program resources reflective of the racial and eth-

nic population of the children in the program.

(i) Including persons who speak the primary language of the children and are knowledgeable about their heritage; and, at a minimum, when a majority of the children speak a language other than English, at least one teacher or aide interacting regularly with the children must speak their language; and,

(ii) Where only a few children or a single child speak a language different from the rest, one adult in the center should be available to communicate in the native language;

(3) Including parents in curriculum development and having them serve as resource persons (e.g., for bilingual-bicultural activities).

(d) The education services component of the plan shall provide procedures for on-going observation, recording and evaluation of each child's growth and development for the purpose of planning activities to suit individual needs. It shall provide, also, for integrating the educational aspects of other Head Start components into the daily education services program.

(e) The plan shall provide methods for enhancing the knowledge and understanding of both staff and parents of the educational and developmental needs and activities of children in the program. These shall include:

(1) Parent participation in planning the education program, and in center, classroom and home program activities;

(2) Parent training in activities that can be used in the home to reinforce the learning and development of their children in the center;

(3) Parent training in the observation of growth and development of their children in the home environment and identification of and handling special developmental needs;

(4) Participation in staff and staff-parent conferences and the making of periodic home visits (no less than two) by members of the education staff;

(5) Staff and parent training, under a program jointly developed with all components of the Head Start program, in child development and behavioral developmental problems of preschool children; and

(6) Staff training in identification of and handling children with special needs and working with the parents of such children, and in coordinating relevant referral resources.

§ 1304.2-3 Education services plan content: Facilities.

(a) The education services component of the plan shall provide for a physical environment conducive to learning and reflective of the different stages of development of the children. Home-based projects must make affirmative efforts to achieve this environment. For center-based programs, space shall be organized into functional areas recognized by the children, and space, light, ventilation, heat, and other physical arrangements must be consistent with the health, safety, and developmental needs of the children. To comply with this standard:

(1) There shall be a safe and effective heating system;

(2) No highly flammable furnishings or decorations shall be used.

(3) Flammable and other dangerous materials and potential poisons shall be stored in locked cabinets or storage facilities accessible only to authorized persons;

(4) Emergency lighting shall be available in case of power failure;

(5) Approved, working fire extinguishers shall be readily available;

(6) Indoor and outdoor premises shall be kept clean and free, on a daily basis, of undesirable and hazardous material and conditions;

(7) Outdoor play areas shall be made so as to prevent children from leaving the premises and getting into unsafe and unsupervised areas;

(8) Paint coatings in premises used for care of children shall be determined to assure the absence of a hazardous quantity of lead;

(9) Rooms shall be well lighted;

(10) A source of water approved by the appropriate local authority shall be available in the facility; and adequate toilets and handwashing facilities shall be available and easily reached by children;

(11) All sewage and liquid wastes shall be disposed of through a sewer system approved by an appropriate, responsible authority, and garbage and

trash shall be stored in a safe and sanitary manner until collected;

(12) There shall be at least 35 square feet of indoor space per child available for the care of children (i.e., exclusive of bathrooms, halls, kitchen and storage places). There shall be at least 75 square feet per child outdoors; and

(13) Adequate provisions shall be made for handicapped children to ensure their safety and comfort.

Evidence that the center meets or exceeds State or local licensing requirements for similar kinds of facilities for fire, health and safety shall be accepted as prima facie compliance with the fire, health and safety requirements of this section.

(b) The plan shall provide for appropriate and sufficient furniture, equipment and materials to meet the needs of the program, and for their arrangement in such a way as to facilitate learning, assure a balanced program of spontaneous and structured activities, and encourage self-reliance in the children. The equipment and materials shall be:

(1) Consistent with the specific educational objectives of the local program;

(2) Consistent with the cultural and ethnic background of the children;

(3) Geared to the age, ability, and developmental needs of the children;

(4) Safe, durable, and kept in good condition;

(5) Stored in a safe and orderly fashion when not in use;

(6) Accessible, attractive, and inviting to the children; and

(7) Designed to provide a variety of learning experiences and to encourage experimentation and exploration.

Subpart C—Health Services Objectives and Performance Standards

§1304.3-1 Health services general objectives.

The general objectives of the health services component of the Head Start program are to:

(a) Provide a comprehensive health services program which includes a broad range of medical, dental, mental health and nutrition services to preschool children, including handicapped children, to assist the child's physical, emotional, cognitive and social development toward the overall goal of social competence.

(b) Promote preventive health services and early intervention.

(c) Provide the child's family with the necessary skills and insight and otherwise attempt to link the family to an ongoing health care system to ensure that the child continues to receive comprehensive health care even after leaving the Head Start program.

§1304.3-2 Health Services Advisory Committee.

The plan shall provide for the creation of a Health Services Advisory Committee whose purpose shall be advising in the planning, operation and evaluation of the health services program and which shall consist of Head Start parents and health services providers in the community and other specialists in the various health disciplines. (Existing committees may be modified or combined to carry out this function.)

§1304.3-3 Medical and dental history, screening, and examinations.

(a) The health services component of the performance standards plan shall provide that for each child enrolled in the Head Start program a complete medical, dental and developmental history will be obtained and recorded, a thorough health screening will be given, and medical and dental examinations will be performed. The plan will provide also for advance parent or guardian authorization for all health services under this subpart.

(b) Effective with the beginning of the 1993-94 program year, grantees must provide for health and developmental screenings by 45 days after the beginning of services for children in the fall, or for a child who enters late, by 45 days after the child enters into the program and must include:

(1) Growth assessment (head circumference up to two years old), height, weight and age.

(2) Vision testing.

(3) Hearing testing.

(4) Hemoglobin or hematocrit determination.

(5) Tuberculin testing indicated in ACYF Head Start Guidance Material.

(6) Urinalysis.

(7) Based on community health problems, other selected screenings where appropriate, e.g., sickle cell anemia, lead poisoning, and intestinal parasites.

(8) Assessment of current immunization status.

(9) During the course of health screening, procedures must be in effect for identifying speech problems, determining their cause, and providing services.

(10) Identification of the special needs of handicapped children.

(c) Medical examinations for children shall include:

(1) Examination of all systems or regions which are made suspect by the history or screening test.

(2) Search for certain defects in specific regions common or important in this age group, i.e., skin, eye, ear, nose, throat, heart, lungs, and groin (inguinal) area.

(d) The plan shall provide, also, in accordance with local and state health regulations that employed program staff have initial health examinations, periodic check-ups, and are found to be free from communicable disease; and, that voluntary staff be screened for tuberculosis.

[40 FR 27562, June 30, 1975, as amended at 58 FR 5518, Jan. 21, 1993]

§ 1304.3–4 Medical and dental treatment.

(a) The plan shall provide for treatment and follow-up services which include:

(1) Obtaining or arranging for treatment of all health problems detected. (Where funding is provided by non-Head Start funding sources there must be written documentation that such funds are used to the maximum feasible extent. Head Start funds may be used only when no other source of funding is available).

(2) Completion of all recommended immunizations—diptheria, pertussis, tetanus (DPT), polio, measles, German measles. Mumps immunization shall be provided where appropriate.

(3) Obtaining or arranging for basic dental care services as follows:

(i) Dental examination.

(ii) Services required for the relief of pain or infection.

(iii) Restoration of decayed primary and permanent teeth.

(iv) Pulp therapy for primary and permanent teeth as necessary.

(v) Extraction of non-restorable teeth.

(vi) Dental prophylaxis and instruction in self-care oral hygiene procedures.

(vii) Application of topical fluoride in communities which lack adequate fluoride levels in the public water supply.

(b) There must be a plan of action for medical emergencies. (Indicated in ACYF Head Start Guidance Material.)

§ 1304.3–5 Medical and dental records.

The plan shall provide for:

(a) The establishment and maintenance of individual health records which contain the child's medical and developmental history, screening results, medical and dental examination data, and evaluation of this material, and up-to-date information about treatment and follow-up;

(b) Forwarding, with parent consent, the records to either the school or health delivery system or both when the child leaves the program; and

(c) Giving parents a summary of the record which includes information on immunization and follow-up treatment; and

(d) Utilization of the Health Program Assessment Report (HPAR); and

(e) Assurance that in all cases parents will be told the nature of the data to be collected and the uses to which the data will be put, and that the uses will be restricted to the stated purposes.

§ 1304.3–6 Health education.

(a) The plan shall provide for an organized health education program for program staff, parents and children which ensures that:

(1) Parents are provided with information about all available health resources;

(2) Parents are encouraged to become involved in the health care process relating to their child. One or both parents should be encouraged to accom-

pany their child to medical and dental exams and appointments;

(3) Staff are taught and parents are provided the opportunity to learn the principles of preventive health, emergency first-aid measures, and safety practices;

(4) Health education is integrated into on-going classroom and other program activities.

(5) The children are familiarized with all health services they will receive prior to the delivery of those services.

§ 1304.3–7 Mental health objectives.

The objectives of the mental health part of the health services component of the Head Start program are to:

(a) Assist all children participating in the program in emotional, cognitive and social development toward the overall goal of social competence in coordination with the education program and other related component activities;

(b) Provide handicapped children and children with special needs with the necessary mental health services which will ensure that the child and family achieve the full benefits of participation in the program;

(c) Provide staff and parents with an understanding of child growth and development, an appreciation of individual differences, and the need for a supportive environment;

(d) Provide for prevention, early identification and early intervention in problems that interfere with a child's development;

(e) Develop a positive attitude toward mental health services and a recognition of the contribution of psychology, medicine, social services, education and other disciplines to the mental health program; and

(f) Mobilize community resources to serve children with problems that prevent them from coping with their environment.

§ 1304.3–8 Mental health services.

(a) The mental health part of the plan shall provide that a mental health professional shall be available, at least on a consultation basis, to the Head Start program and to the children. The mental health professional shall:

(1) Assist in planning mental health program activities;

(2) Train Head Start staff;

(3) Periodically observe children and consult with teachers and other staff;

(4) Advise and assist in developmental screening and assessment;

(5) Assist in providing special help for children with atypical behavior or development, including speech;

(6) Advise in the utilization of other community resources and referrals;

(7) Orient parents and work with them to achieve the objectives of the mental health program; and

(8) Take appropriate steps in conjunction with health and education services to refer children for diagnostic examination to determine whether their emotional or behavior problems have a physical basis.

(b) The plan shall also provide for:

(1) Attention to pertinent medical and family history of each child so that mental health services can be made readily available when needed;

(2) Use of existing community mental health resources;

(3) Coordination with the education services component to provide a program keyed to individual developmental levels;

(4) Confidentiality of records;

(5) Regular group meetings of parents and program staff;

(6) Parental consent for special mental health services;

(7) Opportunity for parents to obtain individual assistance; and,

(8) Active involvement of parents in planning and implementing the individual mental health needs of their children.

§ 1304.3–9 Nutrition objectives.

The objectives of the nutrition part of the health services component of the Head Start program are to:

(a) Help provide food which will help meet the child's daily nutritional needs in the child's home or in another clean and pleasant environment, recognizing individual differences and cultural patterns, and thereby promote sound physical, social, and emotional growth and development.

(b) Provide an environment for nutritional services which will support and promote the use of the feeding situation as an opportunity for learning;

(c) Help staff, child and family to understand the relationship of nutrition to health, factors which influence food practices, variety of ways to provide for nutritional needs and to apply this knowledge in the development of sound food habits even after leaving the Head Start program;

(d) Demonstrate the interrelationships of nutrition to other activities of the Head Start program and its contribution to the overall child development goals; and

(e) Involve all staff, parents and other community agencies as appropriate in meeting the child's nutritional needs so that nutritional care provided by Head Start complements and supplements that of the home and community.

§ 1304.3–10 Nutrition services.

(a) The nutrition services part of the health services component of the performance standards plan must identify the nutritional needs and problems of the children in the Head Start program and their families. In so doing account must be taken of:

(1) The nutrition assessment data (height, weight, hemoglobin hematocrit) obtained for each child;

(2) Information about family eating habits and special dietary needs and feeding problems, especially of handicapped children; and,

(3) Information about major community nutrition problems.

(b) The plan, designed to assist in meeting the daily nutritional needs of the children, shall provide that:

(1) Every child in a part-day program will receive a quantity of food in meals (preferably hot) and snacks which provides at least ⅓ of daily nutritional needs, with consideration for meeting any special needs of children, including the child with a handicapping condition;

(2) Every child in a full-day program will receive snack(s), lunch, and other meals as appropriate which will provide ½ to ⅔ of daily nutritional needs depending on the length of the program;

(3) All children in morning programs who have not received breakfast at the time they arrive at the Head Start program will be served a nourishing breakfast;

(4) The kinds of food served conform to minimum standards for meal patterns indicated in ACYF Head Start Guidance Material;

(5) The quantities of food served conform to recommended amounts indicated in ACYF Head Start guidance materials; and,

(6) Meal and snack periods are scheduled appropriately to meet children's needs and are posted along with menus; e.g., breakfast must be served at least 2½ hours before lunch, and snacks must be served at least 1½ hours before lunch or supper.

(c) The plan shall undertake to assure that the nutrition services contribute to the development and socialization of the children by providing that:

(1) A variety of foods which broaden the child's food experience in addition to those that consider cultural and ethnic preferences is served;

(2) Food is not used as punishment or reward, and that children are encouraged but not forced to eat or taste;

(3) The size and number of servings of food reflect consideration of individual children's needs;

(4) Sufficient time is allowed for children to eat;

(5) Chairs, tables, and eating utensils are suitable for the size and developmental level of the children with special consideration for meeting the needs of children with handicapping conditions;

(6) Children and staff, including volunteers, eat together sharing the same menu and a socializing experience in a relaxed atmosphere; and

(7) Opportunity is provided for the involvement of children in activities related to meal service. (For example: family style service.)

(d) The plan shall set forth an organized nutrition education program for staff, parents, and children. This program shall assure that:

(1) Meal periods and food are planned to be used as an integral part of the total education program;

(2) Children participate in learning activities planned to effect the selection and enjoyment of a wide variety of nutritious foods;

(3) Families receive education in the selection and preparation of foods to meet family needs, guidance in home and money management and help in consumer education so that they can fulfill their major role and responsibility for the nutritional health of the family;

(4) All staff, including administrative, receive education in principles of nutrition and their application to child development and family health, and ways to create a good physical, social and emotional environment which supports and promotes development of sound food habits and their role in helping the child and family to achieve adequate nutrition.

(e) The plan shall make special provision for the involvement of parents and appropriate community agencies in planning, implementing, and evaluating the nutrition services. It shall provide that:

(1) The Policy Council or Committee and the Health Services Advisory Committee have opportunity to review and comment on the nutrition services;

(2) The nutritional status of the children will be discussed with their parents;

(3) Information about menus and nutrition activities will be shared regularly with parents;

(4) Parents are informed of the benefits of food assistance programs; and

(5) Community agencies are enlisted to assist eligible families participate in food assistance programs.

(f) The plan shall provide for compliance with applicable local, State, and Federal sanitation laws and regulations for food service operations including standards for storage, preparation and service of food, and health of food handlers, and for posting of evidence of such compliance. The plan shall provide, also, that vendors and caterers supplying food and beverages comply with similar applicable laws and regulations.

(g) The plan shall provide for direction of the nutrition services by a qualified full-time staff nutritionist or for periodic and regularly scheduled supervision by a qualified nutritionist or dietitian as defined in the Head Start Guidance Material. Also, the plan shall provide that all nutrition services staff will receive preservice and in-service training as necessary to demonstrate and maintain proficiency in menu planning, food purchasing, food preparation and storage, and sanitation and personal hygiene.

(h) The plan shall provide for the establishment and maintenance of records covering the nutrition services budget, expenditures for food, menus utilized, numbers and types of meals served daily with separate recordings for children and adults, inspection reports made by health authorities, recipes and any other information deemed necessary for efficient operation.

Subpart D—Social Services Objectives and Performance Standards

§ 1304.4-1 Social services objectives.

The objectives of the social services component of the performance standards plan are to:

(a) Establish and maintain an outreach and recruitment process which systematically insures enrollment of eligible children.

(b) Provide enrollment of eligible children regardless of race, sex, creed, color, national origin, or handicapping condition.

(c) Achieve parent participation in the center and home program and related activities.

(d) Assist the family in its own efforts to improve the condition and quality of family life.

(e) Make parents aware of community services and resources and facilitate their use.

§ 1304.4-2 Social services plan content.

(a) The social services plan shall provide procedures for:

(1) Recruitment of children, taking into account the demographic make-up of the community and the needs of the children and families;

(2) Recruitment of handicapped children;

(3) Providing or referral for appropriate counseling;

(4) Emergency assistance or crisis intervention;

(5) Furnishing information about available community services and how to use them;

(6) Follow-up to assure delivery of needed assistance;

(7) Establishing a role of advocacy and spokesman for Head Start families;

(8) Contacting of parent or guardian with respect to an enrolled child whose participation in the Head Start program is irregular or who has been absent four consecutive days; and

(9) Identification of the social service needs of Head Start families and working with other community agencies to develop programs to meet those needs.

(b) The plan shall provide for close cooperation with existing community resources including:

(1) Helping Head Start parent groups work with other neighborhood and community groups with similar concerns;

(2) Communicating to other community agencies the needs of Head Start families and ways of meeting these needs;

(3) Helping to assure better coordination, cooperation, and information sharing with community agencies;

(4) Calling attention to the inadequacies of existing community services, or to the need for additional services, and assisting in improving available services, or bringing in new services; and

(5) Preparing and making available a community resource list to Head Start staff and families.

(c) The plan shall provide for the establishment, maintenance, and confidentiality of records of up-to-date, pertinent family data, including completed enrollment forms, referral and follow-up reports, reports of contacts with other agencies, and reports of contacts with families.

Subpart E—Parent Involvement Objectives and Performance Standards

§ 1304.5-1 Parent involvement objectives.

The objectives of the parent involvement component of the performance standards plan are to:

(a) Provide a planned program of experiences and activities which support and enhance the parental role as the principal influence in their child's education and development.

(b) Provide a program that recognizes the parent as:

(1) Responsible guardians of their children's well being.

(2) Prime educators of their children.

(3) Contributors to the Head Start program and to their communities.

(c) Provide the following kinds of opportunities for parent participation:

(1) Direct involvement in decision making in program planning and operations.

(2) Participation in classroom and other program activities as paid employees, volunteers or observers.

(3) Activities for parents which they have helped to develop.

(4) Working with their own children in cooperation with Head Start staff.

§ 1304.5-2 Parent Involvement Plan content: Parent participation.

(a) The basic parent participation policy of the Head Start program, with which all Head Start programs must comply as a condition of being granted financial assistance, is contained in Head Start Policy Manual, Instruction I-31—Section B2, The Parents (ACYF Transmittal Notice 70.2, dated August 10, 1970). This policy manual instruction is set forth in Appendix B to this part.

(b) The plan shall describe in detail the implementation of Head Start Policy Manual Instruction I-31—section B2, The Parents (Appendix B). The plan shall assure that participation of Head Start parents is voluntary and shall not be required as a condition of the child's enrollment.

§ 1304.5-3 Parent Involvement Plan content: Enhancing development of parenting skills.

The plan shall provide methods and opportunities for involving parents in:

(a) Experiences and activities which lead to enhancing the development of their skills, self-confidence, and sense of independence in fostering an environment in which their children can develop to their full potential.

(b) Experiences in child growth and development which will strengthen their role as the primary influence in their children's lives.

(c) Ways of providing educational and developmental activities for children in the home and community.

(d) Health, mental health, dental and nutrition education.

(e) Identification, and use, of family and community resources to meet the basic life support needs of the family.

(f) Identification of opportunities for continuing education which may lead towards self-enrichment and employment.

(g) Meeting with the Head Start teachers and other appropriate staff for discussion and assessment of their children's individual needs and progress.

§ 1304.5–4 Parent Involvement Plan content: Communications among program management, program staff, and parents.

(a) The plan shall provide for two-way communication between staff and parents carried out on a regular basis throughout the program year which provides information about the program and its services; program activities for the children; the policy groups; and resources within the program and the community. Communication must be designed and carried out in a way which reaches parents and staff effectively. Policy Groups, staff and parents must participate in the planning and development of the communication system used.

(b) The plan shall provide a system for the regular provision of information to members of Policy Groups. The purpose of such communication is to enable the Policy Group to make informed decisions in a timely and effective manner, to share professional expertise and generally to be provided with staff support. At a minimum, information provided will include:

(1) Timetable for planning, development, and submission of proposals;

(2) Head Start policies, guidelines, and other communications from the Administration on Children, Youth and Families;

(3) Financial reports and statements of funds expended in the Head Start account; and

(4) Work plans, grant applications, and personnel policies for Head Start.

(c) The entire Head Start staff shall share responsibility for providing assistance in the conduct of the above activities. In addition, Health Services, Education, and Social Services staff shall contribute their direct services to assist the Parent Involvement staff. If staff resources are not available, the necessary resources shall be sought within the community.

§ 1304.5–5 Parent Involvement Plan content: Parents, area residents, and the program.

The plan shall provide for:

(a) The establishment of effective procedures by which parents and area residents concerned will be enabled to influence the character of programs affecting their interests.

(b) Their regular participation in the implementation of such programs and,

(c) Technical and other support needed to enable parents and area residents to secure on their own behalf available assistance from public and private sources.

APPENDIX A TO PART 1304—[RESERVED]

APPENDIX B TO PART 1304—HEAD START POLICY MANUAL: THE PARENTS

This appendix sets forth policy governing the involvement of parents of Head Start children ". . . in the development, conduct, and overall program direction at the local level."

1–30–2 The Parents

A. INTRODUCTION

Head Start believes that the gains made by the child in Head Start must be understood and built upon by the family and the community. To achieve this goal, Head Start provides for the involvement of the child's parents and other members of the family in the experiences he receives in the child development center by giving them many opportunities for a richer appreciation of the young child's needs and how to satisfy them.

Many of the benefits of Head Start are rooted in "change". These changes must take place in the family itself, in the community, and in the attitudes of people and institutions that have an impact on both.

It is clear that the success of Head Start in bringing about substantial changes demands the fullest involvement of the parents, parental-substitutes, and families of children enrolled in its programs. This involvement begins when a Head Start program begins and should gain vigor and vitality as planning and activities go forward.

Successful parental involvement enters into every part of Head Start, influences other anti-poverty programs, helps bring about changes in institutions in the community, and works toward altering the social conditions that have formed the systems that surround the economically disadvantaged child and his family.

Project Head Start must continue to discover new ways for parents to become deeply involved in decision-making about the program and in the development of activities that they deem helpful and important in meeting their particular needs and conditions. For some parents, participation may begin on a simple level and move to more complex levels. For other parents the movement will be immediate, because of past experiences, into complex levels of sharing and giving. Every Head Start program is obligated to provide the channels through which such participation and involvement can be provided for and enriched.

Unless this happens, the goals of Head Start will not be achieved and the program itself will remain a creative experience for the preschool child in a setting that is not reinforced by needed changes in social systems into which the child will move after his Head Start experience.

This sharing in decisions for the future is one of the primary aims of parent participation and involvement in Project Head Start.

B. THE ROLE OF THE PARENTS

Every Head Start Program Must Have Effective Parent Participation. There are at least four major kinds of parent participation in local Head Start programs.

1. PARTICIPATION IN THE PROCESS OF MAKING DECISIONS ABOUT THE NATURE AND OPERATION OF THE PROGRAM.
2. PARTICIPATION IN THE CLASSROOM AS PAID EMPLOYEES, VOLUNTEERS OR OBSERVERS.
3. ACTIVITIES FOR THE PARENTS WHICH THEY HAVE HELPED TO DEVELOP.
4. WORKING WITH THEIR CHILDREN IN COOPERATION WITH THE STAFF OF THE CENTER.

Each of these is essential to an effective Head Start program both at the grantee level and the delegate agency level. Every Head Start program must hire/designate a Coordinator of Parent Activities to help bring about appropriate parent participation. This staff member may be a volunteer in smaller communities.

1. Parent Participation in the Process of Making Decisions About the Nature and Operation of the Program

Head Start Policy Groups

a. *Structure.* The formal structure by which parents can participate in policy making and operation of the program will vary with the local administrative structure of the program.

Normally, however, the Head Start policy groups will consist of the following:

1. *Head Start Center Committee.* This committee must be set up at the center level. Where centers have several classes, it is recommended that there also be parent class committees.

2. *Head Start Policy Committee.* This committee must be set up at the delegate agency level when the program is administered in whole or in part by such agencies.

3. *Head Start Policy Council.* This Council must be set up at the grantee level.

When a grantee has delegated the entire Head Start program to one Delegate Agency, it is not necessary to have a Policy Council in addition to a Delegate Agency Policy Committee. Instead one policy group serves both the Grantee Board and the Delegate Agency Board.

b. *Composition.* Chart A describes the composition of each of these groups.

Chart A

Organization	Composition
1. Head Start Center Committee	1. Parents whose children are enrolled in that center.
2. Head Start Policy Committee (delegate agency)	2. At least 50% parents of Head Start children presently enrolled in that delegate agency program plus representatives of the community.[1]
3. Head Start Policy Council (grantee)	3. At least 50% parents of Head Start children presently enrolled in that grantee's program plus representatives of the community.[2]

---

[1] *Representatives of the Community (Delegate Agency level):* A representative of neighborhood community groups (public and private) and of local neighborhood community or professional organizations, which have a concern for children of low income families and can contribute to the development of the program. The number of such representatives will vary depending on the number of organizations which should appropriately be represented. The Delegate Agency determines the composition of their committee (within the above guidelines) and methods to be used in selecting representatives of the community. Parents of former Head Start children may serve as representatives of the community on delegate agency policy groups. All representatives of the community selected by the agency must be approved by elected parent members of the committee. In no case, however, should representatives of the community exceed 50% of the total committee.

Special Notes

1. All parents serving on policy groups must be elected by parents of Head Start children currently enrolled in the program.

2. It is strongly recommended that the community action agency board have representation from the Head Start Policy Council to assure coordination of Head Start activities with other CAA programs. Conversely, community action agency board representation on the Policy Council is also recommended.

3. It is important that the membership of policy groups be rotated to assure a regular influx of new ideas into the program. For this purpose, terms of membership must be limited to no more than three years.

4. No staff member (nor members of their families as defined in CAP Memo 23A) of the applicant or delegate agencies shall serve on the council or committee in a voting capacity. Staff members may attend the meetings of councils or committees in a consultative non-voting capacity upon request of the council or committee.

5. Every corporate board operating a Head Start program must have a Policy Committee or Council as defined by HHS. The corporate body and the Policy Committee or Council must not be one and the same.

6. Policy groups for summer programs present a special problem because of the difficulty of electing parent representatives in advance. Therefore, the policy group for one summer program must remain in office until its successors have been elected and taken office. The group from the former program should meet frequently between the end of the program and the election of new members to assure some measure of program continuity. These meetings should be for the purpose of (a) assuring appropriate follow up of the children (b) aiding the development of the upcoming summer Head Start program, (c) writing of the application, (d) hiring of the director and establishment of criteria for hiring staff and, when necessary (e) orientation of the new members. In short, the policy group from a former program must not be dissolved until a new group is elected. The expertise of those parents who have previously served should be used whenever possible.

c. *Functions.* The following paragraphs and charts describe the minimum functions and degrees of responsibility for the various policy groups involved in administration of local Head Start programs. *Local groups may negotiate for additional functions and a greater share of responsibility if all parties agree.* All such agreements are subject to such limitations as may be called for by HHS policy. Questions about this should be referred to your HHS regional office.

(1) The Head Start Center Committee shall carry out at least the following minimum responsibilities:

(a) Assists teacher, center director, and all other persons responsible for the development and operation of every component including curriculum in the Head Start program.

(b) Works closely with classroom teachers and all other component staff to carry out the daily activities program.

(c) Plans, conducts, and participates in informal as well as formal programs and activities for center parents and staff.

(d) Participates in recruiting and screening of center employees within guidelines established by HHS, the Grantee Council and Board, and Delegate Agency Committee and Board.

(2) *The Head Start Policy Committee.* Chart B outlines the major management functions connected with local Head Start program administered by delegate agencies and the degree of responsibility assigned to each participating group.

In addition to those listed functions, the committee shall:

(a) Serve as a link between public and private organizations, the grantee Policy Council, the Delegate Agency Board of Directors, and the community it serves.

(b) Have the opportunity to initiate suggestions and ideas for program improvements and to receive a report on action taken by the administering agency with regard to its recommendations.

(c) Plan, coordinate and organize agency-wide activities for parents with the assistance of staff.

(d) Assist in communicating with parents and encouraging their participation in the program.

(e) Aid in recruiting volunteer services from parents, community residents and community organizations, and assist in the mobilization of community resources to meet identified needs.

(f) Administer the Parent Activity funds.

(3) *The Head Start Policy Council.* Chart C outlines the major management functions connected with the Head Start program at the grantee level, whether it be a community action or limited purpose agency, and the de-

---

[2] *Representatives of the Community (Grantee Agency level):* A representative of major agencies (public and private) and major community civic or professional organizations which have a concern for children of low income families and can contribute to the program. The number of such representatives will vary, depending on the number of organizations which should appropriately be represented. The applicant agency determines the composition of the council (within the above guidelines) and the methods to be used in selecting representatives of the community. Parents of former Head Start children may serve as representatives of the community on grantee agency policy groups. All representatives of the community selected by the agency must be approved by elected parent members of the committee. In no case, however, should representatives of the community exceed 50% of the total committee or council.

gree of responsibility assigned to each participating group.

In addition to those listed functions, the Council shall:

(a) Serve as a link between public and private organizations, the Delegate Agency Policy Committees, Neighborhood Councils, the Grantee Board of Directors and the community it serves.

(b) Have the opportunity to initiate suggestions and ideas for program improvements and to receive a report on action taken by the administering agency with regard to its recommendations.

(c) Plan, coordinate and organize agencywide activities for parents with the assistance of staff.

(d) Approve the selection of Delegate Agencies.

(e) Recruit volunteer services from parents, community residents and community organizations, and mobilizes community resources to meet identified needs.

(f) Distribute Parent Activity funds to Policy Committees.

It may not be easy for Head Start directors and professional staff to share responsibility when decisions must be made. Even when they are committed to involving parents, the Head Start staff must take care to avoid dominating meetings by force of their greater training and experience in the process of decisionmaking. At these meetings, professionals may be tempted to do most of the talking. They must learn to ask parents for their ideas, and listen with attention, patience and understanding. Self-confidence and self-respect are powerful motivating forces. Activities which bring out these qualities in parents can prove invaluable in improving family life of young children from low income homes.

Members of Head Start Policy Groups whose family income falls below the "poverty line index" may receive meeting allowances or be reimbursed for travel, per diem, meal and baby sitting expenses incurred because of Policy Group meetings. The procedures necessary to secure reimbursement funds and their regulations are detailed in OEO Instruction #6803-1.

2. Participation in the Classroom as Paid Employees, Volunteers or Observers

Head Start classes must be open to parents at times reasonable and convenient to them. There are very few occasions when the presence of a limited number of parents would present any problem in operation of the program.

Having parents in the classroom has three advantages. It:

a. Gives the parents a better understanding of what the center is doing for the children and the kinds of home assistance they may require.

b. Shows the child the depth of his parents concern.

c. Gives the staff an opportunity to know the parents better and to learn from them.

There are, of course, many center activities outside the classroom (e.g., field trips, clinic visits, social occasions) in which the presence of parents is equally desirable.

Parents are one of the categories of persons who must receive preference for employment as non-professionals. Participation as volunteers may also be possible for many parents. Experience obtained as a volunteer may be helpful in qualifying for non-professional employment. At a minimum parents should be encouraged to observe classes several times. In order to permit fathers to observe it might be a good idea to have some parts of the program in the evening or on weekends.

Head Start Centers are encouraged to set aside space within the Center which can be used by parents for meetings and staff conferences.

3. Activities for Parents Which They Have Helped To Develop

Head Start programs must develop a plan for parent education programs which are responsive to needs expressed by the parents themselves. Other community agencies should be encouraged to assist in the planning and implementation of these programs.

Parents may also wish to work together on community problems of common concern such as health, housing, education and welfare and to sponsor activities and programs around interests expressed by the group. Policy Committees must anticipate such needs when developing program proposals and include parent activity funds to cover the cost of parent sponsored activities.

4. Working With Their Children in Their Own Home in Connection with the Staff of the Center

HHS requires that each grantee make home visits a part of its program when parents permit such visits. Teachers should visit parents of summer children a minimum of once; in full year programs there should be at least three visits, if the parents have consented to such home visits. (Education staff are now required to make no less than two home visits during a given program year in accordance with §1304.2–2(e)(4).) In those rare cases where a double shift has been approved for teachers it may be necessary to use other types of personnel to make home visits. Personnel, such as teacher aides, health aides and social workers may also make home visits with, or independently of, the teaching staff but coordinated through the parent program staff in order to eliminate uncoordinated visits.

Head Start staff should develop activities to be used at home by other family members that will reinforce and support the child's total Head Start experience.

Staff, parents and children will all benefit from home visits and activities. Grantees shall not require that parents permit home visits as a condition of the child's participation in Head Start. However, every effort must be made to explain the advantages of visits to parents.

Definitions as used on charts B and C

A. *General Responsibility.* The individual or group with legal and fiscal responsibility guides and directs the carrying out of the function described through the person or group given operating responsibility.

B. *Operating Responsibility.* The individual or group that is directly responsible for carrying out or performing the function, consistent with the general guidance and direction of the individual or group holding general responsibility.

C. *Must Approve or Disapprove.* The individual or group (other than persons or groups holding general and operating responsibility, A and B above) must approve before the decision is finalized or action taken. The individual or group must also have been consulted in the decision making process prior to the point of seeking approval.

If they do not approve, the proposal cannot be adopted, or the proposed action taken, until agreement is reached between the disagreeing groups or individuals.

D. *Must be Consulted.* The individual or group must be called upon before any decision is made or approval is granted to give advice or information but not to make the decision or grant approval.

E. *May be Consulted.* The individual or group may be called upon for information, advice or recommendations by those individuals or groups having general responsibility or operating responsibility.

Function	Chart B—Delegate agency				Chart C—Grantee agency			
	Board	Executive director	Head Start policy committee	Head Start director	Board	Executive director	Head Start policy council	Head Start director
I. PLANNING								
(a) Identify child development needs in the area to be served (by CAA[1] if not delegated)	A	B	D	D	A	B	D	D
(b) Establish goals of Head Start program and develop ways to meet them within HHS guidelines	A	C	C	B	A	C	C	B
(c) Determine delegate agencies and areas in the community in which Head Start programs will operate					A	D	C	B
(d) Determine location of centers or classes	A	D	C	B				
(e) Develop plans to use all available community resources in Head Start	A	D	C	B	A	D	C	B
(f) Establish criteria for selection of children within applicable laws and HHS guidelines					A	C	C	B
(g) Develop plan for recruitment of children	A	C	C	B				
II. GENERAL ADMINISTRATION								
(a) Determine the composition of the appropriate policy group and the method for setting it up (within HHS guidelines)	A	B	C	D	A	B	C	D
(b) Determine what services should be provided to Head Start from the CAA[1] central office and the neighborhood centers					A	B	C	D
(c) Determine what services should be provided to Head Start from delegate agency	A	B	C	D				
(d) Establish a method of hearing and resolving community complaints about the Head Start program	D	C	A	B	D	C	A	B
(e) Direct the CAA[1] Head Start staff in day-to-day operations					E	A	E	B
(f) Direct the delegate agency Head Start staff in day-to-day operations	E	A	E	B				
(g) Insure that standards for acquiring space, equipment, and supplies are met	A	D	D	B	A	D	D	B

Function	Chart B—Delegate agency				Chart C—Grantee agency			
	Board	Executive director	Head Start policy committee	Head Start director	Board	Executive director	Head Start policy council	Head Start director
III. PERSONNEL ADMINISTRATION								
(a) Determine Head Start personnel policies (including establishment of hiring and firing criteria for Head Start staff, career development plans, and employee grievance procedures).								
Grantee agency	....	....	....	....	A	C	C	B
Delegate agency	A	C	C	B	....	....	....	....
(b) Hire and fire Head Start Director of grantee agency	....	....	....	....	A	B	C	....
(c) Hire and fire Head Start staff of grantee agency	....	....	....	....	E	A	C	B
(d) Hire and fire Head Start Director of delegate agency	A	B	C	....	....	....	....	....
(e) Hire and fire Head Start staff of delegate agency	E	A	C	B	....	....	....	....
IV. GRANT APPLICATION PROCESS								
(a) Prepare request for funds and proposed work program:								
Prior to sending to CAA[1]	A	C	C	B	....	....	....	....
Prior to sending to HHS	....	....	....	....	A	C	C	B
(b) Make major changes in budget and work program while program is in operation	A	C	C	B	A	C	C	B
(c) Provide information needed for prereview to policy council	A	D	C	B	....	....	....	....
(d) Provide information needed for prereview to HHS	....	....	....	....	A	D	C	B
V. EVALUATION								
Conduct self-evaluation of agency's Head Start program	A	D	B	D	A	D	B	D

[1] CAA or general term "grantee".

A=General responsibility
B=Operating responsibility
C=Must approve or disapprove
D=Must be consulted
E=May be consulted

PART 1305—ELIGIBILITY, RECRUITMENT, SELECTION, ENROLLMENT AND ATTENDANCE IN HEAD START

Sec.
1305.1 Purpose and scope.
1305.2 Definitions.
1305.3 Determining community needs.
1305.4 Age of children and family income eligibility.
1305.5 Recruitment of children.
1305.6 Selection process.
1305.7 Enrollment and re-enrollment.
1305.8 Attendance.
1305.9 Policy on fees.
1305.10 Compliance.

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 9801 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 57 FR 46725, Oct. 9, 1992, unless otherwise noted.

§ 1305.1 Purpose and scope.

This part prescribes requirements for determining community needs and recruitment areas. It contains requirements and procedures for the eligibility determination, recruitment, selection, enrollment and attendance of children in Head Start programs and explains the policy concerning the charging of fees by Head Start programs.

§ 1305.2 Definitions.

(a) *Children with disabilities* means children with mental retardation, hearing impairments including deafness, speech or language impairments, visual impairments including blindness, serious emotional disturbance, orthopedic impairments, autism, traumatic brain injury, other health impairments or specific learning disabilities who, by reason thereof need special education and related services. The term "children with disabilities" for children aged 3 to 5, inclusive, may, at a State's discretion, include children experiencing developmental delays, as defined by the State and as measured by appropriate diagnostic instruments and procedures, in one or more of the following areas: physical development, cognitive development, communication development, social or emotional development, or adaptive development; and who, by reason thereof, need special education and related services.

(b) *Enrollment* means the official acceptance of a family by a Head Start program and the completion of all procedures necessary for a child and family to begin receiving services.

(c) *Enrollment opportunities* mean vacancies that exist at the beginning of the enrollment year, or during the year because of children who leave the program, that must be filled for a program to achieve and maintain its funded enrollment.

(d) *Enrollment year* means the period of time, not to exceed twelve months, during which a Head Start program provides center or home-based services to a group of children and their families.

(e) *Family* means all persons living in the same household who are:

(1) Supported by the income of the parent(s) or guardian(s) of the child enrolling or participating in the program, and (2) related to the parent(s) or guardian(s) by blood, marriage, or adoption.

(f) *Funded enrollment* means the number of children which the Head Start grantee is to serve, as indicated on the grant award.

(g) *Head Start eligible* means a child that meets the requirements for age and family income as established in this regulation or, if applicable, as established by grantees that meet the requirements of section 645(a) (2) of the Head Start Act. Up to ten percent of the children enrolled may be from families that exceed the low-income guidelines.

(h) *Head Start program* means a Head Start grantee or its delegate agency(ies).

(i) *Income* means gross cash income and includes earned income, military income (including pay and allowances), veterans benefits, social security benefits, unemployment compensation, and public assistance benefits.

(j) *Income guidelines* means the official poverty line specified in section 652 of the Head Start Act.

(k) *Low-income family* means a family whose total annual income before taxes is equal to, or less than, the income guidelines. For the purpose of eligibility, a child from a family that is receiving public assistance or a child in foster care is eligible even if the family income exceeds the income guidelines.

(l) *Migrant family* means, for purposes of Head Start eligibility, a family with children under the age of compulsory school attendance who change their residence by moving from one geographic location to another, either intrastate or interstate, within the past twelve months, for the purpose of engaging in agricultural work that involves the production and harvesting of tree and field crops and whose family income comes primarily from this activity.

(m) *Recruitment* means the systematic ways in which a Head Start program identifies families whose children are eligible for Head Start services, informs them of the services available, and encourages them to apply for enrollment in the program.

(n) *Recruitment area* means that geographic locality within which a Head Start program seeks to enroll Head Start children and families. The recruitment area can be the same as the service area or it can be a smaller area or areas within the service area.

(o) *Responsible HHS official* means the official of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services having authority to make Head Start grant awards, or his or her designee.

(p) *Selection* means the systematic process used to review all applications for Head Start services and to identify those children and families that are to be enrolled in the program.

(q) *Service area* means the geographic area identified in an approved grant application within which a grantee may provide Head Start services.

(r) *Vacancy* means an unfilled enrollment opportunity for a child and family in the Head Start program.

[57 FR 46725, Oct. 9, 1992, as amended at 58 FR 5518, Jan. 21, 1993]

§ 1305.3 Determining community needs.

(a) Each grantee must identify its proposed service area in its Head Start grant application and define it by county or sub-county area, such as a municipality, town or census tract or a federally recognized Indian reservation. A grantee's service area must be approved, in writing, by the responsible HHS official in order to assure that the service area is of reasonable size and does not overlap with that of other Head Start grantees.

(b) Each Head Start grantee must conduct a community needs assessment within its service area once every three years. The community needs assessment must include the collection and analysis of the following information about the grantee's Head Start service area:

(1) The demographic make-up of Head Start eligible children and families, including their estimated number, geographic location, and racial and ethnic composition;

(2) Other child development and child care programs that are serving Head Start eligible children, including publicly funded State and local preschool programs, and the approximate number of Head Start eligible children served by each;

(3) The estimated number of children with disabilities four years old or younger, including types of disabilities and relevant services and resources provided to these children by community agencies;

(4) Data regarding the education, health, nutrition and social service needs of Head Start eligible children and their families;

(5) The education, health, nutrition and social service needs of Head Start eligible children and their families as defined by families of Head Start eligible children and by institutions in the community that serve young children;

(6) Resources in the community that could be used to address the needs of Head Start eligible children and their families, including assessments of their availability and accessibility.

(c) The Head Start grantee must use information from the community needs assessment to:

(1) Help determine the grantee's philosophy, and its long-range and short-range program objectives;

(2) Determine the type of component services that are most needed and the program option or options that will be implemented;

(3) Determine the recruitment area that will be served by the grantee, if limitations in the amount of resources make it impossible to serve the entire service area.

(4) If there are delegate agencies, determine the recruitment area that will be served by the grantee and the recruitment area that will be served by each delegate agency.

(5) Determine appropriate locations for centers and the areas to be served by home-based programs; and

(6) Set criteria that define the types of children and families who will be given priority for recruitment and selection.

(d) In each of the two years following completion of the community needs assessment, the grantee must conduct a review to determine whether there have been significant changes in the information described in paragraph (b) of this section. If so, the community needs assessment must be updated and the decisions described in paragraph (c) of this section must be reconsidered.

(e) The recruitment area must include the entire service area, unless the resources available to the Head Start grantee are inadequate to serve the entire service area.

(f) In determining the recruitment area when it does not include the entire service area, the grantee must:

(1) Select an area or areas that are among those having the greatest need for Head Start services as determined by the community needs assessment; and

(2) Include as many Head Start eligible children as possible within the recruitment area, so that:

(i) The greatest number of Head Start eligible children can be recruited and have an opportunity to be considered for selection and enrollment in the Head Start program, and

(ii), the Head Start program can enroll the children and families with the greatest need for its services.

§ 1305.4 Age of children and family income eligibility.

(a) To be eligible for Head Start services, a child must be at least three years old by the date used to determine eligibility for public school in the community in which the Head Start program is located, except in cases where the Head Start program's approved grant provides specific authority to serve younger children. Examples of such exceptions are programs serving children of migrant families and Parent and Child Center programs.

(b) At least 90 percent of the children who are enrolled in each Head Start program must be from low-income families. Up to ten percent of the children who are enrolled may be children from families that exceed the low-income guidelines but who meet criteria the program has established for selecting such children and who would benefit from Head Start services.

(c) The family income must be verified by the Head Start program before determining that a child is eligible to participate in the program.

(d) Verification must include examination of any of the following: Individual Income Tax Form 1040, W-2 forms, pay stubs, pay envelopes, written statements from employers, or documentation showing current status as recipients of public assistance.

(e) A signed statement by an employee of the Head Start program, identifying which of these documents was examined and stating that the child is eligible to participate in the program, must be maintained to indicate that income verification has been made.

§ 1305.5 Recruitment of children.

(a) In order to reach those most in need of Head Start services, each Head Start grantee and delegate agency must develop and implement a recruitment process that is designed to actively inform all families with Head Start eligible children within the recruitment area of the availability of services and encourage them to apply for admission to the program. This process may include canvassing the local community, use of news releases and advertising, and use of family referrals and referrals from other public and private agencies.

(b) During the recruitment process that occurs prior to the beginning of the enrollment year, a Head Start program must solicit applications from as many Head Start eligible families within the recruitment area as possible. If necessary, the program must assist families in filling out the application form in order to assure that all information needed for selection is completed.

(c) Each program, except migrant programs, must obtain a number of applications during the recruitment process that occurs prior to the beginning of the enrollment year that is greater than the enrollment opportunities that are anticipated to be available over the course of the next enrollment year in order to select those with the greatest need for Head Start services.

§ 1305.6 Selection process.

(a) Each Head Start program must have a formal process for establishing selection criteria and for selecting children and families that considers all eligible applicants for Head Start services. The selection criteria must be based on those contained in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section.

(b) In selecting the children and families to be served, the Head Start program must consider the income of eligible families, the age of the child, the availability of kindergarten or first grade to the child, and the extent to which a child or family meets the criteria that each program is required to establish in § 1305.3(c)(6).

(c) At least 10 percent of the total number of enrollment opportunities in each grantee and each delegate agency during an enrollment year must be made available to children with disabilities who meet the definition for children with disabilities in § 1305.2(a). An exception to this requirement will be granted only if the responsible HHS official determines, based on such supporting evidence as he or she may require, that the grantee made a reasonable effort to comply with this requirement but was unable to do so because there was an insufficient number of children with disabilities in the recruitment area who wished to attend the program and for whom the program was an appropriate placement based on their Individual Education Plans (IEP), with services provided directly by Head Start or in conjunction with other providers.

(d) Each Head Start program must develop at the beginning of each enrollment year and maintain during the year a waiting list that ranks children according to the program's selection criteria to assure that eligible children enter the program as vacancies occur.

§ 1305.7 Enrollment and re-enrollment.

(a) Each child enrolled in a Head Start program, except those enrolled in a migrant program, must be allowed to remain in Head Start until kindergarten or first grade is available for the child in the child's community, except that the Head Start program may choose not to enroll a child when there are compelling reasons for the child not to remain in Head Start, such as when there is a change in the child's family income and there is a child with a greater need for Head Start services.

(b) A Head Start grantee must maintain its funded enrollment level. When a program determines that a vacancy exists, no more than 30 calendar days may elapse before the vacancy is filled. A program may elect not to fill a vacancy when 60 calendar days or less remain in the program's enrollment year.

(c) If a child has been found income eligible and is participating in a Head Start program, he or she remains income eligible through that enrollment year and the immediately succeeding enrollment year.

§ 1305.8 Attendance.

(a) When the monthly average daily attendance rate in a center-based program falls below 85 percent, a Head Start program must analyze the causes of absenteeism. The analysis must include a study of the pattern of absences for each child, including the reasons for absences as well as the number of absences that occur on consecutive days.

(b) If the absences are a result of illness or if they are well documented absences for other reasons, no special action is required. If, however, the absences result from other factors, including temporary family problems that affect a child's regular attendance, the program must initiate appropriate family support procedures for all children with four or more consecutive unexcused absences. These procedures must include home visits or other direct contact with the child's parents. Contacts with the family must emphasize the benefits of regular attendance, while at the same time remaining sensitive to any special family circumstances influencing attendance patterns. All contacts with the child's family as well as special family support service activities provided by program staff must be documented.

(c) In circumstances where chronic absenteeism persists and it does not seem feasible to include the child in either the same or a different program option, the child's slot must be considered an enrollment vacancy.

§ 1305.9 Policy on fees.

A Head Start program must not prescribe any fee schedule or otherwise provide for the charging of any fees for participation in the program. If the family of a child determined to be eligible for participation by a Head Start program volunteers to pay part or all of the costs of the child's participation, the Head Start program may accept the voluntary payments and record the payments as program income.

Under no circumstances shall a Head Start program solicit, encourage, or in any other way condition a child's enrollment or participation in the program upon the payment of a fee.

§ 1305.10 Compliance.

A grantee's failure to comply with the requirements of this Part may result in a denial of refunding or termination in accordance with 45 CFR part 1303.

PART 1306—HEAD START STAFFING REQUIREMENTS AND PROGRAM OPTIONS

SUBPART A—GENERAL

Sec.
1306.1 Purpose and scope.
1306.2 Effective dates.
1306.3 Definitions.

SUBPART B—HEAD START PROGRAM STAFFING REQUIREMENTS.

1306.20 Program staffing patterns.
1306.21 Staff qualification requirements.
1306.22 Volunteers.
1306.23 Training.

SUBPART C—HEAD START PROGRAM OPTIONS

1306.30 Provision of comprehensive child development services.
1306.31 Choosing a Head Start program option.
1306.32 Center-based program option.
1306.33 Home-based program option.
1306.34 Combination program option.
1306.35 Additional Head Start program option variations.
1306.36 Compliance waiver.

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 9831 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 57 FR 58092, Dec. 8, 1992, unless otherwise noted.

SUBPART A—GENERAL

§ 1306.1 Purpose and scope.

This part sets forth requirements for Head Start program staffing and program options that all Head Start grantees, with the exception of the Parent Child Center programs, are required to meet. These requirements, including those pertaining to staffing patterns, the choice of the program options to be implemented and the acceptable ranges in the implementation of those options, have been developed to help maintain and improve the quality of Head Start and to help promote lasting benefits to the children and families being served.

§ 1306.2 Effective dates.

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, Head Start grantees funded or refunded after June 7, 1993, must comply with these requirements by such times in their grant cycles as new groups of children begin receiving services. This does not preclude grantees from voluntarily coming into compliance with these regulations prior to the effective date.

(b) With respect to the requirements of §1306.32(b)(2), grantees that are currently operating classes in double session center-based options for less than three and a half hours per day, but for at least three hours per day, may continue to do so until September 1, 1995, at which time they must comply with the three and one-half hour minimum class time requirement.

§ 1306.3 Definitions.

(a) *Center-based program option* means Head Start services provided to children primarily in classroom settings.

(b) *Combination program option* means Head Start services provided to children in both a center setting and through intensive work with the child's parents and family at home.

(c) *Days of operation* means the planned days during which children will be receiving direct Head Start component services in a classroom, on a field trip or on trips for health-related activities, in group socialization or when parents are receiving a home visit.

(d) *Double session variation* means a variation of the center-based program option that operates with one teacher who works with one group of children in a morning session and a different group of children in an afternoon session.

(e) *Full-day variation* means a variation of the center-based program option in which program operations continue for longer than six hours per day.

(f) *Group socialization activities* means the sessions in which children and parents enrolled in the home-based or combination program option interact with other home-based or combination children and parents in a Head Start classroom, community facility, home, or on a field trip.

(g) *Head Start class* means a group of children supervised and taught by two paid staff members (a teacher and a teacher aide or two teachers) and, where possible, a volunteer.

(h) *Head Start parent* means a Head Start child's mother or father, other family member who is a primary caregiver, foster parent, guardian or the person with whom the child has been placed for purposes of adoption pending a final adoption decree.

(i) *Head Start program* is one operated by a Head Start grantee or delegate agency.

(j) *Home-based program option* means Head Start services provided to children, primarily in the child's home, through intensive work with the child's parents and family as the primary factor in the growth and development of the child.

(k) *Home visits* means the visits made to a child's home by the class teacher in a center-based program option, or home visitors in a home-based program option, for the purpose of assisting parents in fostering the growth and development of their child.

(l) *Hours of operation* means the planned hours per day during which children and families will be receiving direct Head Start component services in a classroom, on a field trip, while receiving medical or dental services, or during a home visit or group socialization activity. Hours of operation do not include travel time to and from the center at the beginning and end of a session.

(m) *Parent-teacher conference* means the meeting held at the Head Start center between the child's teacher and the child's parents during which the child's progress and accomplishments are discussed.

SUBPART B—HEAD START PROGRAM STAFFING REQUIREMENTS

§ 1306.20 Program staffing patterns.

(a) Grantees must provide adequate supervision of their staff.

(b) Grantees operating center-based program options must employ two paid staff persons (a teacher and a teacher aide or two teachers) for each class. Whenever possible, there should be a third person in the classroom who is a volunteer.

(c) Grantees operating home-based program options must employ home visitors responsible for home visits and group socialization activities.

(d) Grantees operating a combination program option must employ, for their classroom operations, two paid staff persons, a teacher and a teacher aide or two teachers, for each class. Whenever possible, there should be a third person in the classroom who is a volunteer. They must employ staff for home visits who meet the qualifications the grantee requires for home visitors.

(e) Classroom staff and home visitors must be able to communicate with the families they serve either directly or through a translator. They should also be familiar with the ethnic background of these families.

§ 1306.21 Staff qualification requirements.

Head Start programs must comply with section 648 of the Head Start Act and any subsequent amendments, regarding the qualifications of classroom teachers.

§ 1306.22 Volunteers.

(a) Head Start programs must use volunteers to the fullest extent possible. Head Start grantees must develop and implement a system to actively recruit, train and utilize volunteers in the program.

(b) Special efforts must be made to have volunteer participation, especially parents, in the classroom and during group socialization activities.

§ 1306.23 Training.

(a) Head Start grantees must provide pre-service training and in-service training opportunities to program staff and volunteers to assist them in acquiring or increasing the knowledge and skills they need to fulfill their job responsibilities. This training must be directed toward improving the ability of staff and volunteers to deliver services required by Head Start regulations and policies.

(b) Head Start grantees must provide staff with information and training about the underlying philosophy and goals of Head Start and the program options being implemented.

SUBPART C—HEAD START PROGRAM OPTIONS

§ 1306.30 Provisions of comprehensive child development services.

(a) All Head Start grantees must provide comprehensive child development services, as defined in the Head Start Performance Standards.

(b) All Head Start grantees must provide classroom or group socialization activities for the child as well as home visits to the parents. The major purpose of the classroom or socialization activities is to help meet the child's development needs and to foster the child's social competence. The major purpose of the home visits is to enhance the parental role in the growth and development of the child.

(c) The facilities used by Head Start grantees for regularly scheduled center-based and combination program option classroom activities or home-based socialization activities must comply with State and local requirements concerning licensing. In cases where these licensing standards are less comprehensive or less stringent than Head Start regulations, or where no State or local licensing standards are applicable, grantees are, at a minimum, required to assure that their facilities are in compliance with Head Start Performance Standards related to health and safety found in 45 CFR 1304.2–3.

(d) All grantees must identify, secure and use community resources in the provision of services to Head Start children and their families prior to using Head Start funds for these services.

§ 1306.31 Choosing a Head Start program option.

(a) Grantees may choose to implement one or more than one of three program options: a center-based option, a home-based program option or a combination program option.

(b) The program option chosen must meet the needs of the children and families as indicated by the community needs assessment conducted by the grantee.

(c) When assigning children to a particular program option, Head Start grantees that operate more than one program option must consider such factors as the child's age, developmental level, disabilities, health or learning problems, previous preschool experiences and family situation. Grantees must also consider parents' concerns and wishes prior to making final assignments.

§ 1306.32 Center-based program option.

(a) *Class size.* (1) Head Start classes must be staffed by a teacher and an aide or two teachers and, whenever possible, a volunteer.

(2) Grantees must determine their class size based on the predominant age of the children who will participate in the class and whether or not a center-based double session variation is being implemented.

(3) For classes serving predominantly four or five-year-old children, the average class size of that group of classes must be between 17 and 20 children, with no more than 20 children enrolled in any one class.

(4) When double session classes serve predominantly four or five-year-old-children, the average class size of that group of classes must be between 15 and 17 children. A double session class for four or five-year old children may have no more than 17 children enrolled. (See paragraph (c) of this section for other requirements regarding the double session variation.)

(5) For classes serving predominantly three-year-old children, the average class size of that group of classes must be between 15 and 17 children, with no more than 17 children enrolled in any one class.

(6) When double session classes serve predominantly three-year-old children, the average class size of that group of classes must be between 13 and 15 children. A double session class for three-year-old children may have no more than 15 children enrolled. (See paragraph (c) of this section for other requirements regarding the double session variation.)

(7) It is recommended that at least 13 children be enrolled in each center-based option class where feasible.

(8) A class is considered to serve predominantly four- or five-year-old children if more than half of the children in the class will be four or five years old by whatever date is used by the State or local jurisdiction in which the Head Start program is located to determine eligibility for public school.

(9) A class is considered to serve predominantly three-year-old children if more than half of the children in the class will be three years old by what-

ever date is used by the State or local jurisdiction in which Head Start is located to determine eligibility for public school.

(10) Head Start grantees must determine the predominant age of children in the class at the start of the year. There is no need to change that determination during the year.

(11) In some cases, State or local licensing requirements may be more stringent than these class requirements, preventing the required minimum numbers of children from being enrolled in the facility used by Head Start. Where this is the case, Head Start grantees must try to find alternative facilities that satisfy licensing requirements for the numbers of children cited above. If no alternative facilities are available, the responsible HHS official has the discretion to approve enrollment of fewer children than required above.

(12) The chart below may be used for easy reference:

Predominant age of children in the class	Funded class size [Funded enrollment]
4 and 5 year olds	Program average of 17–20 children enrolled per class in these classes. No more than 20 children enrolled in any class.
4 and 5 year olds in double session classes.	Program average of 15–17 children enrolled per class in these classes. No more than 17 children enrolled in any class.
3 year olds	Program average of 15–17 children enrolled per class in these classes. No more than 17 children enrolled in any class.
3 year olds in double session classes.	Program average of 13–15 children enrolled per class in these classes. No more than 15 children enrolled in any class.

(b) *Center-based program option requirements.* (1) Classes must operate for four or five days per week or some combination of four and five days per week.

(2) Classes must operate for a minimum of three and one-half to a maximum of six hours per day with four hours being optimal.

(3) The annual number of required days of planned class operations (days when children are scheduled to attend) is determined by the number of days per week each program operates. Programs that operate for four days per week must provide at least 128 days per year of planned class operations. Programs that operate for five days per week must provide at least 160 days per year of planned class operations. Grantees implementing a combination of four and five days per week must plan to operate between 128 and 160 days per year. The minimum number of planned days of service per year can be determined by computing the relative number of four and five day weeks that the program is in operation. All center-based program options must provide a minimum of 32 weeks of scheduled days of class operations over an eight or nine month period. Every effort should be made to schedule makeup classes using existing resources if planned class days fall below the number required per year.

(4) Programs must make a reasonable estimate of the number of days during a year that classes may be closed due to problems such as inclement weather or illness, based on their experience in previous years. Grantees must make provisions in their budgets and program plans to operate makeup classes and provide these classes, when needed, to prevent the number of days of service available to the children from falling below 128 days per year.

(5) Each individual child is not required to receive the minimum days of service, although this is to be encouraged in accordance with Head Start policies regarding attendance. The minimum number of days also does not apply to children with disabilities whose individualized education plan may require fewer planned days of service in the Head Start program.

(6) Head Start grantees operating migrant programs are not subject to the requirement for a minimum number of planned days, but must make every effort to provide as many days of service as possible to each migrant child and family.

(7) Staff must be employed for sufficient time to allow them to participate in pre-service training, to plan and set up the program at the start of the year, to close the program at the end of the year, to conduct home visits, to conduct health examinations, screening

and immunization activities, to maintain records, and to keep service component plans and activities current and relevant. These activities should take place outside of the time scheduled for classes in center-based programs or home visits in home-based programs.

(8) Head Start grantees must develop and implement a system that actively encourages parents to participate in two home visits annually for each child enrolled in a center-based program option. These visits must be initiated and carried out by the child's teacher. The child may not be dropped from the program if the parents will not participate in the visits.

(9) Head Start grantees operating migrant programs are required to plan for a minimum of two parent-teacher conferences for each child during the time they serve that child. Should time and circumstance allow, migrant programs must make every effort to conduct home visits.

(c) *Double session variation.* (1) A center-based option with a double session variation employs a single teacher to work with one group of children in the morning and a different group of children in the afternoon. Because of the larger number of children and families to whom the teacher must provide services, double session program options must comply with the requirements regarding class size explained in paragraph (a) of this section and with all other center-based requirements in paragraph (b) of this section with the exceptions and additions noted in paragraphs (c) (2) and (3) of this section.

(2) Each program must operate classes for four days per week.

(3) Each double session classroom staff member must be provided adequate break time during the course of the day. In addition, teachers, aides and volunteers must have appropriate time to prepare for each session together, to set up the classroom environment and to give individual attention to children entering and leaving the center.

(d) *Full day variation.* (1) A Head Start grantee implementing a center-based program option may operate a full day variation and provide more than six hours of class operations per day using Head Start funds. These programs must comply with all the requirements regarding the center-based program option found in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section with the exception of paragraph (b)(2) regarding the hours of service per day.

(2) Programs are encouraged to meet the needs of Head Start families for full day services by securing funds from other agencies. Before implementing a full day variation of a center-based option, a Head Start grantee should demonstrate that alternative enrollment opportunities or funding from non-Head Start sources are not available for Head Start families needing full-day child care services.

(3) Head Start grantees may provide full day services only to those children and families with special needs that justify full day services or to those children whose parents are employed or in job training with no caregiver present in the home. The records of each child receiving services for more than six hours per day must show how each child meets the criteria stated above.

(e) Non-Head Start services. Grantees may charge for services which are provided outside the hours of the Head Start program.

§ 1306.33 Home-based program option.

(a) Grantees implementing a home-based program option must:

(1) Provide one home visit per week per family (a minimum of 32 home visits per year) lasting for a minimum of 1 and ½ hours each.

(2) Provide, at a minimum, two group socialization activities per month for each child (a minimum of 16 group socialization activities each year).

(3) Make up planned home visits or scheduled group socialization activities that were canceled by the grantee or by program staff when this is necessary to meet the minimums stated above. Medical or social service appointments may not replace home visits or scheduled group socialization activities.

(4) Allow staff sufficient employed time to participate in pre-service training, to plan and set up the program at the start of the year, to close the program at the end of the year, to maintain records, and to keep component and activities plans current and

relevant. These activities should take place when no home visits or group socialization activities are planned.

(5) Maintain an average caseload of 10 to 12 families per home visitor with a maximum of 12 families for any individual home visitor.

(b) Home visits must be conducted by trained home visitors with the content of the visit jointly planned by the home visitor and the parents. Home visitors must conduct the home visit with the participation of parents. Home visits may not be conducted by the home visitor with only babysitters or other temporary caregivers in attendance.

(1) The purpose of the home visit is to help parents improve their parenting skills and to assist them in the use of the home as the child's primary learning environment. The home visitor must work with parents to help them provide learning opportunities that enhance their child's growth and development.

(2) Home visits must, over the course of a month, contain elements of all Head Start program components. The home visitor is the person responsible for introducing, arranging and/or providing Head Start services.

(c) Group socialization activities must be focused on both the children and parents. They may not be conducted by the home visitor with babysitters or other temporary caregivers.

(1) The purpose of these socialization activities for the children is to emphasize peer group interaction through age appropriate activities in a Head Start classroom, community facility, home, or on a field trip. The children are to be supervised by the home visitor with parents observing at times and actively participating at other times.

(2) These activities must be designed so that parents are expected to accompany their children to the group socialization activities at least twice each month to observe, to participate as volunteers or to engage in activities designed specifically for the parents.

(3) Grantees must follow the nutrition requirements specified in 45 CFR 1304.3–10(b)(1) and provide appropriate snacks and meals to the children during group socialization activities.

§ 1306.34 Combination program option.

(a) *Combination program option requirements*: (1) Grantees implementing a combination program option must provide class sessions and home visits that result in an amount of contact with children and families that is, at a minimum, equivalent to the services provided through the center-based program option or the home-based program option.

(2) Acceptable combinations of minimum number of class sessions and corresponding number of home visits are shown below. Combination programs must provide these services over a period of 8 to 12 months.

Number of class sessions	Number of home visits
96	8
92–95	9
88–91	10
84–87	11
80–83	12
76–79	13
72–75	14
68–71	15
64–67	16
60–63	17
56–59	18
52–55	19
48–51	20
44–47	21
40–43	22
36–39	23
32–35	24

(3) The following are examples of various configurations that are possible for a program that operates for 32 weeks:

- A program operating classes three days a week and providing one home visit a month (96 classes and 8 home visits a year);
- A program operating classes two days a week and providing two home visits a month (64 classes and 16 home visits a year);
- A program operating classes one day a week and providing three home visits a month (32 classes and 24 home visits a year).

(4) Grantees operating the combination program option must make a reasonable estimate of the number of days during a year that centers may be closed due to problems such as inclement weather or illness, based on their experience in previous years. Grantees must make provisions in their budgets and program plans to operate make-up classes up to the estimated number, and provide these classes, when necessary, to prevent the number of days

of classes from falling below the number required by paragraph (a)(2) of this section. Grantees must make up planned home visits that were canceled by the program or by the program staff if this is necessary to meet the minimums required by paragraph (a)(2) of this section. Medical or social service appointments may not replace home visits.

(b) *Requirements for class sessions:* (1) Grantees implementing the combination program option must comply with the class size requirements contained in §1306.32(a).

(2) The provisions of the following sections apply to grantees operating the combination program option: §1306.32(b) (2), (5), (6), (7) and (9).

(3) If a grantee operates a double session or a full day variation, it must meet the provisions concerning double-sessions contained in §1306.32(c)(1) and (3) and the provisions for the center-based program option's full day variation found in §1306.32(d).

(c) *Requirements for home visits:* (1) Home visits must last for a minimum of 1 and ½ hours each.

(2) The provisions of the following section, concerning the home-based program option, must be adhered to by grantees implementing the combination program option: §1306.33(a) (4) and (5); and §1306.33(b).

§1306.35 Additional Head Start program option variations.

In addition to the center-based, home-based and combination program options defined above, the Commissioner of the Administration on Children, Youth and Families retains the right to fund alternative program variations to meet the unique needs of communities or to demonstrate or test alternative approaches for providing Head Start services.

§1306.36 Compliance waiver.

An exception to one or more of the requirements contained in §§1306.32 through 1306.34 of subpart C will be granted only if the Commissioner of the Administration on Children, Youth and Families determines, on the basis of supporting evidence, that the grantee made a reasonable effort to comply with the requirement but was unable to do so because of limitations or circumstances with a specific community or communities served by the grantee.

PART 1308—HEAD START PROGRAM PERFORMANCE STANDARDS ON SERVICES FOR CHILDREN WITH DISABILITIES

Subpart A—General

Sec.
1308.1 Purpose.
1308.2 Scope.
1308.3 Definitions.

Subpart B—Disabilities Service Plan

1308.4 Purpose and scope of disabilities service plan.

Subpart C—Social Services Performance Standards

1308.5 Recruitment and enrollment of children with disabilities.

Subpart D—Health Services Performance Standards

1308.6 Assessment of children.
1308.7 Eligibility criteria: Health impairment.
1308.8 Eligibility criteria: Emotional/behavioral disorders.
1308.9 Eligibility criteria: Speech or language impairments.
1308.10 Eligibility criteria: Mental retardation.
1308.11 Eligibility criteria: Hearing impairment including deafness.
1308.12 Eligibility criteria: Orthopedic impairment.
1308.13 Eligibility criteria: Visual impairment including blindness.
1308.14 Eligibility criteria: Learning disabilities.
1308.15 Eligibility criteria: Autism.
1308.16 Eligibility criteria: Traumatic brain injury.
1308.17 Eligibility criteria: Other impairments.
1308.18 Disabilities/health services coordination.

Subpart E—Education Services Performance Standards

1308.19 Developing individualized education programs (IEPs).

Subpart F—Nutrition Performance Standards

1308.20 Nutrition services.

Sec.

Subpart G—Parent Involvement Performance Standards

1308.21 Parent participation and transition of children into Head Start and from Head Start to public school.
APPENDIX TO PART 1308—HEAD START PROGRAM PERFORMANCE STANDARDS ON SERVICES TO CHILDREN WITH DISABILITIES

AUTHORITY: 42 U.S.C. 9801 *et seq.*

SOURCE: 58 FR 5501, Jan. 21, 1993, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General

§ 1308.1 Purpose.

This rule sets forth the requirements for providing special services for 3- through 5-year-old children with disabilities enrolled in Head Start programs. These requirements are to be used in conjunction with the Head Start Program Performance Standards at 45 CFR part 1304. The purpose of this part is to ensure that children with disabilities enrolled in Head Start programs receive all the services to which they are entitled under the Head Start Program Performance Standards at 45 CFR part 1304, as amended.

§ 1308.2 Scope.

This rule applies to all Head Start grantees and delegate agencies.

§ 1308.3 Definitions.

As used in this part:

(a) The term *ACYF* means the Administration on Children, Youth and Families, Administration for Children and Families, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, and includes appropriate Regional Office staff.

(b) The term *children with disabilities* means children with mental retardation, hearing impairments including deafness, speech or language impairments, visual impairments including blindness, serious emotional disturbance, orthopedic impairments, autism, traumatic brain injury, other health impairments or specific learning disabilities; and who, by reason thereof, need special education and related services. The term *children with disabilities* for children aged 3 to 5, inclusive, may, at a State's discretion, include children experiencing developmental delays, as defined by the State and as measured by appropriate diagnostic instruments and procedures, in one or more of the following areas: physical development, cognitive development, communication development, social or emotional development, or adaptive development; and who, by reason thereof, need special education and related services.

(c) The term *Commissioner* means the Commissioner of the Administration on Children, Youth and Families.

(d) The term *day* means a calendar day.

(e) The term *delegate agency* means a public or private non-profit agency to which a grantee has delegated the responsibility for operating all or part of its Head Start program.

(f) The term *disabilities coordinator* means the person on the Head Start staff designated to manage on a full or part-time basis the services for children with disabilities described in part 1308.

(g) The term *eligibility criteria* means the criteria for determining that a child enrolled in Head Start requires special education and related services because of a disability.

(h) The term *grantee* means the public or private non-profit agency which has been granted financial assistance by ACYF to administer a Head Start program.

(i) The term *individualized education program* (IEP) means a written statement for a child with disabilities, developed by the public agency responsible for providing free appropriate public education to a child, and contains the special education and related services to be provided to an individual child.

(j) The term *least restrictive environment* means an environment in which services to children with disabilities are provided:

(1) to the maximum extent appropriate, with children who are not disabled and in which;

(2) special classes or other removal of children with disabilities from the regular educational environment occurs only when the nature or severity of the disability is such that education in regular classes with the use of supple-

mentary aids and services cannot be achieved satisfactorily.

(k) The term *Performance Standards* means the Head Start program functions, activities and facilities required and necessary to meet the objectives and goals of the Head Start program as they relate directly to children and their families.

(l) The term *related services* means transportation and such developmental, corrective, and other supportive services as are required to assist a child with a disability to benefit from special education, and includes speech pathology and audiology, psychological services, physical and occupational therapy, recreation, including therapeutic recreation, early identification and assessment of disabilities in children, counseling services, including rehabilitation counseling, and medical services for diagnostic or evaluation purposes. The term also includes school health services, social work services, and parent counseling and training. It includes other developmental, corrective or supportive services if they are required to assist a child with a disability to benefit from special education, including assistive technology services and devices.

(1) The term *assistive technology device* means any item, piece of equipment, or product system, whether acquired commercially off the shelf, modified, or customized, that is used to increase, maintain, or improve functional capabilities of individuals with disabilities.

(2) The term *assistive technology service* means any service that directly assists an individual with a disability in the selection, acquisition, or use of an assistive technology device. The term includes: The evaluation of the needs of an individual with a disability; purchasing, leasing, or otherwise providing for the acquisition of assistive technology devices by individuals with disabilities; selecting, designing, fitting, customizing, adapting, applying, maintaining, repairing, or replacing of assistive technology devices; coordinating and using other therapies, interventions, or services with assistive technology devices, such as those associated with existing education and rehabilitation plans and programs; training or technical assistance for an individual with disabilities, or, where appropriate, the family of an individual with disabilities; and training or technical assistance to professionals who employ or provide services involved in the major life functions of individuals with disabilities.

(m) The term *responsible HHS official* means the official who is authorized to make the grant of assistance in question or his or her designee.

(n) The term *special education* means specially designed instruction, at no cost to parents or guardians, to meet the unique needs of a child with a disability. These services include classroom or home-based instruction, instruction in hospitals and institutions, and specially designed physical education if necessary.

Subpart B—Disabilities Service Plan

§ 1308.4 Purpose and scope of disabilities service plan.

(a) A Head Start grantee, or delegate agency, if appropriate, must develop a disabilities service plan providing strategies for meeting the special needs of children with disabilities and their parents. The purposes of this plan are to assure:

(1) That all components of Head Start are appropriately involved in the integration of children with disabilities and their parents; and

(2) That resources are used efficiently.

(b) The plan must be updated annually.

(c) The plan must include provisions for children with disabilities to be included in the full range of activities and services normally provided to all Head Start children and provisions for any modifications necessary to meet the special needs of the children with disabilities.

(d) The Head Start grantee and delegate agency must use the disabilities service plan as a working document which guides all aspects of the agency's effort to serve children with disabilities. This plan must take into account the needs of the children for small group activities, for modifications of large group activities and for any individual special help.

(e) The grantee or delegate agency must designate a coordinator of services for children with disabilities (disabilities coordinator) and arrange for preparation of the disabilities service plan and of the grantee application budget line items for services for children with disabilities. The grantee or delegate must ensure that all relevant coordinators, other staff and parents are consulted.

(f) The disability service plan must contain:

(1) Procedures for timely screening;

(2) Procedures for making referrals to the LEA for evaluation to determine whether there is a need for special education and related services for a child, as early as the child's third birthday;

(3) Assurances of accessibility of facilities; and

(4) Plans to provide appropriate special furniture, equipment and materials if needed.

(g) The plan, when appropriate, must address strategies for the transition of children into Head Start from infant/toddler programs (0–3 years), as well as the transition from Head Start into the next placement. The plan must include preparation of staff and parents for the entry of children with severe disabilities into the Head Start program.

(h) The grantee or delegate agency must arrange or provide special education and related services necessary to foster the maximum development of each child's potential and to facilitate participation in the regular Head Start program unless the services are being provided by the LEA or other agency. The plan must specify the services to be provided directly by Head Start and those provided by other agencies. The grantee or delegate agency must arrange for, provide, or procure services which may include, but are not limited to special education and these related services:

(1) Audiology services, including identification of children with hearing loss and referral for medical or other professional attention; provision of needed rehabilitative services such as speech and language therapy and auditory training to make best use of remaining hearing; speech conservation; lip reading; determination of need for hearing aids and fitting of appropriate aids; and programs for prevention of hearing loss;

(2) Physical therapy to facilitate gross motor development in activities such as walking prevent or slow orthopedic problems and improve posture and conditioning;

(3) Occupational therapy to improve, develop or restore fine motor functions in activities such as using a fork or knife;

(4) Speech or language services including therapy and use of assistive devices necessary for a child to develop or improve receptive or expressive means of communication;

(5) Psychological services such as evaluation of each child's functioning and interpreting the results to staff and parents; and counseling and guidance services for staff and parents regarding disabilities;

(6) Transportation for children with disabilities to and from the program and to special clinics or other service providers when the services cannot be provided on-site. Transportation includes adapted buses equipped to accommodate wheelchairs or other such devices if required; and

(7) Assistive technology services or devices necessary to enable a child to improve functions such as vision, mobility or communication to meet the objectives in the IEP.

(i) The disabilities service plan must include options to meet the needs and take into consideration the strengths of each child based upon the IEP so that a continuum of services available from various agencies is considered.

(j) The options may include:

(1) Joint placement of children with other agencies;

(2) Shared provision of services with other agencies;

(3) Shared personnel to supervise special education services, when necessary to meet State requirements on qualifications;

(4) Administrative accommodations such as having two children share one enrollment slot when each child's IEP calls for part-time service because of their individual needs; and

(5) Any other strategies to be used to insure that special needs are met. These may include:

(i) Increased staff;

(ii) Use of volunteers; and

(iii) Use of supervised students in such fields as child development, special education, child psychology, various therapies and family services to assist the staff.

(k) The grantee must ensure that the disabilities service plan addresses grantee efforts to meet State standards for personnel serving children with disabilities by the 1994–95 program year. Special education and related services must be provided by or under the supervision of personnel meeting State qualifications by the 1994–95 program year.

(l) The disabilities service plan must include commitment to specific efforts to develop interagency agreements with the LEAs and other agencies within the grantee's service area. If no agreement can be reached, the grantee must document its efforts and inform the Regional Office. The agreements must address:

(1) Head Start participation in the public agency's Child Find plan under Part B of IDEA;

(2) Joint training of staff and parents;

(3) Procedures for referral for evaluations, IEP meetings and placement decisions;

(4) Transition;

(5) Resource sharing;

(6) Head Start commitment to provide the number of children receiving services under IEPs to the LEA for the LEA Child Count report by December 1 annually; and

(7) Any other items agreed to by both parties. Grantees must make efforts to update the agreements annually.

(m) The disabilities coordinator must work with the director in planning and budgeting of grantee funds to assure that the special needs identified in the IEP are fully met; that children most in need of an integrated placement and of special assistance are served; and that the grantee maintains the level of fiscal support to children with disabilities consistent with the Congressional mandate to meet their special needs.

(n) The grant application budget form and supplement submitted with applications for funding must reflect requests for adequate resources to implement the objectives and activities in the disability services plan and fulfill the requirements of these Performance Standards.

(o) The budget request included with the application for funding must address the implementation of the disabilities service plan. Allowable expenditures include:

(1) *Salaries.* Allowable expenditures include salaries of a full or part-time coordinator of services for children with disabilities (disabilities coordinator), who is essential to assure that programs have the core capability to recruit, enroll, arrange for the evaluation of children, provide or arrange for services to children with disabilities and work with Head Start coordinators and staff of other agencies which are working cooperatively with the grantee. Salaries of special education resource teachers who can augment the work of the regular teacher are an allowable expenditure.

(2) *Evaluation of children.* When warranted by screening or rescreening results, teacher observation or parent request, arrangements must be made for evaluation of the child's development and functioning. If, after referral for evaluation to the LEA, evaluations are not provided by the LEA, they are an allowable expenditure.

(3) *Services.* Program funds may be used to pay for services which include special education, related services, and summer services deemed necessary on an individual basis and to prepare for serving children with disabilities in advance of the program year.

(4) *Making services accessible.* Allowable costs include elimination of architectural barriers which affect the participation of children with disabilities, in conformance with 45 CFR part 84, Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Handicap in Program and Activities Receiving or Benefiting from Federal Financial Assistance and with the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101). The Americans with Disabilities Act requires that public accommodations including private schools and day care centers may not discriminate on the basis of disability. Physical barriers in existing facilities must be removed if removal is readily achievable (i.e., easily accomplishable and able to be carried out without

much difficulty or expense). If not, alternative methods of providing the services must be offered, if those methods are readily achievable. Alterations must be accessible. When alterations to primary function areas are made, an accessible path of travel to the altered areas (and the bathrooms, telephones and drinking fountains serving that area) must be provided to the extent that the added accessibility costs are not disproportionate to the overall cost of the alterations. Program funds may be used for ramps, remodeling or modifications such as grab bars or railings. Grantees must meet new statutory and regulatory requirements that are enacted.

(5) *Transportation.* Transportation is a related service to be provided to children with disabilities. When transportation to the program site and to special services can be accessed from other agencies, it should be used. When it is not available, program funds are to be used to provide it. Special buses or use of taxis are allowable expenses if there are no alternatives available and they are necessary to enable a child to be served.

(6) *Special Equipment and Materials.* Purchase or lease of special equipment and materials for use in the program and home is an allowable program expense. Grantees must make available assistive devices necessary to make it possible for a child to move, communicate, improve functioning or address objectives which are listed in the child's IEP.

(7) *Training and Technical Assistance.* Increasing the abilities of staff to meet the special needs of children with disabilities is an allowable expense. Appropriate expenditures may include but are not limited to:

(i) Travel and per diem expenses for disabilities coordinators, teachers and parents to attend training and technical assistance events related to special services for children with disabilities;

(ii) The provision of substitute teaching staff to enable staff to attend training and technical assistance events;

(iii) Fees for courses specifically related to the requirements of the disabilities service plan, a child's IEP or State certification to serve children with disabilities; and

(iv) Fees and expenses for training/technical assistance consultants if such help is not available from another provider at no cost.

Subpart C—Social Services Performance Standards

§ 1308.5 Recruitment and enrollment of children with disabilities.

(a) The grantee or delegate agency outreach and recruitment activities must incorporate specific actions to actively locate and recruit children with disabilities.

(b) A grantee must insure that staff engaged in recruitment and enrollment of children are knowledgable about the provisions of 45 CFR part 84, Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Handicap in Programs and Activities Receiving or Benefiting from Federal Financial Assistance, and of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, (42 U.S.C. 12101).

(c) A grantee must not deny placement on the basis of a disability or its severity to any child when:

(1) The parents wish to enroll the child,

(2) The child meets the Head Start age and income eligibility criteria,

(3) Head Start is an appropriate placement according to the child's IEP, and

(4) The program has space to enroll more children, even though the program has made ten percent of its enrollment opportunities available to children with disabilities. In that case children who have a disability and nondisabled children would compete for the available enrollment opportunities.

(d) The grantee must access resources and plan for placement options, such as dual placement, use of resource staff and training so that a child with a disability for whom Head Start is an appropriate placement according to the IEP is not denied enrolment because of:

(1) Staff attitudes and/or apprehensions;

(2) Inaccessibility of facilities;

(3) Need to access additional resources to serve a specific child;

(4) Unfamiliarity with a disabling condition or special equipment, such as a prosthesis; and

(5) Need for personalized special services such as feeding, suctioning, and assistance with toileting, including catheterization, diapering, and toilet training.

(e) The same policies governing Head Start program eligibility for other children, such as priority for those most in need of the services, apply to children with disabilities. Grantees also must take the following factors into account when planning enrollment procedures:

(1) The number of children with disabilities in the Head Start service area including types of disabilities and their severity;

(2) The services and resources provided by other agencies; and

(3) State laws regarding immunization of preschool children. Grantees must observe applicable State laws which usually require that children entering State preschool programs complete immunizations prior to or within thirty days after entering to reduce the spread of communicable diseases.

(f) The recruitment effort of a Head Start grantee must include recruiting children who have severe disabilities, including children who have been previously identified as having disabilities.

Subpart D—Health Services Performance Standards

§ 1308.6 Assessment of children.

(a) The disabilities coordinator must be involved with other program staff throughout the full process of assessment of children, which has three steps:

(1) All children enrolled in Head Start are screened as the first step in the assessment process;

(2) Staff also carry out on-going developmental assessment for all enrolled children throughout the year to determine progress and to plan program activities;

(3) Only those children who need further specialized assessment to determine whether they have a disability and may require special education and related services proceed to the next step, evaluation. The disabilities coordinator has primary responsibility for this third step, evaluation, only.

(b) *Screening, the first step in the assessment process*, consists of standardized health screening and developmental screening which includes speech, hearing and vision. It is a brief process, which can be repeated, and is never used to determine that a child has a disability. It only indicates that a child may need further evaluation to determine whether the child has a disability. Rescreening must be provided as needed.

(1) Effective with the beginning of the 1993–94 program year, grantees must provide for the health and developmental screening of all Head Start children by 45 calendar days after the start of program services in the fall, or for children who enroll after program services have begun by 45 calendar days after the child enters the program. This does not preclude starting screening in the spring before program services begin in the fall.

(2) Grantees must make concerted efforts to reach and include the most in need and hardest to reach in the screening effort, providing assistance but urging parents to complete screening before the start of the program year.

(3) Developmental screening is a brief check to identify children who need further evaluation to determine whether they may have disabilities. It provides information in three major developmental areas: visual/motor, language and cognition, and gross motor/body awareness for use along with observation data, parent reports and home visit information. When appropriate standardized developmental screening instruments exist, they must be used. The disabilities coordinator must coordinate with the health coordinator and staff who have the responsibility for implementing health screening and with the education staff who have the responsibility for implementing developmental screening.

(c) Staff must inform parents of the types and purposes of the screening well in advance of the screening, the results of these screenings and the purposes and results of any subsequent evaluations.

(d) *Developmental assessment, the second step*, is the collection of information on each child's functioning in these areas: gross and fine motor skills, perceptual discrimination, cognition, attention skills, self-help, social and receptive skills and expressive language. The disabilities coordinator must coordinate with the education coordinator in the on-going assessment of each Head Start child's functioning in all developmental areas by including this developmental information in later diagnostic and program planning activities for children with disabilities.

(e) *The disabilities coordinator must arrange for further, formal, evaluation of a child who has been identified as possibly having a disability, the third step.* (1) The disabilities coordinator must refer a child to the LEA for evaluation as soon as the need is evident, starting as early as the child's third birthday.

(2) If the LEA does not evaluate the child, Head Start is responsible for arranging or providing for an evaluation, using its own resources and accessing others. In this case, the evaluation must meet the following requirements:

(i) Testing and evaluation procedures must be selected and administered so as not to be racially or culturally discriminatory, administered in the child's native language or mode of communication, unless it clearly is not feasible to do so.

(ii) Testing and evaluation procedures must be administered by trained (State certified or licensed) personnel.

(iii) No single procedure may be the sole criterion for determining an appropriate educational program for a child.

(iv) The evaluation must be made by a multidisciplinary team or group of persons including at least one teacher or specialist with knowledge in the area of suspected disability.

(v) Evaluators must use only assessment materials which have been validated for the specific purpose for which they are used.

(vi) Tests used with children with impaired sensory, manual or communication skills must be administered so that they reflect the children's aptitudes and achievement levels and not just the disabilities.

(vii) Tests and materials must assess all areas related to the suspected disability.

(viii) In the case of a child whose primary disability appears to be a speech or language impairment, the team must assure that enough tests are used to determine that the impairment is not a symptom of another disability and a speech or language pathologist should be involved in the evaluation.

(3) Parental consent in writing must be obtained before a child can have an initial evaluation to determine whether the child has a disability.

(4) Confidentiality must be maintained in accordance with grantee and State requirements. Parents must be given the opportunity to review their child's records in a timely manner and they must be notified and give permission if additional evaluations are proposed. Grantees must explain the purpose and results of the evaluation and make concerted efforts to help the parents understand them.

(5) The multidisciplinary team provides the results of the evaluation, and its professional opinion that the child does or does not need special education and related services, to the disabilities coordinator. If it is their professional opinion that a child has a disability, the team is to state which of the eligibility criteria applies and provide recommendations for programming, along with their findings. Only children whom the evaluation team determines need special education and related services may be counted as children with disabilities.

§ 1308.7 Eligibility criteria: Health impairment.

(a) A child is classified as health impaired who has limited strength, vitality or alertness due to a chronic or acute health problem which adversely affects learning.

(b) The health impairment classification may include, but is not limited to, cancer, some neurological disorders, rheumatic fever, severe asthma, uncontrolled seizure disorders, heart conditions, lead poisoning, diabetes, AIDS, blood disorders, including hemophilia, sickle cell anemia, cystic fibrosis, heart disease and attention deficit disorder.

(c) This category includes medically fragile children such as ventilator dependent children who are in need of special education and related services.

(d) A child may be classified as having an attention deficit disorder under this category who has chronic and pervasive developmentally inappropriate inattention, hyperactivity, or impulsivity. To be considered a disorder, this behavior must affect the child's functioning severely. To avoid overuse of this category, grantees are cautioned to assure that only the enrolled children who most severely manifest this behavior must be classified in this category.

(1) The condition must severely affect the performance of a child who is trying to carry out a developmentally appropriate activity that requires orienting, focusing, or maintaining attention during classroom instructions and activities, planning and completing activities, following simple directions, organizing materials for play or other activities, or participating in group activities. It also may be manifested in overactivity or impulsive acts which appear to be or are interpreted as physical aggression. The disorder must manifest itself in at least two different settings, one of which must be the Head Start program site.

(2) Children must not be classified as having attention deficit disorders based on:

(i) Temporary problems in attention due to events such as a divorce, death of a family member or post-traumatic stress reactions to events such as sexual abuse or violence in the neighborhood;

(ii) Problems in attention which occur suddenly and acutely with psychiatric disorders such as depression, anxiety and schizophrenia;

(iii) Behaviors which may be caused by frustration stemming from inappropriate programming beyond the child's ability level or by developmentally inappropriate demands for long periods of inactive, passive activity;

(iv) Intentional noncompliance or opposition to reasonable requests that are typical of good preschool programs; or

(v) Inattention due to cultural or language differences.

(3) An attention deficit disorder must have had its onset in early childhood and have persisted through the course of child development when children normally mature and become able to operate in a socialized preschool environment. Because many children younger than four have difficulty orienting, maintaining and focussing attention and are highly active, when Head Start is responsible for the evaluation, attention deficit disorder applies to four and five year old children in Head Start but not to three year olds.

(4) Assessment procedures must include teacher reports which document the frequency and nature of indications of possible attention deficit disorders and describe the specific situations and events occurring just before the problems manifested themselves. Reports must indicate how the child's functioning was impaired and must be confirmed by independent information from a second observer.

§ 1308.8 Eligibility criteria: Emotional/behavioral disorders.

(a) An emotional/behavioral disorder is a condition in which a child's behavioral or emotional responses are so different from those of the generally accepted, age-appropriate norms of children with the same ethnic or cultural background as to result in significant impairment in social relationships, self-care, educational progress or classroom behavior. A child is classified as having an emotional/behavioral disorder who exhibits one or more of the following characteristics with such frequency, intensity, or duration as to require intervention:

(1) Seriously delayed social development including an inability to build or maintain satisfactory (age appropriate) interpersonal relationships with peers or adults (e.g., avoids playing with peers);

(2) Inappropriate behavior (e.g., dangerously aggressive towards others, self-destructive, severely withdrawn, non-communicative);

(3) A general pervasive mood of unhappiness or depression, or evidence of excessive anxiety or fears (e.g., frequent crying episodes, constant need for reassurance); or

(4) Has a professional diagnosis of serious emotional disturbance.

(b) The eligibility decision must be based on multiple sources of data, including assessment of the child's behavior or emotional functioning in multiple settings.

(c) The evaluation process must include a review of the child's regular Head Start physical examination to eliminate the possibility of misdiagnosis due to an underlying physical condition.

§ 1308.9 Eligiblity criteria: Speech or language impairments.

(a) A speech or language impairment means a communication disorder such as stuttering, impaired articulation, a language impairment, or a voice impairment, which adversely affects a child's learning.

(b) A child is classified as having a speech or language impairment whose speech is unintelligible much of the time, or who has been professionally diagnosed as having speech impairments which require intervention or who is professionally diagnosed as having a delay in development in his or her primary language which requires intervention.

(c) A language disorder may be receptive or expressive. A language disorder may be characterized by difficulty in understanding and producing language, including word meanings (semantics), the components of words (morphology), the components of sentences (syntax), or the conventions of conversation (pragmatics).

(d) A speech disorder occurs in the production of speech sounds (articulation), the loudness, pitch or quality of voice (voicing), or the rhythm of speech (fluency).

(e) A child should not be classified as having a speech or language impairment whose speech or language differences may be attributed to:

(1) Cultural, ethnic, bilingual, or dialectical differences or being non-English speaking; or

(2) Disorders of a temporary nature due to conditions such as a dental problem; or

(3) Delays in developing the ability to articulate only the most difficult consonants or blends of sounds within the broad general range for the child's age.

§ 1308.10 Eligibility criteria: Mental retardation.

(a) A child is classified as mentally retarded who exhibits significantly sub-average intellectual functioning and exhibits deficits in adaptive behavior which adversely affect learning. Adaptive behavior refers to age-appropriate coping with the demands of the environment through independent skills in self-care, communication and play.

(b) Measurement of adaptive behavior must reflect objective documentation through the use of an established scale and appropriate behavioral/anecdotal records. An assessment of the child's functioning must also be made in settings outside the classroom.

(c) Valid and reliable instruments appropriate to the age range must be used. If they do not exist for the language and cultural group to which the child belongs, observation and professional judgement are to be used instead.

(d) Determination that a child is mentally retarded is never to be made on the basis of any one test alone.

§ 1308.11 Eligibility criteria: Hearing impairment including deafness.

(a) A child is classified as deaf if a hearing impairment exists which is so severe that the child is impaired in processing linguistic information through hearing, with or without amplification, and learning is affected. A child is classified as hard of hearing who has a permanent or fluctuating hearing impairment which adversely affects learning; or

(b) Meets the legal criteria for being hard of hearing established by the State of residence; or

(c) Experiences recurrent temporary or fluctuating hearing loss caused by otitis media, allergies, or eardrum perforations and other outer or middle ear anomalies over a period of three months or more. Problems associated with temporary or fluctuating hearing loss can include impaired listening skills, delayed language development, and articulation problems. Children meeting these criteria must be referred for medical care, have their hearing checked frequently, and receive speech, language or hearing services as indicated by the IEPs. As soon as special services are no longer needed, these children must no longer be classified as having a disability.

§ 1308.12 Eligibility criteria: Orthopedic impairment.

(a) A child is classified as having an orthopedic impairment if the condition is severe enough to adversely affect a child's learning. An orthopedic impairment involves muscles, bones, or joints and is characterized by impaired ability to maneuver in educational or non-educational settings, to perform fine or gross motor activities, or to perform self-help skills and by adversely affected educational performance.

(b) An orthopedic impairment includes, but is not limited to, spina bifida, cerebral palsy, loss of or deformed limbs, contractures caused by burns, arthritis, or muscular dystrophy.

§ 1308.13 Eligibility criteria: Visual impairment including blindness.

(a) A child is classified as visually impaired when visual impairment, with correction, adversely affects a child's learning. The term includes both blind and partially seeing children. A child is visually impaired if:

(1) The vision loss meets the definition of legal blindness in the State of residence; or

(2) Central acuity does not exceed 20/200 in the better eye with corrective lenses, or visual acuity is greater than 20/200, but is accompanied by a limitation in the field of vision such that the widest diameter of the visual field subtends an angle no greater than 20 degrees.

(b) A child is classified as having a visual impairment if central acuity with corrective lenses is between 20/70 and 20/200 in either eye, or if visual acuity is undetermined, but there is demonstrated loss of visual function that adversely affects the learning process, including faulty muscular action, limited field of vision, cataracts, etc.

§ 1308.14 Eligibility criteria: Learning disabilities.

(a) A child is classified as having a learning disability who has a disorder in one or more of the basic psychological processes involved in understanding or in using language, spoken or written, which may manifest itself in imperfect ability to listen, think, speak or, for preschool age children, acquire the precursor skills for reading, writing, spelling or doing mathematical calculations. The term includes such conditions as perceptual disabilities, brain injury, and aphasia.

(b) An evaluation team may recommend that a child be classified as having a learning disability if:

(1) The child does not achieve commensurate with his or her age and ability levels in one or more of the areas listed in (a) above when provided with appropriate learning experiences for the age and ability; or

(2) The child has a severe discrepancy between achievement of developmental milestones and intellectual ability in one or more of these areas: oral expression, listening comprehension, pre-reading, pre-writing and pre-mathematics; or

(3) The child shows deficits in such abilities as memory, perceptual and perceptual-motor skills, thinking, language and non-verbal activities which are not due to visual, motor, hearing or emotional disabilities, mental retardation, cultural or language factors, or lack of experiences which would help develop these skills.

(c) This definition for learning disabilities applies to four and five year old children in Head Start. It may be used at a program's discretion for children younger than four or when a three year old child is referred with a professional diagnosis of learning disability. But because of the difficulty of diagnosing learning disabilities for three year olds, when Head Start is responsible for the evaluation it is not a requirement to use this category for three year olds.

§ 1308.15 Eligibility criteria: Autism.

A child is classified as having autism when the child has a developmental disability that significantly affects verbal and non-verbal communication and social interaction, that is generally evident before age three and that adversely affects educational performance.

§ 1308.16 Eligibility criteria: Traumatic brain injury.

A child is classified as having traumatic brain injury whose brain injuries are caused by an external physical force, or by an internal occurrence such as stroke or aneurysm, with resulting impairments that adversely affect educational performance. The term includes children with open or closed head injuries, but does not include children with brain injuries that are congenital or degenerative or caused by birth trauma.

§ 1308.17 Eligibility criteria: Other impairments.

(a) The purposes of this classification, "Other impairments," are:

(1) To further coordination with LEAs and reduce problems of recordkeeping;

(2) To assist parents in making the transition from Head Start to other placements; and

(3) To assure that no child enrolled in Head Start is denied services which would be available to other preschool children who are considered to have disabilities in their State.

(b) If the State Education Agency eligibility criteria for preschool children include an additional category which is appropriate for a Head Start child, children meeting the criteria for that category must receive services as children with disabilities in Head Start programs. Examples are "preschool disabled," "in need of special education," "educationally handicapped," and "non-categorically handicapped."

(c) Children ages three to five, inclusive, who are experiencing developmental delays, as defined by their State and as measured by appropriate diagnostic instruments and procedures, in one or more of the following areas: physical development, cognitive development, communication development, social or emotional development, or adaptive development, and who by reason thereof need special education and related services may receive services as children with disabilities in Head Start programs.

(d) Children who are classified as deaf-blind, whose concomitant hearing and visual impairments cause such severe communication and other developmental problems that they cannot be accommodated in special education programs solely for deaf or blind children are eligible for services under this category.

(e) Children classified as having multiple disabilities whose concomitant impairments (such as mental retardation and blindness), in combination, cause such severe educational problems that they cannot be accommodated in special education programs solely for one of the impairments are eligible for services under this category. The term does not include deaf-blind children, for recordkeeping purposes.

§ 1308.18 Disabilities/health services coordination.

(a) The grantee must ensure that the disabilities coordinator and the health coordinator work closely together in the assessment process and follow up to assure that the special needs of each child with disabilities are met.

(b) The grantee must ensure coordination between the disabilities coordinator and the staff person responsible for the mental health component to help teachers identify children who show signs of problems such as possible serious depression, withdrawal, anxiety or abuse.

(c) Each Head Start director or designee must supervise the administration of all medications, including prescription and over-the-counter drugs, to children with disabilities in accordance with State requirements.

(d) The health coordinator under the supervision of the Head Start director or designee must:

(1) Obtain the doctor's instructions and parental consent before any medication is administered.

(2) Maintain an individual record of all medications dispensed and review the record regularly with the child's parents.

(3) Record changes in a child's behavior which have implications for drug dosage or type and share this informa-

tion with the staff, parents and the physician.

(4) Assure that all medications, including those required by staff and volunteers, are adequately labeled, stored under lock and key and out of reach of children, and refrigerated, if necessary.

Subpart E—Education Services Performance Standards

§ 1308.19 Developing individualized education programs (IEPs)

(a) When Head Start provides for the evaluation, the multidisciplinary evaluation team makes the determination whether the child meets the Head Start eligibility criteria. The multidisciplinary evaluation team must assure that the evaluation findings and recommendations, as well as information from developmental assessment, observations and parent reports, are considered in making the determination whether the child meets Head Start eligibility criteria.

(b) Every child receiving services in Head Start who has been evaluated and found to have a disability and in need of special education must have an IEP before special education and related services are provided to ensure that comprehensive information is used to develop the child's program.

(c) When the LEA develops the IEP, a representative from Head Start must attempt to participate in the IEP meeting and placement decision for any child meeting Head Start eligibility requirements.

(d) If Head Start develops the IEP, the IEP must take into account the child's unique needs, strengths, developmental potential and the family strengths and circumstances as well as the child's disabilities.

(e) The IEP must include:

(1) A statement of the child's present level of functioning in the social-emotional, motor, communication, self-help, and cognitive areas of development, and the identification of needs in those areas requiring specific programming.

(2) A statement of annual goals, including short term objectives for meeting these goals.

(3) A statement of services to be provided by each Head Start component that are in addition to those services provided for all Head Start children, including transition services.

(4) A statement of the specific special education services to be provided to the child and those related services necessary for the child to participate in a Head Start program. This includes services provided by Head Start and services provided by other agencies and non-Head Start professionals.

(5) The identification of the personnel responsible for the planning and supervision of services and for the delivery of services.

(6) The projected dates for initiation of services and the anticipated duration of services.

(7) A statement of objective criteria and evaluation procedures for determining at least annually whether the short-term objectives are being achieved or need to be revised.

(8) Family goals and objectives related to the child's disabilities when they are essential to the child's progress.

(f) When Head Start develops the IEP, the team must include:

(1) The Head Start disabilities coordinator or a representative who is qualified to provide or supervise the provision of special education services;

(2) The child's teacher or home visitor;

(3) One or both of the child's parents or guardians; and

(4) At least one of the professional members of the multidisciplinary team which evaluated the child.

(g) An LEA representative must be invited in writing if Head Start is initiating the request for a meeting.

(h) The grantee may also invite other individuals at the request of the parents and other individuals at the discretion of the Head Start program, including those component staff particularly involved due to the nature of the child's disability.

(i) A meeting must be held at a time convenient for the parents and staff to develop the IEP within 30 calendar days of a determination that the child needs special education and related services. Services must begin as soon as possible after the development of the IEP.

(j) Grantees and their delegates must make vigorous efforts to involve par-

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

ents in the IEP process. The grantee must:

(1) Notify parents in writing and, if necessary, also verbally or by other appropriate means of the purpose, attendees, time and location of the IEP meeting far enough in advance so that there is opportunity for them to participate;

(2) Make every effort to assure that the parents understand the purpose and proceedings and that they are encouraged to provide information about their child and their desires for the child's program;

(3) Provide interpreters, if needed, and offer the parents a copy of the IEP in the parents' language of understanding after it has been signed;

(4) Hold the meeting without the parents only if neither parent can attend, after repeated attempts to establish a date or facilitate their participation. In that case, document its efforts to secure the parents' participation, through records of phone calls, letters in the parents' native language or visits to parents' homes or places of work, along with any responses or results; and arrange an opportunity to meet with the parents to review the results of the meeting and secure their input and signature.

(k) Grantees must initiate the implementation of the IEP as soon as possible after the IEP meeting by modifying the child's program in accordance with the IEP and arranging for the provision of related services. If a child enters Head Start with an IEP completed within two months prior to entry, services must begin within the first two weeks of program attendance.

Subpart F—Nutrition Performance Standards

§ 1308.20 Nutrition services.

(a) The disabilities coordinator must work with staff to ensure that provisions to meet special needs are incorporated into the nutrition program.

(b) Appropriate professionals, such as physical therapists, speech therapists, occupational therapists, nutritionists or dietitians must be consulted on ways to assist Head Start staff and parents of children with severe disabilities with problems of chewing, swallowing and feeding themselves.

(c) The plan for services for children with disabilities must include activities to help children with disabilities participate in meal and snack times with classmates.

(d) The plan for services for children with disabilities must address prevention of disabilities with a nutrition basis.

Subpart G—Parent Involvement Performance Standards

§ 1308.21 Parent participation and transition of children into Head Start and from Head Start to public school.

(a) In addition to the many references to working with parents throughout these standards, the staff must carry out the following tasks:

(1) Support parents of children with disabilities entering from infant/toddler programs.

(2) Provide information to parents on how to foster the development of their child with disabilities.

(3) Provide opportunities for parents to observe large group, small group and individual activities describe in their child's IEP.

(4) Provide follow-up assistance and activities to reinforce program activities at home.

(5) Refer parents to groups of parents of children with similar disabilities who can provide helpful peer support.

(6) Inform parents of their rights under IDEA.

(7) Inform parents of resources which may be available to them from the Supplemental Security Income (SSI) Program, the Early and Periodic Screening, Diagnosis and Treatment (EPSDT) Program and other sources and assist them with initial efforts to access such resources.

(8) Identify needs (caused by the disability) of siblings and other family members.

(9) Provide information in order to prevent disabilities among younger siblings.

(10) build parent confidence, skill and knowledge in accessing resources and advocating to meet the special needs of their children.

(b) Grantees must plan to assist parents in the transition of children from Head Start to public school or other placement, beginning early in the program year.

(c) Head Start grantees, in cooperation with the child's parents, must notify the school of the child's planned enrollment prior to the date of enrollment.

APPENDIX TO PART 1308—HEAD START PROGRAM PERFORMANCE STANDARDS ON SERVICES TO CHILDREN WITH DISABILITIES

This appendix sets forth guidance for the implementation of the requirements in part 1308. This guidance provides explanatory material and includes recommendations and suggestions for meeting the requirements. This guidance is not binding on Head Start grantees or delegate agencies. It provides assistance and possible strategies which a grantee may wish to consider. In instances where a permissible course of action is provided, the grantee or delegate agency may rely upon this guidance or may take another course of action that meets the applicable requirement. This programmatic guidance is included as an aid to grantees because of the complexity of providing special services to meet the needs of children with various disabilities.

Section 1308.4 Purpose and scope of disabilities service plan

Guidance for Paragraph (a)

In order to develop an effective disabilities service plan the responsible staff members need to understand the context in which a grantee operates. The Head Start program has operated under a Congressional mandate, since 1972, to make available, at a minimum, ten percent of its enrollment opportunities to children with disabilities. Head Start has exceeded this mandate and serves children in integrated, developmentally appropriate programs. The passage of the Individuals With Disabilities Education Act, formerly the Education of the Handicapped Act, and its amendments, affects Head Start, causing a shift in the nature of Head Start's responsibilities for providing services for children with disabilities relative to the responsibilities of State Education Agencies (SEA) and Local Education Agencies (LEA).

Grantees need to be aware that under the IDEA the State Education Agency has the responsibility for assuring the availability of a free appropriate public education for all children with disabilities within the legally required age range in the State. This responsibility includes general supervision of educational programs in all agencies, including monitoring and evaluating the special education and related services to insure that they meet State standards, developing a comprehensive State plan for services for children with disabilities (including a description of interagency coordination among these agencies), and providing a Comprehensive System for Personnel Development related to training needs of all special education and related service personnel involved in the education of children with disabilities served by these agencies, including Head Start programs.

Each State has in effect under IDEA a policy assuring all children with disabilities beginning at least at age three, including those in public or private institutions or other care facilities, the right to a free appropriate education and to an evaluation meeting established procedures. Head Start is either:

- The agency through which the Local Education Agency can meet its obligation to make a free appropriate public education available through a contract, State or local collaborative agreement, or other arrangement; or
- The agency in which the family chooses to have the child served rather than using LEA services.

Regardless of how a child is placed in Head Start, the LEA is responsible for the identification, evaluation and provision of a free appropriate public education for a child found to be in need of special education and related services which are mandated in the State. The LEA is responsible for ensuring that these services are provided, but not for providing them all. IDEA stresses the role of multiple agencies and requires their maintenance of effort.

The Head Start responsibility is to make available directly or in cooperation with other agencies services in the least restrictive environment in accordance with an individualized education program (IEP) for at least ten percent of enrolled children who meet the disabilities eligibility criteria. In addition, Head Start continues to provide or arrange for the full range of health, dental, nutritional, developmental, parent involvement and social services provided to all enrolled children. Head Start has a mandate to recruit and enroll income-eligible children and children with disabilities who are most in need of services and to coordinate with the LEA and other groups to benefit children with disabilities and their families. Serving children with disabilities has strengthened Head Start's ability to individualize for all children. Head Start is fully committed to the maintenance of effort as required for all agencies by the IDEA and by the Head Start Act (Section 640(a)(2)(A)). Head Start is committed to fiscal support to assure that the services which children with disabilities need to meet their special needs will be provided in full, either directly or by a combination of Head Start funds and other resources.

These Head Start regulations facilitate coordination with the IDEA by utilizing identical terms for eligibility criteria for the most part. However, Head Start has elected to use the term "emotional/behavioral disorder" in lieu of "serious emotional disturbance," which is used in the IDEA, in response to comments and concerns of parents and professionals. Children who meet State-developed criteria under IDEA will be eligible for services from Head Start in that State.

In order to organize activities and resources to help children with disabilities overcome or lessen their disabilities and develop their potential, it is essential to involve the education, health, social services, parent involvement, mental health and nutrition components of Head Start. Parents, staff and policy group members should discuss the various strategies for ensuring that the disabilities service plan integrates needs and activities which cut across the Head Start component areas before the plan is completed.

Advance planning and scheduling of arrangements with other agencies is a key factor in assuring timely, efficient services. Local level interagency agreements can greatly facilitate the difficult tasks of locating related service providers, for example, and joint community screening programs can reduce delays and costs to each of the participating agencies.

Guidance for Paragraph (b)

The plan and the annual updates need to be specific, but not lengthy. As changes occur in the community, the plan needs to reflect the changes which affect services.

Guidance for Paragraph (c)

Grantees should ensure that the practices they use to provide special services do not result in undue attention to a child with a disability. For example, providing names and schedules of special services for children with disabilities in the classroom is useful for staff or volunteers coming into that classroom but posting them would publicize the disability of the individual children.

Guidance for Paragraph (d)

Staff should work for the children's greater independence by encouraging them to try new things and to meet appropriate goals by small steps. Grantees should help children with disabilities develop initiative by including them in opportunities to explore, to create, and to ask rather than to answer questions. The children need opportunities to use a wide variety of materials including science tools, art media and costumes in order to develop skills, imagination and originality. They should be included on field trips, as their experience may have been limited, for example, by an orthopedic impairment.

Just as a program makes available pictures and books showing children and adults from representative cultural, ethnic and occupational groups, it should provide pictures and books which show children and adults with disabilities, including those in active roles.

Staff should plan to answer questions children and adults may have about disabilities. This promotes acceptance of a child with disabilities for him or herself and leads to treating the child more normally. Effective curricula are available at low cost for helping children and adults understand disabilities and for improving attitudes and increasing knowledge about disabilities. Information on these and other materials can be obtained from resource access projects contractors, which offer training and technical assistance to Head Start programs.

There are a number of useful guides for including children with disabilities in regular group activities while providing successful experiences for children who differ widely in developmental levels and skills. Some of these describe activities around a unit theme with suggestions for activities suitable for children with different skill levels. Staff need to help some children with disabilities move into developmentally appropriate play with other children.

Research has shown the effectiveness of work in small groups for appropriately selected children with disabilities. This plan allows for coordinating efforts to meet the needs of individual children as listed in their IEPs and can help focus resources efficiently.

If a deaf child who uses or needs sign language or another communication mode is enrolled, a parent, volunteer or aide who can use that mode of communication should be provided to help the child benefit from the program.

In order to build the language and speech capabilities of many children with disabilities who have communication problems, it has been found helpful to enlist aides, volunteers, cooks, bus drivers and parents, showing them how to provide extra repetition and model gradually more advanced language as children improve in their ability to understand and use language. Small group activities for children with similar language development needs should be provided regularly as well as large group language and listening games and individual help. Helping children with intellectual delays or emotional problems or those whose experiences have been limited by other disabilities to express their own ideas and to communicate during play and throughout the daily activities is motivating and can contribute greatly to their progress.

Guidance for Paragraph (e)

The Disabilities Service Coordinator should possess a basic understanding of the scope of the Head Start effort and skills adequate to manage the agency to serve children with disabilities including coordination with other program components and community agencies and work with parents.

Guidance for Paragraph (f)

For non-verbal children, communication boards, computers and other assistive technology devices may be helpful. Technical assistance providers have information on the Technology Related Assistance for Individuals with Disabilities Act of 1988, 29 U.S.C. 2201 *et seq*. States are funded through this legislation to plan Statewide assistive technology services, which should include services for young children. Parents should be helped to understand the necessity of including assistive technology services and devices in their child's IEP in order to obtain them.

The plan should include any renovation of space and facilities which may be necessary to ensure the safety of the children or promote learning. For example, rugs or other sound-absorbing surfaces make it easier for some children to hear stories or conversation. Different surfaces on floors and play areas affect some children's mobility.

45 CFR Part 84, Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Handicap in Programs and Activities Receiving or Benefiting from Federal Financial Assistance which implements the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 and the Americans with Disabilities Act require that all Federally assisted programs, including Head Start, be accessible to persons with disabilities including staff, parents and children. This does not mean that every building or part of a building must be physically accessible, but the program services as a whole must be accessible. Structural changes to make the program services available are required if alternatives such as reassignment of classes or moving to different rooms are not possible. Information on the accessibility standards is available from RAPs or the U.S. Department of Justice, Civil Rights Division, Coordination and Review Section, P.O. Box 66118, Washington, DC 20035-6115.

Staff should ensure that children with physical disabilities have chairs and other pieces of furniture of the correct size and type for their individual needs as they grow. Agencies such as United Cerebral Palsy, Easter Seal Societies or SEAs can provide consultation on adapting or purchasing the appropriate furniture. The correct positioning of certain children is essential and requires expert advice. As the children grow, the furniture and equipment should be checked by an expert, such as a physical therapist, because the wrong fit can be harmful. Efforts should be made to use furniture sized and shaped to place children at the same level as their classmates whenever possible.

Guidance for Paragraph (h)

The plan should specify:

- Overall goals of the disability effort.
- Specific objectives and activities of the disability effort.
- How and when specific activities will be carried out and goals attained.
- Who will be responsible for the conduct of each element of the plan.
- How individual activities will be evaluated.

The plan should address:

- Enrollment information, including numbers of children and types of disabilities, known and estimated.
- Identification and recruitment of children with disabilities. Participation in Child Find and list of major specialized agencies approached.
- Screening.
- Developmental Assessment.
- Evaluation.
- The multidisciplinary team and its work.
- The process for developing IEPs.
- The provision of program services and related services.
- Program accessibility.
- Recordkeeping and reporting.
- Confidentiality of information.
- Any special safety needs.
- Medications.
- Transportation.
- The process for identifying and meeting training and technical assistance needs.
- Special parent involvement needs.
- Planned actions to increase the ability of staff to serve children with more severe disabilities and the number of children with more severe disabilities served.
- Transitioning of children in and out to the next program.

Particular attention should be given to addressing ways to:

- Involve parents throughout the disability effort, and
- Work with other agencies in serving children with disabilities. It should be possible for a reader to visualize how and by whom services will be delivered. Coordination with other agencies should be described, as well as the process for developing local agreements with other agencies. The RAPs can provide samples and models for the process of developing agreements with LEAs.

Guidance for Paragraph (j)

Children may spend part of the program hours in Head Start for a mainstreaming experience and part in a specialized program such as an Easter Seal Society or a local mental health center. The amount of time spent in either program should be flexible, according to the needs of the individual child. All services to be provided, including those provided by collaborating agencies, should be described in the IEP. Staff of both programs should observe each other's work with the child who is enrolled and maintain good communication.

Individual services such as occupational, physical or speech therapy, staff training, transportation, services to families or counseling may be shared by Head Start and other agencies. For example, Head Start might provide equipment and transportation while a development center might provide a facility and physical therapy for a Head Start child. Some LEAs provide resource teachers while Head Start provides a developmentally appropriate program in an integrated setting.

Hiring additional staff may be necessary to meet the needs of children with severe disabilities. Hiring an aide may be necessary on a full-time, part-time, temporary or as needed basis to assist with the increased demands of a child with a severe disability. However, aides should not be assigned the major responsibility for providing direct services. Aides and volunteers should be guided and supervised by the disabilities service coordinator or someone with special training. It is desirable to have the services of a nurse, physical therapist or licensed practical nurse available for children with severe health or physical disabilities.

Volunteers trained by professionals to work specifically with children with disabilities can provide valuable individualized support. For example, a volunteer might be trained by a physical therapist to carry out specific follow-up activities with individual children.

Guidance for Paragraph (k)

State standards for qualifications of staff to provide special education and related services affect Head Start's acceptance as a placement site for children who have been evaluated by an LEA. Head Start grantees, like LEAs, are affected by shortages of staff meeting State qualifications and are to work toward the goal of meeting the highest State standards for personnel by developing plans to train current staff and to hire new staff so that eventually the staff will meet the qualifications. Grantees should discuss their needs for pre-service and in-service training with SEAs during annual updates of interagency agreements for use in the planning of joint State level conferences and for use in preparation of Comprehensive State Personnel Development plans. They should also discuss these needs with LEAs which provide in-service training.

The program should provide training for the regular teachers on how to modify large group, small group or individual activities to meet the needs of children with disabilities. Specific training for staff should be provided when Head Start enrolls a child whose disability or condition requires a special skill or knowledge of special techniques or equipment. Examples are structuring a language activity, performing intermittent nonsterile catheterization, changing collection bags, suctioning, or operating leg braces. Joint training with other agencies is recommended to stretch resources and exchange expertise.

Staff should have access to regular ongoing training events which keep them abreast of new materials, equipment and practices related to serving children with disabilities and to preventing disabilities. Ongoing training and technical assistance in support of the disabilities effort should be planned to complement other training available to meet staff needs. Each grantee has the responsibility to identify or arrange the necessary support to carry out training for parents and staff.

The best use of training funds has resulted when programs carry out a staff training needs assessment and relate current year training plans to previous staff training with the goal of building core capability. Staff who receive special training should share new knowledge with the rest of the staff.

The core capability of the program is enhanced when speech, language and other therapy is provided in the regular site whenever possible. This allows for the specialist to demonstrate to regular staff and plan for their follow through. It also reduces costs and time spent transporting children to clinics and other settings. When university graduate students are utilized to provide special services as part of their training, it is helpful to arrange for their supervisors to monitor their work. Grantees arranging for such assistance are providing a valuable internship site and it is to the university's advantage to have their students become familiar with programs on-site. Grantees should negotiate when developing interagency agreements to have services provided on-site to the greatest extent possible.

The Head Start Act, Section 648 (42 U.S.C. 9843) (a)(2), calls for training and technical assistance to be offered to all Head Start programs with respect to services for children with disabilities without cost through resource access projects which serve each region of the country. The technical assistance contractors contact each grantee for a needs assessment and offer training. While their staffs are small and their budgets limited, they are experienced and committed to meeting as many needs as they can and welcome inquiries. A brochure with names and addresses of the technical assistance providers is available from ACYF/HS, P.O. Box 1182, Washington, DC 20013.

The SEA is responsible for developing a Comprehensive System of Personnel Development. It is important that Head Start training needs be conveyed to this group for planning purposes so that all available resources can be brought to bear for staff training in Head Start. Grantees should take advantage of free or low-cost training provided by SEAs, LEAs, community colleges and other agencies to augment staff training.

Many agencies offer free training for staff and parents. An example is the Epilepsy Foundation of America with trained volunteers throughout the country. The Lighthouse of New York City has developed a training program on early childhood and vision which was field-tested in Head Start and is suitable for community agencies. Head Start and the American Optometric Association have signed a memorandum of understanding under which member optometrists offer eye health education and screening. State-funded adult education and training programs or community colleges make available parenting, child development and other courses at low or no cost. Grantees should consider the need for training in working with parents, in developing working collaborative relationships and in networking when planning training.

The disabilities coordinator needs to work closely with the education and health coordinators to provide or arrange training for staff and parents early in each program year on the prevention of disabilities. This should include the importance of observing signs that some children may have mild or fluctuating hearing losses due to middle ear infections. Such losses are often undetected and can cause problems in learning speech and language. Many children with hearing losses benefit from amplification and auditory training in how to use their remaining hearing most efficiently.

The disabilities coordinator should also work with the education coordinator to provide timely staff training on recognizing signs that some children may be at high risk for later learning problems as well as emotional problems resulting from failure and frustration. This training should address ways to help children develop the skills necessary for later academic learning, such as following directions calling for more than one action, sequencing, sustaining attention, and making auditory and visual discriminations.

Guidance for Paragraph (l)

The RAPS can provide information on agreements which have been developed between Head Start and SEAs and between Head Start and LEAs and other agencies. Such agreements offer possibilities to share training, equipment and other resources, smoothing the transition from Head Start to public or private school for children and their parents. Some of these agreements specify cost- and resource-sharing practices. Tribal Government Head Start programs should maximize use of Bureau of Indian Affairs, LEA and Head Start funds through cooperative agreements. Indian grantees should contact ACYF for referral to technical assistance in this regard. Grantees should bear in mind that migrant children are served in the majority of States and include consideration of their special needs, including the necessity for rapid provision of special education and related services, in agreements with LEAs and other agencies.

Guidance for Paragraph (m)

In developing the plan and the budget which is a part of the grant application process, it is important to budget adequately for the number of children with disabilities to be served and the types and severity of their disabilities. The budget should reflect resources available from other agencies as well as the special costs to be paid for from Head Start funds. The Head Start legislation requires Head Start to access resources to meet the needs of all the children enrolled, including those with disabilities.

An effective plan calls for the careful use of funds. The Disabilities Services Coordinator needs to keep current with the provisions of Part B of the IDEA and the services which may be available for three through five year-old children under this Act. Coordinators also need to utilize the expanded services under the Early and Periodic Screening, Diagnosis and Treatment (EPSDT) program and Supplemental Security Income program.

To assist in the development of the plan, it may be helpful to establish an advisory committee for the disability effort or to expand the scope of the health advisory committee.

Guidance for Paragraph (o)

Examples of evaluation costs which can be covered include professional assessment by the multidisciplinary evaluation team, instruments, professional observation and professional consultation. If consultation fees for multidisciplinary evaluation team members to participate in IEP meetings are not available from another source, they are allowable expenditures and need to be provided to meet the performance standards.

Many children with disabilities enrolled in Head Start already receive services from other agencies, and grantees should encourage these agencies to continue to provide services. Grantees should use other community agencies and resources to supplement services for children with disabilities and their families.

By planning ahead, grantees can pool resources to schedule the periodic use of experts and consultants. Grantees can time-share, reducing travel charges and assuring the availability of scarce expertise. Some LEAs and other agencies have enabling legislation and funds to contract for education, health, and developmental services of the type Head Start can provide. Grantees can also help increase the amount of preschool funding available to their State under the Individuals With Disabilities Education Act. The amount of the allocation to each SEA and to the public schools is affected by the number of three through five year old children with IEPs in place by December 1 of each year. By establishing good working relationships with State Public Health personnel and including them on advisory committees, health resources can be more easily utilized.

It may be helpful to explore the possibility of a cooperative agreement with the public school system to provide transportation. If the lack of transportation would prevent a child with disabilities from participating in Head Start, program funds are to be used to provide this related service before a delay occurs which would have a negative effect on the child's progress. The major emphasis is on providing the needed special help so that the child can develop to the maximum during the brief time in Head Start.

The Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101) requires that new buses (ordered after August 26, 1990) by public bus systems must be accessible to individuals with disabilities. New over-the-road buses ordered by privately operated bus and van companies (on or after July 26, 1996 or July 26, 1997 for small companies) must be accessible. Other new vehicles, such as vans, must be accessible, unless the transportation company provides service to individuals with disabilities that is equivalent to that operated for the general public. The Justice Department enforces these requirements.

Efforts should be made to obtain expensive items such as wheelchairs or audiometers through resources such as Title V (formerly Crippled Children's Services). Cooperative arrangements can be made with LEAs and other agencies to share equipment such as tympanometers. Special equipment such as hearing aids may be obtained through EPSDT or from SSI funds for those children who have been found eligible. Some States have established libraries of assistive technology devices and rosters of expert consultants.

Section 1308.5 Recruitment and Enrollment of Children With Disabilities

Guidance for Paragraph (a)

Head Start can play an important role in Child Find by helping to locate children in need and hardest to reach, such as immigrants and non-English speakers. In cooperation with other community groups and agencies serving children with disabilities, Head Start programs should incorporate in their outreach and recruitment procedures efforts to identify and enroll children with disabilities who meet eligibility requirements and whose parents desire the child's participation.

Integrating children with severe disabilities for whom Head Start is an appropriate placement is a goal of ACYF. Grantees should bear in mind that 45 CFR part 84, Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Handicap in Programs and Activities Receiving or Benefiting from Federal Financial Assistance or the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (20 U.S.C. 794) states that any program receiving Federal funds may not deny admission to a child solely on the basis of the nature or extent of a disabling condition and shall take into account the needs of the child in determining the aid, benefits, or services to be provided. Many children who appear to have serious impairments are nevertheless able to make greater gains in an integrated setting than in a segregated classroom for children with disabilities.

The key factor in selecting an appropriate placement is the IEP. The need of the individual child and the ability of the child to benefit are determining factors. Likewise, the amount of time per day or week to be spent in the regular setting and/or in other settings is determined by the IEP. The IEP of a child with a severe emotional/behavioral disorder, for example, might realistically call for less than full day attendance or for dual placement. Another factor to consider is that according to the PIR, the majority of children with severe impairments are provided special services by both Head State staff and staff of other agencies, sharing the responsibility. Many grantees have successfully served children with moderate and severe disabilities.

The disabilities coordinator's responsibility includes providing current names of appropriate specialized agencies serving young children with disabilities and the names of LEA Child Find contact persons to the director to facilitate joint identification of children with disabilities. It also includes learning what resources other agencies have available and the eligibility criteria for support from State agencies, Supplemental Security Income (SSI), Title V, Maternal and Child Health Block Grants, Title XIX (EPSDT/Medicaid), Migrant Health Centers, Developmental Disabilities programs, Bureau of Indian Affairs, third party payers such as insurance companies and other sources.

Grantees need to develop lists of appropriate referral sources. These include hospital child life programs, SSI, early intervention programs funded by Part H of the IDEA or other sources, EPSDT providers, infant stimulation programs, Easter Seal and United Cerebral Palsy agencies, mental health agencies, Association for Retarded Citizens chapters, Developmental Disabilities Planning Councils, Protection and Advocacy Systems, University Affiliated Programs, the LEA Child Find, and the medical community.

Head Start programs are encouraged to increase the visibility of the Head Start mainstreaming effort within the community by:

- Including community child service providers on policy council health and disability advisory boards and in other relevant Head Start activities.
- Making presentations on Head Start mainstreaming experiences at local, State and Regional meetings and conferences, such as the National Association for the Education of Young Children, Council for Exceptional Children, and the Association for the Care of Children's Health.
- Participating in interagency planning activities for preschool infant and toddler programs such as the State Interagency Coordinating Councils supported under the IDEA.

Guidance for Paragraph (b)

Grantees should maintain records of outreach, recruitment, and service activities for children with disabilities and their families.

Each grantee should develop a policy on what types of information are to be included in a comprehensive file for each disabled child. The policy should outline the locations where a copy of each record will be sent. For example, while a comprehensive file will be maintained at the Head Start program central office (where the disability services coordinator and component coordinators may be based), a teacher must have access to a child's IEP and progress notes in order to plan effectively. Confidentiality needs to be maintained in a manner which allows for access to information by appropriate staff while meeting applicable Head Start and State requirements.

Guidance for Paragraph (d)

Staff should assist families who need help in obtaining immunizations before the program year begins, bearing in mind that a goal of parent involvement and social service activities is to encourage independence and develop skills in meeting timelines when seeking services for children. Care should be taken that children are not denied enrollment, but that their families receive the necessary assistance to meet entrance requirements. "Healthy Young Children: A Manual for Programs," (a cooperative effort of the Administration for Children, Youth and Families, the American Academy of Pediatrics; the Division of Maternal and Child Health, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; Georgetown University Child Development Center; Massachusetts Department of Public Health, and the National Association for the Education of Young Children, 1988, copyright, NAEYC) contains best practice guidance.

Section 1308.6 Assessment of Children

Guidance for Paragraph (b)

Early screening is essential because of the time required for the steps necessary before special services can begin. It has been very difficult for some grantees to complete health screenings in a timely manner for several reasons including the lack of resources, especially in rural areas; the need to rely on donated services from agencies whose schedules have been especially overloaded during September and October after the start of the Head Start program year; lack of summer staff in most programs; and the difficulty in reaching some families. Lack of coordination among agencies with legislative responsibility for identifying children with disabilities has resulted in duplication and unacceptable delays in providing required services for many grantees. Other grantees, however, have demonstrated the ability to complete screenings early in the program year without difficulty. Many programs already complete screening by 45 days after the first day of program operation. Some participate in spring or summer screening programs in their areas before the fall opening. Grantees are encouraged to schedule well in advance with clinics and with such providers as EPSDT and the Indian Health Service for timely screening and any subsequent evaluations that may be needed.

Recently, a number of legislative and legal requirements have increased the resources available for the screening and evaluation of children. Title XIX, EPDST/Medicaid, has new requirements for screening and evaluation, as well as treatment; the Social Security Administration has modified eligibility requirements for children with disabilities so that more services will be available; and all States have assured that services will be provided from at least age three under IDEA so that LEAs in more States will be engaged in identifying and evaluating children from birth to age six.

In response to these changes, the Department of Health and Human Services and the Department of Education, through the Federal Interagency Coordinating Council, have developed a cooperative agreement for coordinated screening. Head Start is one of the participating agencies which will work together to plan and implement community screenings, assisting the LEAs which have

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

the major responsibility for identifying every child with a disability under the IDEA. In addition, programs may elect to make some summer staff available for activities to close out program work in the spring and prepare for the fall.

These developments make timely screening feasible. They also make it possible to expedite immunizations. State-of-the-art coordinated screening programs make immunizations available.

This coordination can focus staff energy on assisting families to have their children immunized during the screening phase rather than making repeated follow-up efforts after the program for children has begun. Coordinated screening also provides an excellent parent education opportunity. Information on child development, realistic expectations for preschoolers and such services as WIC can be provided during the screening. Some communities have combined screening with well-received health fairs.

The staff should be involved in the planning of screening to assure that screening requirements are selected or adapted with the specific Head Start population and goals of the screening process in mind. Instruments with age-appropriate norms should be used. Children should be screened in their native language. Universities, civic organizations or organizations to aid recent immigrants may be able to locate native speakers to assist. The RAPs can provide information on the characteristics of screening instruments.

Current best practice indicates that individual pure tone audiometry be used as the first part of a screening program with children as young as three. The purpose is to identify children with hearing impairments that interfere with, or have the potential to interfere with communication. The recommended procedure is audiometric screening at 20 dB HL (re ANSI–1969) at the frequencies of 1000, 2000, and 4000 Hz, (and at 500 Hz unless acoustic immittance audiometry is included as the second part of the screening program and if the noise level in the room permits testing at that frequency.) Acoustic immittance audiometry (or impedance audiometry) is recommended as the second part of the program to identify children who have middle-ear disorders.

The audiometric screening program should be conducted or supervised by an audiologist. Nonprofessional support staff have successfully carried out audiometric screening with appropriate training and supervision.

When a child fails the initial screening, an audiometric rescreening should be administered the same day or no later than within 2 weeks. A child who fails the rescreening should be referred for an evaluation by an audiologist.

Current best practice calls for annual hearing tests. Frequent rescreening is needed for children with recurrent ear infections. Grantees who contract or arrange for hearing testing should check to assure that the testing covers the three specified frequencies and that other quality features are present. Speech, hearing and language problems are the most widespread disabilities in preschool programs and quality testing is vital for early detection and remediation.

Playing listening games prior to testing and getting use to earphones can help children learn to respond to a tone and improve the quality of the testing.

Some grantees have found it strengthens the skills of their staff to have all members learn to do developmental screening. This can be a valuable in-service activity especially for teachers. State requirements for qualifications should be checked and nonprofessional screeners should be trained.

Some programs have involved trained students from schools of nursing, child development or special education graduate students, or medical students who must carry out screening work as part of their required experience.

Guidance for Paragraph (d)

Parents should be provided assistance if necessary, so that they can participate in the developmental assessment.

Grantees should offer parents assistance in understanding the implications of developmental assessments as well as medical, dental or other conditions which can affect their child's development and learning.

Development assessment is an ongoing process and information from observations in the Head Start center and at home should be recorded periodically and updated in each developmental area in order to document progress and plan activities.

Disabilities coordinators, as well as education staff, need to be thoroughly familiar with developmental assessment activities such as objective observation, time sampling and obtaining parent information and the use of formal assessment instruments. Knowledge of normal child development and understanding of the culture of the child are also important.

Guidance for Paragraph (e)

While the LEA is responsible for assuring that each child who is referred is evaluated in accordance with the provisions of IDEA and usually provides the evaluation, grantees may sometimes provide for the evaluation. In that event, grantees need to assure that evaluation specialists in appropriate areas such as psychology, special education, speech pathology and physical therapy coordinate their activities so that the child's total functioning is considered and the team's findings and recommendations are integrated.

Grantees should select members of the multidisciplinary evaluation team who are familiar with the specific Head Start population, taking into account the age of the children and their cultural and ethnic background as they relate to the overall diagnostic process and the use of specific tests.

Grantees should be certain that team members understand that Head Start programs are funded to provide preschool developmental experiences for all eligible children, some of whom also need special education and related services. The intent of the evaluation procedures is to provide information to identify children who have disabling conditions so they can receive appropriate assistance. It is also the intent to avoid mislabeling children for whom basic Head Start programming is designed and who may show developmental delays which can be overcome by a regular comprehensive program meeting the Head Start Performance Standards.

When a grantee provides for the evaluation of a child, it is important that the Head Start eligibility criteria be explained to the evaluation team members and that they be informed as to how the results will be used.

Grantees should require specific findings in writing from the evaluation team, and recommendations for intervention when the team believes the child has a disability. The findings will be used in developing the child's IEP to ensure that parents, teachers and others can best work with the child. Some grantees have obtained useful functional information by asking team members to complete a brief form describing the child's strengths and weaknesses and the effects of the disability along with suggestions for special equipment, treatment or services. The evaluators should be asked in advance to provide their findings promptly in easily understood terms. They should provide separate findings and, when they agree, consensus professional opinions. When planning in advance for evaluation services from other agencies, grantees should try to obtain agreements on prompt timing for delivery of reports which are necessary to plan services.

To assist the evaluation team, Head Start should provide the child's screening results, pertinent observations, and the results of any developmental assessment information which may be available.

It is important that programs ensure that no individual child or family is labeled, mislabeled, or stigmatized with reference to a disabling condition. Head Start must exercise care to ensure that no child is misidentified because of economic circumstances, ethnic or cultural factors or developmental lags not caused by a disability, bilingual or dialectical differences, or because of being non-English speaking.

If Head Start is arranging for the evaluation, it is important to understand that a child whose problem has been corrected (e.g., a child wearing glasses whose vision is corrected and who does not need special education and related services) does not qualify as a child with a disability. A short-term medical problem such as post-operative recovery or a problem requiring only medical care and health monitoring when the evaluation specialists have not stated that special education and related services are needed does not qualify as a disability.

The evaluation team should include consideration of the way the disability affects the child's ability to function as well as the cause of the condition.

Some children may have a recent evaluation from a clinic, hospital or other agency (other than the LEAs) prior to enrolling in Head Start. If that evaluation did not include needed functional information or a professional opinion as to whether the child meets one of the Head Start eligibility criteria, the grantee should contact the agency to try to obtain that information.

Some children, prior to enrolling in Head Start, already have been diagnosed as having severe disabilities and a serious need for services. Some of these children already may be receiving some special assistance from other agencies for their disabilities but lack developmental services in a setting with other children. Head Start programs may best meet their needs by serving them jointly, i.e., providing developmental services while disability services are provided from another source. It is important in such situations that regular communication take place between the two sites.

Beginning in 1990, State EPSDT/Medicaid programs must, by law, evaluate and provide services for young children whose families meet eligibility criteria at 133 percent of the poverty levels. This is a resource for Head Start and it is important to become aware of EPSDT provisions.

Section 1308.7 Eligibility Criteria: Health Impairment Guidance

Guidance for Paragraph (c)

Many health impairments manifest themselves in other disabling conditions. Because of this, particular care should be taken when classifying a health impaired child.

Guidance for Paragraph (b)

Because AIDS is a health impairment, grantees will continue to enroll children with AIDS on an individual basis. Staff need to be familiar with the Head Start Information Memorandum on Enrollment in Head Start Programs of Infants and Young Children with Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV), AIDS Related Complex (ARC), or Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS) dated June 22, 1988. This guidance includes material from the Centers for Disease Con-

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

trol which stresses the need for a team, including a physician, to make informed decisions on enrollment on an individual basis. It provides guidance in the event that a child with disabilities presents a problem involving biting or bodily fluids. The guidance also discusses methods for control of all infectious diseases through stringent cleanliness standards and includes lists of Federal, State and national agencies and organizations that can provide additional information as more is learned. Staff should be aware that there is a high incidence of visual impairment among children with HIV and AIDS.

Guidance for Paragraph (c)

Teachers or others in the program setting are in the best position to note the following kinds of indications that a child may need to be evaluated to determine whether an attention deficit disorder exists:

(1) Inability of a child who is trying to participate in classroom activities to be able to orient attention, for example to choose an activity for free time or to attend to simple instructions;

(2) Inability to maintain attention, as in trying to complete a selected activity, to carry out simple requests or attend to telling of an interesting story; or

(3) Inability to focus attention on recent activities, for example on telling the teacher about a selected activity, inability to tell about simple requests after carrying them out, or inability to tell about a story after hearing it.

These indicators should only be used after the children have had sufficient time to become familiar with preschool procedures and after most of the children are able easily to carry out typical preschool activities.

Culturally competent staff recognize and appreciate cultural differences, and this awareness needs to include understanding that some cultural groups may promote behavior that may be misinterpreted as inattention. Care must be taken that any deviations in attention behavior which are within the cultural norms of the child's group are not used as indicators of possible attention deficit disorder.

A period of careful observation over three months can assure that adequate documentation is available for the difficult task of evaluation. It also provides opportunity to provide extra assistance to the child, perhaps through an aide or special education student under the teacher's direction, which might improve the child's functioning and eliminate the behavior taken as evidence of possible attention deficit disorder.

Attention deficit disorders are not the result of learning disabilities, emotional/behavioral disabilities, autism or mental retardation. A comprehensive psychological evaluation may be carried out in some cases to rule out learning disability or mental retardation. It is possible, however, in some instances for this disability to coexist with another disability. Children who meet the criteria for multiple disabilities (e.g., attention deficient disorder and learning disability, or emotional/behavioral disorder, or mental retardation) would be eligible for services as children with multiple disabilities or under their primary disability.

Teacher and parent reports have been found to provide the most useful information for assessment of children suspected of having attention deficit disorder. They are also useful in planning and providing special education intervention. The most successful approach may be a positive behavior modification program in the classroom, combined with a carryover program in the home. Prompt and clear response should be provided consistently. Positive reinforcement for appropriate behavior, based on rewards such as stickers or small items desired by the child has been found effective for children with this disorder, along with occasional withholding of rewards or postponing of desired activities in the face of inappropriate behavior. Effective programs suggest that positive interactions with the child after appropriate behavior are needed at least three times as often as any negative response interactions after inappropriate behavior. Consultants familiar with behavior modification should be used to assist teachers in planning and carrying out intervention which can maintain this positive to negative ratio while shaping behaviors. These behavior interventions can be provided in mainstream placements with sufficient personnel.

Suggested Primary Members of A Head Start Evaluation Team for Health Impaired Children:

Physician.
Pediatrician.
Psychologist.
Other specialists related to specific disabilities.

Possible Related Services:

(Related services are determined by individual need. These "possible related services" are merely examples and are not intended to be limiting.)

Family counseling.
Genetic counseling.
Nutrition counseling.
Recreational therapy.
Supervision of physical activities.
Transportation.
Assistive technology devices or services

Section 1308.8 Eligibility Criteria: Emotional/Behavioral Disorders

Guidance for Paragraph (a)

Staff should insure that behavior which may be typical of some cultures or ethnic groups, such as not making eye contact with teachers or other adults or not volunteering comments or initiating conversations are not misinterpreted.

The disability, social service and parent involvement coordinators should consider providing extra attention to children at-risk for emotional/behavioral disorders and their parents to help prevent a disability. Members of the Council of One Hundred, Kiwanis, Urban League, Jaycees, Rotary, Foster Grandparents, etc. may be able to provide mentoring and individual attention.

Suggested Primary Members of a Head Start Evaluation Team for Emotional/behavioral Disorders:

Psychologist, psychiatrist or other clinically trained and State qualified mental health professionals.

Pediatrician.

Possible Related Services:

(Related services are determined by individual need. These "possible related services" are merely examples and are not intended to be limiting.)

Behavior management.
Environmental adjustments.
Family counseling.
Psychotherapy.
Transportation.
Assistive technology.

Section 1308.9 Eligibility Criteria: Speech or Language Impairment

Guidance for Paragraph (a)

Staff familiar with the child should consider whether shyness, lack of familiarity with vocabulary which might be used by testers, unfamiliar settings, or linguistic or cultural factors are negatively influencing screening and assessment results. Whenever possible, consultants trained in assessing the speech and language skills of young children should be selected. The child's ability to communicate at home, on the playground and in the neighborhood should be determined for an accurate assessment. Review of the developmentally appropriate age ranges for the production of difficult speech sounds can also help reduce over-referral for evaluation.

Suggested Primary Members of a Head Start Evaluation Team for Speech or Language Impairment:

Speech Pathologist.
Language Pathologist.
Audiologist.
Otolaryngologist.
Psychologist.

Possible Related Services:

(Related services are determined by individual need. These "possible related services" are merely examples and are not intended to be limiting.)

Environmental adjustments.
Family counseling.
Language therapy.
Speech therapy.
Transportation.
Assistive technology devices or services.

Section 1308.10 Eligibility Criteria: Mental Retardation

Guidance for Paragraph (a)

Evaluation instruments with age-appropriate norms should be used. These should be administered and interpreted by professionals sensitive to racial, ethnic and linguistic differences. The diagnosticians must be aware of sensory or perceptual impairments that the child may have (e.g., a child who is visually impaired should not be tested with instruments that rely heavily on visual information as this could produce a depressed score from which erroneous diagnostic conclusions might be drawn).

Suggested primary members of a Head Start evaluation team for mental retardation:

Psychologist.
Pediatrician.

Possible related services:

(Related services are determined by individual need. These "possible related services" are merely examples and are not intended to be limiting.)

Environmental adjustments.
Family counseling.
Genetic counseling.
Language therapy.
Recreational therapy.
Speech therapy.
Transportation.
Nutrition counseling.

Section 1308.11 Eligibility Criteria: Hearing Impairment Including Deafness

Guidance for Paragraph (a)

An audiologist should evaluate a child who has failed rescreening or who does not respond to more than one effort to test the child's hearing. If the evaluation team determines that the child has a disability, the team should make recommendations to meet the child's needs for education and medical care or habilitation, including auditory training to learn to use hearing more effectively.

Suggested Primary Members of a Head Start Evaluation Team for Hearing Impairment:

Audiologist.
Otolaryngologist.

Possible Related Services:

(Related services are determined by individual need. These "possible related services" are merely examples and are not intended to be limiting.)

Auditory training.
Aural habilitation.
Environmental adjustments.
Family counseling.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Genetic counseling.

Language therapy.

Medical treatment.

Speech therapy.

Total communication, speechreading or manual communication.

Transportation.

Use of amplification.

Assistive technology devices or services.

Section 1308.12 Eligibility Criteria: Orthopedic Impairment

Guidance for Paragraph (a)

Suggested Primary Members of a Head Start Evaluation Team for Orthopedic Impairment:

Pediatrician.

Orthopedist.

Neurologist.

Occupational Therapist.

Physical Therapist.

Rehabilitation professional.

Possible Related Services:

(Related services are determined by individual need. These "possible related services" are merely examples and are not intended to be limiting.)

Environmental adjustments.

Family counseling.

Language therapy.

Medical treatment.

Occupational therapy.

Physical therapy.

Assistive technology.

Recreational therapy.

Speech therapy.

Transportation.

Nutrition counseling.

Section 1308.13 Eligibility Criteria: Visual Impairment Including Blindness

Guidance for Paragraph (a)

Primary Members of an Evaluation Team for Visual Impairment including Blindness:

Ophthalmologist.

Optometrist.

Possible Related Services:

(Related services are determined by individual need. These "possible related services" are merely examples and are not intended to be limiting.)

Environmental adjustments.

Family counseling.

Occupational therapy.

Orientation and mobility training.

Pre-Braille training.

Recreational therapy.

Sensory training.

Transportation.

Functional vision assessment and therapy.

Section 1308.14 Learning Disabilities

Guidance for Paragraph (a)

When a four or five-year-old child shows signs of possible learning disabilities, thorough documentation should be gathered. For example, specific anecdotal information and samples of the child's drawings, if appropriate, should be included in the material given to the evaluation team.

A Master's degree level professional with a background in learning disabilities should be a member of the evaluation team.

Possible Related Services:

(Related services are determined by individual need. These "possible related services" are merely examples and are not intended to be limiting.)

Vision evaluation.

Neurology.

Psychology.

Motor development.

Hearing evaluation.

Child psychiatry.

Pediatric evaluation.

Section 1308.15 Autism

A child who manifests characteristics of the condition after age three can still be diagnosed as having autism. Autism does not include children with characteristics of serious emotional disturbance.

Suggested possible members of a Head Start evaluation team:

Psychologist.

Pediatrician.

Audiologist.

Psychiatrist.

Language pathologist.

Possible related services:

(Related services are determined by individual need. These "possible related services" are merely examples and are not intended to be limiting.)

Family support services.

Language therapy.

Transportation.

Section 1308.16 Traumatic Brain Injury

Traumatic brain injury does not include congenital brain injury.

Suggested possible members of an evaluation team included:

Psychologist.

Physical therapist.

Speech or language pathologist.

Possible related services:

(Related services are determined by individual need. These "possible related services" are merely examples and are not intended to be limiting.)

Rehabilitation professional.

Occupational therapy.

Speech or language therapy.

Assistive technology.

Section 1308.17 Other Impairments

This category was included to ensure that any Head Start child who meets the State eligibility criteria as developmentally delayed or State-specific criteria for services to preschool children with disabilities is eligible for needed special services either within Head Start or the State program.

Suggested primary members of an evaluation team for other impairments meeting State eligibility criteria for services to preschool children with disabilities.

Pediatrician.

Psychologist.

Other specialists with expertise in the appropriate area(s).

Possible Related Services:

(Related services are determined by individual need. These "possible related services" are merely examples and are not intended to be limiting.)

Occupational therapy.

Speech or language therapy.

Family Counseling.

Transportation.

Deaf-blindness

Information on assistance or joint services for deaf-blind children can be obtained through SEAs.

Multiple Disabilities

A child who is deaf and has speech and language impairments would not be considered to have multiple disabilities, as it could be expected that these impairments were caused by the hearing loss.

Suggested primary members of a Head Start evaluation team:

Audiologists.

Special educators.

Speech, language or physical therapists.

Psychologists or psychiatrists.

Rehabilitation professional.

Possible related services:

(Related services are determined by individual need. These "possible related services" are merely examples and are not intended to be limiting.)

Speech, language, occupational or physical therapists as needed.

Assistive technology devices or services.

Mental health services.

Transportation.

Section 1308.18 Disabilities/Health Services Coordination

Guidance for Paragraph (a)

It is important for staff to maintain close communication concerning children with health impairments. Health and disability services coordinators need to schedule frequent re-tests of children with recurrent middle ear infections and to ensure that they receive ongoing medical treatment to prevent speech and language delay. They should ensure that audiometers are calibrated annually for accurate testing of hearing. Speech and hearing centers, the manufacturer, or public school education services districts should be able to perform this service. In addition, a daily check when an audiometer is in use and a check of the acoustics in the testing site are needed for accurate testing.

Approximately 17 percent of Down Syndrome children have a condition of the spine (atlanto-axial instability) and should not engage in somersaults, trampoline exercises, or other activities which could lead to spinal injury without first having a cervical spine x-ray.

Guidance for Paragraph (b)

The disabilities services coordinator needs to assure that best use is made of mental health consultants when a child appears to have a problem which may be symptomatic of a disability in the social/emotional area. Teachers, aides and volunteers should keep anecdotal records of the child's activities, tantrums, the events which appear to precipitate the tantrums, language use, etc. These can provide valuable information to a mental health consultant, who should be used primarily to make specific recommendations and assist the staff rather than to document the problem.

The mental health coordinator can cooperate in setting up group meetings for parents of children with disabilities which provide needed support and a forum for talking over mutual concerns. Parents needing community mental health services may need direct assistance in accessing services, especially at first.

The disability services coordinator needs to work closely with staff across components to help parents of children who do not have disabilities become more understanding and knowledgeable about disabilities and ways to lessen their effects. This can help reduce the isolation which some families with children with disabilities experience.

Guidance for Paragraphs (c) and (d)

Arrangements should be made with the family and the physician to schedule the administration of medication during times when the child is most likely to be under parental supervision.

Awareness of possible side effects is of particular importance when treatment for a disability requires administration of potentially harmful drugs (e.g., anti-convulsants, amphetamines).

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Section 1308.19 Developing Individual Education Programs (IEPs)

Guidance for Paragraph (a)

The IEP determines the type of placement and the specific programming which are appropriate for a child. The least restrictive environment must be provided and staff need to understand that this means the most appropriate placement in a regular program to the maximum extent possible based on the IEP. Because it is individually determined, the least restrictive environment varies for different children. Likewise, the least restrictive environment for a given child can vary over time as the disability is remediated or worsens. A mainstreamed placement, in a regular program with services delivered by regular or special staff, is one type of integrated placement on the continuum of possible options. It represents the least restrictive environment for many children.

Following screening, evaluation and the determination that a child meets the eligibility criteria and has a disability, a plan to meet the child's individual needs for special education and related services is developed. In order to facilitate communication with other agencies which may cooperate in providing services and especially with LEAs or private schools which the children will eventually enter, it is recommended that programs become familiar with the format of the IEP used by the LEAs and use that format to foster coordination. However, the format of the IEP to be developed for children in Head Start can vary according to local option. It should be developed to serve as a working document for teachers and others providing services for a child.

It is recommended that the staff review the IEP of each child with a disability more frequently than the minimum once a year to keep the objectives and activities current.

It is ideal if a child can be mainstreamed in the full program with modifications of some of the small group, large group or individual program activities to meet his or her special needs and this should be the first option considered. However, this is not possible or realistic in some cases on a full-time basis. The IEP team needs to consider the findings and recommendations of the multidisciplinary evaluation team, observation and developmental assessment information from the Head Start staff and parents, parental information and desires, and the IEP to plan for the best situation for each child. Periodic reviews can change the degree to which a child can be mainstreamed during the program year. For example, a child with autism whose IEP called for part-time services in Head Start in the fall might improve so that by spring the hours could be extended.

If Head Start is not an appropriate placement to meet the child's needs according to the IEP, referral should be made to another agency.

Helpful specific information based on experience in Head Start is provided in manuals and resource materials on serving children with disabilities developed by ACYF and by technical assistance providers. They cover such aspects of developing and implementing the IEP as:

- Gathering data needed to develop the IEP;
- Preparing parents for the IEP conference;
- Writing IEPs useful to teachers; and
- Developing appropriate curriculum activities and home follow-up activities.

Guidance for Paragraph (j)

Programs are encouraged to offer parents assistance in noting how their child functions at home and in the neighborhood. Parents should be encouraged to contribute this valuable information to the staff for use in ongoing planning. Care should be taken to put parents at ease and to eliminate or explain specialized terminology. Comfortable settings, familiar meeting rooms and ample preparation can help lessen anxiety. The main purpose is to involve parents actively, not just to obtain their signature on the IEP.

It is important to involve the parents of children with disabilities in activities related to their child's unique needs, including the procurement and coordination of specialized services and follow-through on the child's treatment plan, to the extent possible. It is especially helpful for Head Start to assist parents in developing confidence, strategies and techniques to become effective advocates for their children and to negotiate complicated systems. Under IDEA, a federally-funded Parent Training and Information Program exists whereby parent training centers in each State provide information, support and assistance to parents enabling them to advocate for their child. Information regarding these centers should be given to parents of a child determined to have a disability. Because some parents will need to advocate for their children over a number of years, they need to gain the confidence and skills to access resources and negotiate systems with increasing independence.

Some parents of children with disabilities are also disabled. Staff may need to adjust procedures for assisting parents who have disabilities to participate in their children's programs. Materials to assist in this effort are available from technical assistance providers.

Section 1308.20 Nutrition Services

Guidance for Paragraph (a)

Vocabulary and concept building, counting, learning place settings, social skills such as conversation and acceptable manners can be naturally developed at meal or snack time, thus enhancing children's skills. Children with disabilities often need planned attention to these areas.

The staff person who is responsible for nutrition and the disabilities services coordinator should work with the social services coordinator to help families access nutrition resources and services for children who are not able to learn or develop normally because of malnutrition.

The staff person who is responsible for nutrition and the disabilities services coordinator should alert staff to watch for practices leading to baby bottle caries. This is severe tooth decay caused by putting a baby or toddler to bed with a nursing bottle containing milk, juice or sugar water or letting the child carry around a bottle for long periods of time. The serious dental and speech problems this can cause are completely preventable.

In cases of severe allergies, staff should work closely with the child's physician or a medical consultant.

Section 1308.21 Parent Participation and Transition of Children From Head Start to Public School

Guidance for Paragraph (a)

Grantees should help parents understand the value of special early assistance for a child with a disability and reassure those parents who may fear that if their child receives special education services the child may always need them. This is not the experience in Head Start and most other preschool programs where the majority of children no longer receive special education after the preschool years. The disabilities coordinator needs to help parents understand that their active participation is of great importance in helping their children overcome or lessen the effects of disabilities and develop to their full potential.

The disabilities coordinator should help program staff deal realistically with parents of children who have unfamiliar disabilities by providing the needed information, training and contact with consultants or specialized agencies. The coordinator should ensure that staff carrying out family needs assessment or home visits do not overlook possible disabilities among younger siblings who should be referred for early evaluation and preventive actions.

Guidance for Paragraphs (b) and (c)

As most Head Start children will move into the public school system, disabilities coordinators need to work with the Head Start staff for early and ongoing activities designed to minimize discontinuity and stress for children and families as they move into a different system. As the ongoing advocates, parents will need to be informed and confident in communicating with school personnel and staff of social service and medical agencies. Disabilities coordinators need to ensure that the Head Start program:

- Provides information on services available for LEAs and other sources of services parents will have to access on their own, such as dental treatment;
- Informs parents of the differences between the two systems in role, staffing patterns, schedules, and focus;
- Provides opportunities for mutual visits by staff to one another's facilities to help plan appropriate placement;
- Familiarizes parents and staff of the receiving program's characteristics and expections;
- Provides early and mutually planned transfer of records with parent consent at times convenient for both systems;
- Provides information on services available under the Individuals With Disabilities Education Act, the federally-funded parent training centers and provisions for parent involvement and due process; and
- Provides opportunities for parents to confer with staff to express their ideas and needs so they have experience in participating in IEP and other conferences in an active, confident manner. Role playing has been found helpful.

It is strongly recommended that programs develop activities for smooth transition into Head Start from Part H infant/toddler programs funded under IDEA and from Head Start to kindergarten or other placement. In order to be effective, such plans must be developed jointly. They are advantageous for the children, parents, Part H programs, Head Start and LEAs. ACYF has developed materials useful for transition. American Indian programs whose children move into several systems, such as Bureau of Indian Affairs schools and public schools, need to prepare children and families in advance for the new situation. Plans should be used as working documents and reviewed for annual update, so that the foundation laid in Head Start is maintained and strengthened.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

MANUAL FOR HEAD START ADMINISTRATORS

PART III

HEAD START POLICIES

ACF

Administration for Children and Families

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
Administration on Children, Youth and Families

1. Log No. ACYF-IM-94-04	**2. Issuance Date:** 2/25/94
3. Originating Office: Head Start Bureau	
4. Key Word: Income Guidelines	

INFORMATION MEMORANDUM

TO: All Head Start Grantees and Delegate Agencies

SUBJECT: The 1994 Family Income Guidelines

INFORMATION: Section 652(a) of the Head Start Act (P.L. 101-501) provides for periodic revision of the poverty line. The attached 1994 Family Income Guidelines reflect recently revised poverty data and must be used as part of each program's recruitment efforts in helping to determine family eligibility for Head Start.

The definition of "income," printed on the back of the attached income guidelines, is derived from the U.S. Bureau of the Census, Current Population Reports, Series P-60, No. 181 and earlier reports in the same series. It provides a more detailed explanation of the term "income" than is found in 45 CFR Part 1305.2(i).

This Memorandum replaces ACYF-IM-93-08.

Questions about the Income Guidelines should be addressed to your ACF Regional Office or the American Indian or Migrant Programs Branches.

Olivia A. Golden
Olivia A. Golden
Commissioner

ATTACHMENT: The 1994 Family Income Guidelines

CC: Regional Administrators, ACF, Regions I-X
American Indian and Migrant Programs Branches

1994 FAMILY INCOME GUIDELINES FOR HEAD START PROGRAMS

1994 FAMILY INCOME GUIDELINES (EXCEPT FOR HEAD START PROGRAMS IN ALASKA AND HAWAII)

Size of Family Unit	Income
1	$ 7,360
2	9,840
3	12,320
4	14,800
5	17,280
6	19,760
7	22,240
8	24,720

For family units with more than 8 members, add $2,480 for each additional member.

FAMILY INCOME GUIDELINES FOR HAWAII

Size of Family Unit	Income
1	$ 8,470
2	11,320
3	14,170
4	17,020
5	19,870
6	22,720
7	25,570
8	28,420

For family members with more than 8 members, add $2,850 for each additional member.

FAMILY INCOME GUIDELINES FOR ALASKA

Size of Family Unit	Income
1	$ 9,200
2	12,300
3	15,400
4	18,500
5	21,600
6	24,700
7	27,800
8	30,900

For family members with more than 8 members, add $3,100 for each additional member.

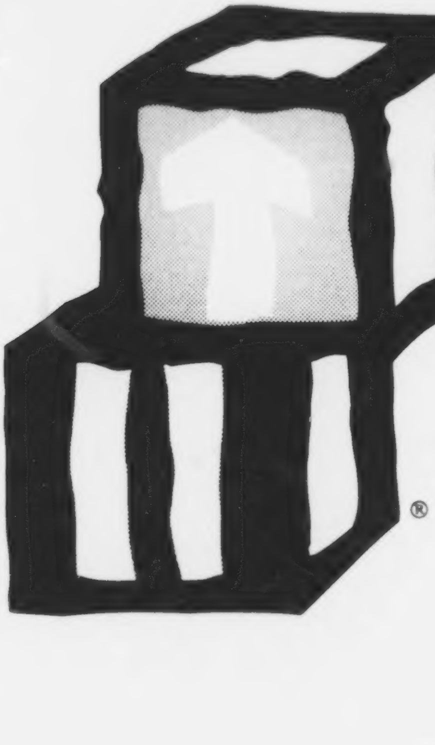
DEFINITION OF INCOME

Income means total cash receipts before taxes from all sources, with the exceptions noted below. Income includes money wages or salary before deductions; net income from non-farm self-employment; net income from farm self-employment; regular payments from Social Security or railroad retirement; payments from unemployment compensation, strike benefits from union funds, workers' compensation, veterans benefits, public assistance (including Aid to Families with Dependent Children, Supplemental Security Income, Emergency Assistance money payments, and non-Federally funded General Assistance or General Relief money payments); training stipends; alimony, child support, and military family allotments or other regular support from an absent family member or someone not living in the household; private pensions, government employee pensions (including military retirement pay), and regular insurance or annuity payments; college or university scholarships, grants, fellowships, and assistantships; and dividends, interest, net rental income, net royalties, and periodic receipts from estates or trusts; and net gambling or lottery winnings.

As defined here, income does not include capital gains; any assets drawn down as withdrawals from a bank, the sale of property, a house or a car; or tax refunds, gifts, loans, lump-sum inheritances, one-time insurance payments, or compensation for injury. Also excluded are noncash benefits, such as the employer-paid or union-paid portion of health insurance or other employee fringe benefits; food or housing received in lieu of wages; the value of food and fuel produced and consumed on farms; the imputed value of rent from owner-occupied non-farm or farm housing; and such Federal noncash benefit programs as Medicare, Medicaid, food stamps, school lunches, and housing assistance.

The period of time to be considered for eligibility is the twelve months immediately preceding the month in which application or reapplication for enrollment of a child in a Head Start program is made, or for the calendar year immediately preceding the calendar year in which the application or reapplication is made, whichever more accurately relates to the family's current needs.

Head Start
Policy Manual 70.2
The Parents



U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
Administration for Children and Families
Administration on Children, Youth and Families
Head Start Bureau

I-30-2 THE PARENTS

A. INTRODUCTION

Head Start believes that the gains made by the child in Head Start must be understood and built upon by the family and the community. To achieve this goal, Head Start provides for the involvement of the child's parents and other members of the family in the experiences he receives in the child development center by giving them many opportunities for a richer appreciation of the young child's needs and how to satisfy them.

Many of the benefits of Head Start are rooted in "change". These changes must take place in the family itself, in the community, and in the attitudes of people and institutions that have an impact on both.

It is clear that the success of Head Start in bringing about substantial changes demands the fullest involvement of the parents, parental-substitutes, and families of children enrolled in its programs. This involvement begins when a Head Start program begins and should gain vigor and vitality as planning and activities go forward.

Successful parental involvement enters into every part of Head Start, influences other anti-poverty programs, helps bring about changes in institutions in the community, and works toward altering the social conditions that have formed the systems that surround the economically disadvantaged child and his family.

Project Head Start must continue to discover new ways for parents to become deeply involved in decision-making about the program and in the development of activities that they deem helpful and important in meeting their particular needs and conditions. For some parents, participation may begin on a simple level and move to more complex levels. For other parents the movement will be immediate, because of past experiences, into complex levels of sharing and giving. Every Head Start program is obligated to provide the channels through which such participation and involvement can be provided for and enriched.

Unless this happens, the goals of Head Start will not be achieved and the program itself will remain a creative experience for the preschool child in a setting that is not reinforced by needed changes in social systems into which the child will move after his Head Start experience.

This sharing in decisions for the future is one of the primary aims of parent participation and involvement in Project Head Start.

B. THE ROLE OF THE PARENTS

EVERY HEAD START PROGRAM MUST HAVE EFFECTIVE PARENT PARTICIPATION. There are at least four major kinds of parent participation in local Head Start programs.

1. PARTICIPATION IN THE PROCESS OF MAKING DECISIONS ABOUT THE NATURE AND OPERATION OF THE PROGRAM.

2. PARTICIPATION IN THE CLASSROOM AS PAID EMPLOYEES, VOLUNTEERS OR OBSERVERS.

3. ACTIVITIES FOR THE PARENTS WHICH THEY HAVE HELPED TO DEVELOP.

4. WORKING WITH THEIR CHILDREN IN COOPERATION WITH THE STAFF OF THE CENTER.

Each of these is essential to an effective Head Start program both at the grantee level and the delegate agency level. Every Head Start program must hire/designate a Coordinator of Parent Activities to help bring about appropriate parent participation. This staff member may be a volunteer in smaller communities.

1. PARENT PARTICIPATION IN THE PROCESS OF MAKING DECISIONS ABOUT THE NATURE AND OPERATION OF THE PROGRAM

HEAD START POLICY GROUPS

a. Structure

The formal structure by which parents can participate in policy making and operation of the program will vary with the local administrative structure of the program.

Normally, however, the Head Start policy groups will consist of the following:

1. Head Start Center Committee. This committee must be set up at the center level. Where centers have several classes, it is recommended that there also be parent class committees.
2. Head Start Policy Committee. This committee must be set up at the delegate agency level when the program is administered in whole or in part by such agencies.
3. Head Start Policy Council. This Council must be set up at the grantee level.

When a grantee has delegated the entire Head Start program to one Delegate Agency, it is not necessary to have a Policy Council in addition to a Delegate Agency Policy Committee. Instead one policy group serves both the Grantee Board and the Delegate Agency Board.

b. Composition

Chart A describes the composition of each of these groups.

CHART A

Organization	Composition
1. Head Start Center Committee	1. Parents whose children are enrolled in that center.
2. Head Start Policy Committee (delegate agency)	2. At least 50% parents of Head Start children presently enrolled in that delegate agency program plus representatives of the community*
3. Head Start Policy Council (grantee)	3. At least 50% parents of Head Start children presently enrolled in that grantee's program plus representatives of the community**

*Representatives of the Community (Delegate Agency level): A representative of neighborhood community groups (public and private) and of local neighborhood community or professional organizations, which have a concern for children of low income families and can contribute to the development of the program. The number of such representatives will vary depending on the number of organizations which should appropriately be represented. The Delegate Agency determines the composition of their committee (within the above guidelines) and methods to be used in selecting representatives of the community. Parents of former Head Start children may serve as representatives of the community on delegate agency policy groups. All representatives of the community selected by the agency must be approved by elected parent members of the committee. In no case, however, should representatives of the community exceed 50% of the total committee.

**Representatives of the Community (Grantee Agency level): A representative of major agencies, (public and private) and major community civic or professional organizations which have a concern for children of low income families and can contribute to the program. The number of such representatives will vary, depending on the number of organizations which should appropriately be represented. The applicant agency determines the composition of the council (within the above guidelines) and the methods to be used in selecting representatives of the community. Parents of former Head Start children may serve as representatives of the community on grantee agency policy groups. All representatives of the community selected by the agency must be approved by elected parent members of the committee. In no case, however, should representatives of the community exceed 50% of the total committee or council.

SPECIAL NOTES

1. All parents serving on policy groups must be elected by parents of Head Start children currently enrolled in the program.

2. It is strongly recommended that the community action agency board have representation from the Head Start Policy Council to assure coordination of Head Start activities with other CAA programs. Conversely, community action agency board representation on the Policy Council is also recommended.

3. It is important that the membership of policy groups be rotated to assure a regular influx of new ideas into the program. For this purpose, terms of membership must be limited to no more than three years.

4. No staff member (nor members of their families as defined in CAP Memo 23A) of the applicant or delegate agencies shall serve on the council or committee in a voting capacity. Staff members may attend the meetings of councils or committees in a consultative non-voting capacity upon request of the council or committee.

5. Every corporate board operating a Head Start program must have a Policy Committee or Council as defined by HEW. The corporate body and the Policy Committee or Council must not be one and the same.

6. Policy groups for summer programs present a special problem because of the difficulty of electing parent representatives in advance. Therefore, the policy group for one summer program must remain in office until its successors have been elected and taken office. The group from the former program should meet frequently between the end of the program and the election of new members to assure some measure of program continuity. These meetings should be for the purpose of (a) assuring appropriate follow up of the children (b) aiding the the development of the upcoming summer Head Start program, (c) writing of the application, (d) hiring of the director and establishment of criteria for hiring staff and, when necessary (e) orientation of the new members. In short, the policy group from a former program must not be dissolved until a new group is elected. The expertise of those parents who have previously served should be used whenever possible.

c. FUNCTIONS

The following paragraphs and charts describe the minimum functions and degrees of responsibility for the various policy groups involved in administration of local Head Start programs. Local groups may negotiate for additional functions and a greater share of responsibility if all parties agree. All such agreements are subject to such limitations as may be called for by OEO or HEW policy. Questions about this should be referred to your HEW regional office.

1) The Head Start Center Committee shall carry out at least the following minimum responsibilities:

   a) Assists teacher, center director, and all other persons responsible for the development and operation of every component including curriculum in the Head Start program.

   b) Works closely with classroom teachers and all other component staff to carry out the daily activities program.

c) Plans, conducts, and participates in informal as well as formal programs and activities for center parents and staff.

d) Participates in recruiting and screening of center employees within guidelines established by OEO/HEW, the Grantee Council and Board, and Delegate Agency Committee and Board.

2) The Head Start Policy Committee. Chart B outlines the major management functions connected with local Head Start program administered by delegate agencies and the degree of responsibility assigned to each participating group.

In addition to those listed functions, the committee shall:

a) Serve as a link between public and private organizations, the grantee Policy Council, the Delegate Agency Board of Directors, and the community it serves.

b) Have the opportunity to initiate suggestions and ideas for program improvements and to receive a report on action taken by the administering agency with regard to its recommendations.

c) Plan, coordinate and organize agency-wide activities for parents with the assistance of staff.

d) Assist in communicating with parents and encouraging their participation in the program.

e) Aid in recruiting volunteer services from parents, community residents and community organizations, and assist in the mobilization of community resources to meet identified needs.

f) Administer the Parent Activity funds.

3) The Head Start Policy Council. Chart C outlines the major management functions connected with the Head Start program at the grantee level, whether it be a community action or limited purpose agency, and the degree of responsibility assigned to each participating group.

In addition to those listed functions, the Council shall:

a) Serve as a link between public and private organizations, the Delegate Agency Policy Committees, Neighborhood Councils, the Grantee Board of Directors and the community it serves.

b) Have the opportunity to initiate suggestions and ideas for program improvements and to receive a report on action taken by the administering agency with regard to its recommendations.

c) Plan, coordinate and organize agency-wide activities for parents with the assistance of staff.

d) Approve the selection of Delegate Agencies.

e) Recruit volunteer services from parents, community residents and community organizations, and mobilizes community resources to meet identified needs.

f) Distribute Parent Activity funds to Policy Committees.

It may not be easy for Head Start directors and professional staff to share responsibility when decisions must be made. Even when they are committed to involving parents, the Head Start staff must take care to avoid dominating meetings by force of their greater training and experience in the process of decision-making. At these meetings, professionals may be tempted to do most of the talking. They must learn to ask parents for their ideas, and listen with attention, patience and understanding. Self-confidence and self-respect are powerful motivating forces. Activities which bring out these qualities in parents can prove invaluable in improving family life of young children from low income homes.

Members of Head Start Policy Groups whose family income falls below the "poverty line index" may receive meeting allowances or be reimbursed for travel, per diem, meal and baby sitting expenses incurred because of Policy Group meetings. The procedures necessary to secure reimbursement funds and their regulations are detailed in OEO Instruction #6803-1.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

2. PARTICIPATION IN THE CLASSROOM AS PAID EMPLOYEES, VOLUNTEERS OR OBSERVERS

Head Start classes must be open to parents at times reasonable and convenient to them. There are very few occasions when the presence of a limited number of parents would present any problem in operation of the program.

Having parents in the classroom has three advantages. It:

a. gives the parents a better understanding of what the center is doing for the children and the kinds of home assistance they may require.

b. shows the child the depth of his parents concern.

c. gives the staff an opportunity to know the parents better and to learn from them.

There are, of course, many center activities outside the classroom (e.g., field trips, clinic visits, social occasions) in which the presence of parents is equally desirable.

Parents are one of the categories of persons who must receive preference for employment as non-professionals. Participation as volunteers may also be possible for many parents. Experience obtained as a volunteer may be helpful in qualifying for non-professional employment. At a minimum parents should be encouraged to observe classes several times. In order to permit fathers to observe it might be a good idea to have some parts of the program in the evening or on weekends.

Head Start Centers are encouraged to set aside space within the Center which can be used by parents for meetings and staff conferences.

3. ACTIVITIES FOR PARENTS WHICH THEY HAVE HELPED TO DEVELOP

Head Start programs must develop a plan for parent education programs which are responsive to needs expressed by the parents themselves. Other community agencies should be encouraged to assist in the planning and implementation of these programs.

Parents may also wish to work together on community problems of common concern, such as health, housing, education and welfare and to sponsor activities and programs around interests expressed by the group. Policy Committees must anticipate such needs when developing program proposals and include parent activity funds to cover the cost of parent sponsored activities.

4. WORKING WITH THEIR CHILDREN IN THEIR OWN HOME IN CONNECTION WITH THE STAFF OF THE CENTER

HEW requires that each grantee make home visits a part of its program when parents permit such visits. Teachers should visit parents of summer children a minimum of once; in full year programs there should be at least three visits, if the parents have consented to such home visits. In those rare cases where a double shift has been approved for teachers it may be necessary to use other types of personnel to make home visits. Personnel such as teacher aides, health aides and social workers may also make home visits with, or independently of, the teaching staff but coordinated through the parent program staff in order to eliminate uncoordinated visits.

Head Start staff should develop activities to be used at home by other family members that will reinforce and support the child's total Head Start experience.

Staff, parents and children will all benefit from home visits and activities. Grantees shall not require that parents permit home visits as a condition of the child's participation in Head Start. However, every effort must be made to explain the advantages of visits to parents.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

DEFINITIONS AS USED ON CHARTS B AND C

A - General Responsibility

The individual or group with legal and fiscal responsibility guides and directs the carrying out of the function described through the person or group given operating responsibility.

B - Operating Responsibility

The individual or group that is directly responsible for carrying out or performing the function, consistent with the general guidance and direction of the individual or group holding general responsibility.

C - Must Approve or Disapprove

The individual or group (other than persons or groups holding general and operating responsibility, A and B above) must approve before the decision is finalized or action taken. The individual or group must also have been consulted in the decision making process prior to the point of seeking approval.

If they do not approve, the proposal cannot be adopted, or the proposed action taken, until agreement is reached between the disagreeing groups or individuals.

D - Must be Consulted

The individual or group must be called upon before any decision is made or approval is granted to give advice or information but not to make the decision or grant approval.

E - May be Consulted

The individual or group may be called upon for information, advice or recommendations by those individuals or groups having general responsibility or operating responsibility.

A = General Responsibility
B = Operating Responsibility
C = Must Approve or Disapprove
D = Must be Consulted
E = May be Consulted

	Chart B				Chart C			
	Delegate Agency				Grantee Agency			
FUNCTION	Board	Executive Director	Head Start Policy Committee	Head Start Director	Board	Executive Director	Head Start Policy Council	Head Start Director
I. PLANNING								
(a) Identify child development needs in the area to be served (by CAA if not delegated)	A	B	D	D	A	B	D	D
(b) Establish goals of Head Start Program and develop ways to meet them within HEW guidelines	A	C	C	B	A	C	C	B
(c) Determine Delegate Agencies and areas in the community in which Head Start Programs will operate	-	-	-	-	A	D	C	B
(d) Determine location of centers or classes	A	D	C	B	-	-	-	-
(e) Develop plans to use all available community resources in Head Start	A	D	C	B	A	D	C	B

A = General Responsibility
B = Operating Responsibility
C = Must Approve or Disapprove
D = Must be Consulted
E = May be Consulted

FUNCTION	Chart B				Chart C			
	Delegate Agency				Grantee Agency			
	Board	Executive Director	Head Start Policy Committee	Head Start Director	Board	Executive Director	Head Start Policy Council	Head Start Director
I. PLANNING - Continued								
(f) Establish criteria for selection of children within applicable laws and HEW guidelines	-	-	-	-	A	C	C	B
(g) Develop plan for recruitment of children	A	C	C	B	-	-	-	-
II. GENERAL ADMINISTRATION								
(a) Determine the composition of the appropriate Policy Group and the method for setting it up (within HEW guidelines)	A	B	C	D	A	B	C	D
(b) Determine what services should be provided to Head Start from the CAA Central Office and the neighborhood centers	-	-	-	-	A	B	C	D

A = General Responsibility
B = Operating Responsibility
C = Must Approve or Disapprove
D = Must be Consulted
E = May be Consulted

FUNCTION	Chart B Delegate Agency				Chart C Grantee Agency			
	Board	Executive Director	Head Start Policy Committee	Head Start Director	Board	Executive Director	Head Start Policy Council	Head Start Director
II. GENERAL ADMINISTRATION - Continued								
(c) Determine what services should be provided to Head Start from Delegate Agency	A	B	C	D	-	-	-	-
(d) Establish a method of hearing and resolving community complaints about the Head Start program	D	C	A	B	D	C	A	B
(e) Direct the CAA Head Start staff in day to day operations	-	-	-	-	E	A	E	B
(f) Direct the Delegate Agency H/S staff in day to day operations	E	A	E	B	-	-	-	-
(g) Ensure that standards for acquiring space, equipment and supplies are met	A	D	D	B	A	D	D	B

A = General Responsibility
B = Operating Responsibility
C = Must Approve or Disapprove
D = Must be Consulted
E = May be Consulted

	Chart B				Chart C			
	Delegate Agency				Grantee Agency			
FUNCTION	Board	Executive Director	Head Start Policy Committee	Head Start Director	Board	Executive Director	Head Start Policy Council	Head Start Director
III. PERSONNEL ADMINISTRATION								
(a) Determine Head Start personnel policies (including establishment of hiring and firing criteria for H/S staff, career development plans and employee grievance procedures)								
Grantee agency- -	-	-	-	-	A	C	C	B
Delegate agency- -	A	C	C	B	-	-	-	-
(b) Hire and fire H/S Director of Grantee Agency	-	-	-	-	A	B	C	-
(c) Hire and fire H/S staff of Grantee Agency	-	-	-	-	E	A	C	B
(d) Hire and fire H/S Director of Delegate Agency	A	B	C	-	-	-	-	-
(e) Hire and fire H/S staff of Delegate Agency	E	A	C	B	-	-	-	-

A = General Responsibility
B = Operating Responsibility
C = Must Approve or Disapprove
D = Must be Consulted
E = May be Consulted

	Chart B				Chart C			
	Delegate Agency				Grantee Agency			
FUNCTION	Board	Executive Director	Head Start Policy Committee	Head Start Director	Board	Executive Director	Head Start Policy Council	Head Start Director
IV. GRANT APPLICATION PROCESS								
(a) Prepare request for funds and proposed work program								
Prior to sending to CAA	A	C	C	B	-	-	-	-
Prior to sending to HEW	-	-	-	-	A	C	C	B
(b) Make major changes in budget and work program while program is in operation	A	C	C	B	A	C	C	B
(c) Provide information needed for pre-review to Policy Council	A	D	C	B	-	-	-	-
(d) Provide information needed for pre-review to HEW	-	-	-	-	A	D	C	B
V. EVALUATION								
Conduct self-evaluation of agency's H/S program	A	D	B	D	A	D	B	D

hds
human
development
services

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
Administration for Children, Youth and Families

1. Log No. ACYF-IM-87-33	**2. Issuance Date:** 11/5/87
3. Originating Office: Head Start Bureau	
4. Key Word: Parent Involvement	**5.**
6.	**7.**

INFORMATION MEMORANDUM

TO : ALL HEAD START GRANTEES AND DELEGATE AGENCIES

SUBJECT : PARENT INVOLVEMENT POLICY INTERPRETATIONS

LEGAL AND RELATED REFERENCES : 45-CFR 1304, Appendix B. - Head Start, I-30-2 The Parents

BACKGROUND : Head Start Performance Standards for Parent Involvement, (45-CFR 1304), Appendix B., I-30-2, The Parents, require Head Start Grantees and Delegate Agencies to involve parents of Head Start children in the overall development and operation of Head Start programs at the local level. In order to facilitate their involvement in the program Head Start agencies are expected to provide a variety of opportunities for parents which have the potential for strengthening their role as the prime or first educator of their children, and have the potential for parents' personal growth and enhancement.

The Head Start Bureau, Administration for Children, Youth and Families has learned that on occasion, parent involvement policies and performance standards may be misinterpreted by some Head Start agencies, which can lead to these agencies inadvertently following and carrying out improper and illegal procedures in this program component. When this happens, the parent involvement component, and possibly the entire Head Start program can be adversely affected. It is important that all Head Start agencies carefully follow and abide by all parent involvement policies and performance standards.

INFORMATION Attached is a list of frequently asked policy questions about parent involvement policies in Head Start along with the official interpretations to these questions.

EFFECTIVE DATE : IMMEDIATELY

INQUIRIES TO: ACYF **Regional Offices or the National Head** Start Bureau Social **Services and Parent Involvement** Branch.

Dodie

Dodie Livingston
COMMISSIONER

cc: Regional Offices, ACYF
American Indian and Migrant **Programs Branches**

Parent Involvement Policy Interpretations

1. Can a policy council/committee delegate its responsibility to approve or disapprove the hiring and firing of Head Start staff to one of its own committees, a committee made up of council members and others or any other body of individuals?

   Interpretation: No, the policy council/committee may not delegate this responsibility to any committee or any other body of individuals. The policy council/committee may utilize a committee or subcommittee from the council/committee to gather facts and/or information to make a recommendation to the full policy council or committee. However, the responsibility to approve/disapprove the hiring/firing of Head Start staff must remain with the full policy council/committee.

2. Must the policy council/committee approve/disapprove the hiring/firing of all Head Start staff including probationary, temporary, or part-time staff, consultants or staff paid from other than Head Start funds?

   Interpretation: The policy council/committee must approve/disapprove the hiring/firing of all permanent and part-time staff, including those considered probationary.

   The issue of temporary staff should be addressed in the personnel policies of the grantee. There may be a need to hire temporary staff in an emergency, but employment should be limited by policy to a short period of time (30 days would be appropriate). Individuals hired on a temporary basis for a longer period of time should be considered permanent employees and subject to the actions of the policy council/committee. The point of this interpretation is to make sure that temporary hiring is not used as a mechanism for circumventing the authority of the policy council/committee.

   As with temporary employees, consultants hired for a short period of time (30 days or less) do not need the approval of the policy council/committee. Consultants taking the place of staff members for a longer period of time should be subject to policy council/committee approval. Again, the practices implemented by the grantee should be spelled out in their personnel policies and should not be used to circumvent the policy council's/committee's authority.

   Staff paid from other than Head Start funds should be approved by the policy council/committee when these individuals have direct contact with children and families.

3. Can the policy council/committee hire or fire Head Start staff?

Interpretation: No, the hiring and firing of Head Start staff is an administrative function assigned to the Head Start Director, and is not a function of the Head Start policy council/committee.

Appendix B of the Head Start Performance Standards (70.2) requires that the Policy Council/committee approve proposed actions to hire or fire Head Start staff prior to any action being taken. In addition, the Policy Council/committee must be consulted in the decision making process prior to the point of seeking approval. To meet this requirement the Policy Council/committee must be called upon to give advice or information, but not to make the decision prior to being called upon to approve a proposed action.

4. Must the policy council/committee be involved in the process prior to a decision on the part of director to fire an employee?

Interpretation: Yes, the director should consult with the policy council/committee prior to actual firing. This consultation should not be confused with the normal supervisory function that must go on in the program, acknowledging good work habits and advising employees of problems as they occur. The need to consult arises when it becomes clear to the director that an employee is doing unsatisfactory work and that the only option may be firing the employee. In addition, if the situation warrants immediate action the grantee may suspend an employee until proper termination proceedings can occur.

5. What is the difference between the parent activity fund and parent involvement component expenditures?

Interpretation: The parent involvement component expenditures are budgetary items to fulfill the requirements of the performance standards and other parent involvement objectives. The parent activity fund is an amount of money set aside by a grantee to provide parents with opportunities and experiences in planning, developing and implementing projects initiated by them. In addition, the parent activity fund can be administered by the policy council/committee, as appropriate (see Note*). Conversely, the parent involvement component funds are always administered by the grantee. However, both funds are subject to the provisions of OHD Grants Administration Manual Part 74 and other applicable cost principles.

*Note - Policy councils and committees may be permitted to open their own bank accounts for the administration of parent activity funds and to have funds transferred to such accounts at the beginning of a program year. In keeping with principles of sound administration, they must maintain records which will show authorization of expenditures, their purpose and amounts. It is the responsibility of the grantee to assist the council or committee in establishing a system for such accounting. If the policy group decides to use the accounting system of the grantee or delegate agency, the minutes of the meeting in which the decision was made must reflect this decision. In any event, the grantee agency, since it bears ultimate fiscal responsibility for the expenditure of funds, must concur with the fiscal control mechanism established by the policy council/committee.

6. How can the parent activity fund be used?

Interpretation: Programs must be cautioned that 45 CFR, Part 74, Appendix F, prohibits expenditure of grant funds solely for entertainment purposes. Entertainment expenditures are defined as the cost of amusement, diversion, social activities, ceremonials, and incidental cost relating thereto, such as meals, lodging, transportation and gratuities. It should be noted that the restriction on expenditures applies to activities which are solely for entertainment. Expenditures for project related purposes are allowable even though entertainment may play an incidental part in the activities. Therefore, programs are required to justify the expenditure of parent activity funds on the basis of project relatedness. For example, a visit by a parent group to a museum can be justified if parents utilize the experience to train parents in ways of providing educational activities for their children in the community. Banquets given in conjunction with parent training and seminars can be justified based on the performance standards. Once the program justifies the activity as primarily project related, with entertainment being incidental, then the related costs of lodging, transportation, refreshments, meals, etc., are also allowable.

7. Does an impasse exist if an Executive Director fires an employee and the policy council/committee does not approve the firing?

Interpretation: No, this is an example of an illegal termination done without the approval/disapproval of the policy council and must be dealt with accordingly.

8. Can policy council/committee members, including representatives of the community, whose income falls below the poverty line be reimbursed for travel, per diem, meals, and baby sitting expenses incurred because of policy council/committee meetings?

Interpretation: Yes, in accordance with provisions of Appendix B of the performance standards, any member of the Head Start policy council/committee whose income falls below the "poverty line index" may receive meeting allowances or be reimbursed for travel, per diem, meals and baby sitting expenses incurred because of policy group meetings.

9. What is the limitation on the term of membership on a Head Start policy council/committee?

Interpretation: In accordance with Appendix B of the Head Start Performance Standards (70.2) terms of membership must be limited to no more than three years. DHHS General Legal Counsel interprets this to mean that no person can serve on a particular policy council/committee more than a total of three years.

10. What is the role of the policy council/committee in hiring staff in a new agency?

Interpretation: A new agency has no official council, but is expected to organize a policy council/committee within two months from the receipt of the grant. In the interim period the grantee should organize a provisional group made up of potential Head Start parents and community members. These individuals should be involved in program planning, and must approve/disapprove hiring of staff.

11. What individual or group determines the composition of the policy council/committee and the method for selecting representatives of the community?

Interpretation: Appendix B of the performance standards gives the applicant agency the responsibility for determining the composition of the council/committee and the methods to be used in selecting representatives of the community. However, the procedure must be approved by the policy council in an existing grantee, and by the provisional group in a new grantee.

12. What body establishes personnel policies for the Head Start program?

Interpretation: In accordance with the Head Start Performance Standards, Appendix B it is the responsibility of the grantee's board of directors to determine personnel policy for the Head Start program. However, the policy council must approve the policies.

13. When a portion of the Head Start program is delegated, should the delegate agency's policy committee have representation on the grantee's policy council?

Interpretation: There is no specific requirement that there be representation from the policy committee on the grantee's policy council. However, it is recommended that grantees require such representation from each delegate agency.

14. Must the grantee process for implementation of 70.2 be in writing?

Interpretation: CFR 1304.5-2(b) provides that a grantee plan shall describe in detail the implementation of Head Start Policy Manual Instruction I-31-Section B2, The Parents (Appendix B). Therefore, the grantee must have a process for implementing 70.2 and that process must be in writing.

15. What action can be taken if an employee is notified by the director of the intent to fire, and the employee leaves without an appeal and the policy council/committee does not approve the firing?

Interpretation: In this instance, the employee was never actually fired. Therefore, no action is required.

16. What happens when a decision to fire an individual, approved by the policy council/committee, is overruled by a grievance procedure which orders the employee be reinstated?

Interpretation: If an employee avails himself of the administrative remedies provided in the agency's Personnel Policies and Procedures and is subsequently ordered back to work, there is no requirement that the policy council/committee must approve the reinstatement, providing that the policy council has approved the Personnel Policies and Procedures.

17. Can a Head Start employee who has a child enrolled in the program serve on the policy council/committee in a voting capacity?

Interpretation: No, because of the restriction that no staff member (nor members of their families) of the applicant or delegate agencies shall serve on the policy council/committee in a voting capacity.

18. When can grantee staff attend a policy council/committee meeting?

Interpretation: In accordance with Appendix B of the performance standards, staff members may attend policy council/committee meetings upon request of the council. When there is a need to share information with the policy council it is permissible for the staff member to request time on the agenda for the presentation.

19. How often should a policy council/committee meet?

Interpretation: It is desirable that the policy council/committee meet at least once per month. However, where this is not possible, a quarterly meeting is acceptable. The policy council/committee also may call meetings at any time in accordance with the provisions of their by-laws to handle pressing issues.

20. Who has the responsibility for training the policy council/committee?

Interpretation: Training of the policy council/committee is the responsibility of the applicant agency. Generally this responsibility is delegated to the program director and/or designated staff. The training can also be accommodated through outside resources such as colleges, universities, consultants, etc.

21. What is the time period, after the beginning of the operational year, in which a new policy council/committee must be established?

Interpretation: ACYF recommends that each Head Start grantee establish a new policy council/committee within 60 days after the beginning of the operational year. This recommendation is set forth to allow the policy council/committee adequate time to receive the full benefits of training and experience in the decision making process.

22. May a grantee Board chairman also serve as the policy council/committee chairman?

Interpretation: 70.2 requires that each corporate board operating a Head Start program must have a policy council/committee, and that the corporate board and the policy council/committee cannot be one and the same. Based on the function of the policy council/committee, there will be times when the council/committee must approve the actions of the corporate board. Also, there will be times when the desires of the council/committee will be in conflict with those of the corporate board, which would possibly pose a situation of conflict of interest if the chairperson of the corporate board served as the chairperson of the policy council/committee. For these reasons, the answer to the above question is No.

23. How should parents be included in the planning process of the local Head Start program?

Interpretation: The involvement of parents in the planning process of a Head Start program includes, but is not limited to, encouraging parents to be involved in the development of the grant application and all program work plans to be utilized in implementing the project. Parents should serve on committees involved in writing plans, establishing goals for the program, and developing ways to meet these goals.

24. Must grantee Personnel Policies and Procedures include a provision requiring the policy council/committee to approve/disapprove the hiring/firing of Head Start staff?

Interpretation: 45 CFR Part 1301.31 requires that Head Start agencies establish personnel policies governing the recruitment and selection of Staff. ACYF interprets this to mean that grantees must establish procedures for applicant interviews, reference checks and final selection by an appropriate official. In accordance with 70.2 the appropriate official cannot finalize an action involving the hiring or firing of Head Start staff without the approval of the appropriate policy council/committee. Therefore, ACYF requires that all grantees' Personnel Policies and Procedures delineate a process for policy council/committee involvement in the hiring and firing of Head Start staff, including the policy council/committee's right to approve/disapprove all hirings and firings of Head Start staff.

MANUAL FOR HEAD START ADMINISTRATORS

PART IV

APPLICATION INSTRUCTIONS

OMB #0980-0220
EXPIRES: 9/30/92

ACF **Administration for Children and Families**	**U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES** **Administration on Children, Youth and Families**

1. Log No. ACF-PI-91-13	**2. Issuance Date:** 9/10/91
3. Originating Office:	
4. Key Word: Grant Application	**5.** Instructions
6.	**7.**

PROGRAM INSTRUCTION

TO: Head Start Grantees and Delegate Agencies

SUBJECT: Interim Head Start Grant Application Instructions

LEGAL AND RELATED REFERENCES: The Head Start Act, 42 U.S.C. 9801 et seq.

PURPOSE: The purpose of this Program Instruction is to inform all Head Start grantees and delegate agencies of revised grant application forms that will be used for the refunding of Head Start programs, beginning with those that are refunded on February 1, 1992. These forms are explained in (1) the Interim General Instructions for a Grant Application to Continue a Head Start Program and (2) the Interim Instructions for Completion of the Program Narrative Statement for a Head Start Grant Application, copies of which are attached. These interim instructions will be applicable until the final instructions are approved by the Office of Management and Budget.

BACKGROUND: The current Head Start grant application process utilizes the Standard Form 424 which is used to apply for many different types of programs. There are currently no approved instructions for a program narrative that is specifically tailored to the requirements of Head Start. The Administration on Children, Youth and Families (ACYF) has proposed revised Instructions for the completion of the Program Narrative Statement for Head Start grantees because the Standard Form 424 is inadequate to meet the current needs of the

Head Start program. In addition, there is a need to review Head Start budgets in more detail than is allowed by the eight Budget Categories included in the OMB SF 424A, Part B.

The revised General Instructions for Completion of a Head Start Grant Application and the Instructions for Completion of the Program Narrative Statement for a Head Start Grant Application were published in the Federal Register for comment on December 28, 1988. We received a number of letters commenting on the proposed instructions. Next year, we plan to release a final set of grant application forms for Head Start grantees that will enable them to develop a three-year planning cycle. These forms will reduce unnecessary paperwork, while helping grantees design programs that are effective in meeting the needs of the communities they serve.

INSTRUCTION: Until the final application instructions are released, we are instructing grantees to use the interim instructions that are attached. We expect that these instructions will remain in effect for one year. Once the more detailed final instructions are approved, we will begin a three year grant application cycle.

These interim instructions call for grantees to focus their refunding applications on (1) explaining changes they are proposing in their currently approved Head Start programs; and (2) reporting on the progress they have made in carrying out the objectives they planned to accomplish during the current grant period. We expect, in most cases, that the use of these new interim instructions will result in grantees having to prepare narrative statements that are greatly reduced in length and complexity from those submitted in past years.

The interim instructions also require grantees to provide more detailed program design and budget information than has been requested in the past. This information will enable us to better understand and assess program costs. In addition, the interim instructions clarify when and how amendments to grants are to be made after they have been awarded.

IMPLEMENTATION: All Head Start grantees are to use the instructions attached to this Program Instruction beginning with those whose applications are to be refunded effective February 1, 1992. February 1992 applications are to be submitted to the appropriate Regional Offices by November 1, 1991.

Questions on this Program Instruction should be referred to the appropriate Regional Office, American Indian Programs Branch, or the Migrant Programs Branch.

Wade F. Horn, Ph.D.
Commissioner

cc: Regional Offices, Regions I-X
American Indian and Migrant Programs Branches

Attachments

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

OMB #0980-0220
EXPIRES: 9/30/92

INTERIM GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS FOR A GRANT APPLICATION TO CONTINUE A HEAD START PROGRAM

STANDARD FORMS 424, 424A, AND 424B AND PROGRAM NARRATIVE STATEMENT

DUE DATES FOR THE SUBMISSION OF GRANT APPLICATIONS

The Administration for Children and Families (ACF) will make annual continuation grant awards for 12-month periods to Head Start grantees. ***Applications must be submitted to ACF no later than 90 days prior to the end of the grant period.*** An original application and two copies should be submitted to the responsible ACF Office of Fiscal Operations.

CONTENT OF APPLICATIONS

Head Start applicants must submit a Standard Form (SF) 424, "Application For Federal Assistance," and an SF 424A, "Budget Information - Non-Construction Programs." Applicants must adhere to the standard "Instructions for the SF 424" and "Instructions for the SF 424A" that accompany the forms. Programs must also submit a signed copy of SF 424B, "Assurances - Non-Construction Programs," and a Program Narrative Statement. The following additional instructions are provided to help Head Start applicants complete their applications:

SF 424: APPLICATION FOR FEDERAL ASSISTANCE

This form is to be completed for all funding requests.

Regarding Item 2: Insert the applicant's grant number.

Regarding Item 9: Insert "HHS/ACF/ACYF/Head Start Bureau".

Regarding Item 10: The Federal Domestic Assistance Number for the Head Start Program is 93.600.

Regarding Item 16: Compliance with Executive Order 12372, "Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs," is required of all Head Start applicants prior to grant funding, except those from the areas noted below.

Alaska, Idaho, Kansas, Louisiana, Minnesota, Nebraska, Virginia, American Samoa and Palau have elected not to participate in the Executive Order process. In addition, applicants for projects administered by Federally-recognized Indian Tribes are exempt from these requirements. Applicants from these areas need take no action regarding Executive Order 12372.

All applicants must attach documentation of Policy Council approval of the application to the SF 424. Policy Council minutes indicating approval of the application are considered to be satisfactory documentation of this approval. The Policy Council Chairperson's signature approving the application is required.

SF 424A, BUDGET INFORMATION - NON-CONSTRUCTION PROGRAMS

The SF 424A must be submitted for all funding requests.

In Section B - Budget Categories, applicants should enter proposed budget amounts for all program activities, including the various program options and services to children with disabilities, in Column 1. Supplemental Training and Technical Assistance funds must be displayed in Column 2. Parent and Child Center costs must be displayed in Column 3.

When the applicant delegates part or all of its program or operates a Parent and Child Center that is in addition to a regular Head Start program, a separate 424A must be submitted for each delegate agency and Parent and Child Center. This is in addition to a summary SF 424A that is to be submitted for the grantee's entire program, where the costs associated with delegate agencies and Parent Child Centers are to be included in the Contractual object class category, line 6f.

The placement of proposed Federal program costs in the object class categories in Section B should be determined based on the following instructions:

Personnel - Line 6a. Enter the total costs of staff salaries and wages. Do not include costs of consultants.

Fringe Benefits - Line 6b. Enter the total costs of fringe benefits unless included as a part of an approved indirect cost rate.

Travel - Line 6c. Enter the total costs of travel outside of the grantee service area for employees of the project and fully explain and justify them. Do not include costs for consultant travel or local transportation.

Equipment - Line 6d. Enter the total costs of all equipment to be acquired for the project. Provide a list of all equipment and the estimated cost of each item. The need for equipment must be explained and justified in the program narrative. For grantees that are State or local governmental agencies, including Federally-recognized Indian tribes, "equipment" means an article of tangible, non-expendable, personal property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost of $5,000 or more per unit. For all other Head Start grantees, "equipment" means an article of tangible, non-expendable, personal property having a useful life of more than two years and an acquisition cost of $500 or more per unit.

Supplies - Line 6e. Enter the total costs of all tangible personal property (supplies) other than those included in Line 6d.

Contractual - Line 6f. Enter the total costs of all contracts including (1) procurement contracts (except those which belong in other categories such as equipment, supplies, etc.), (2) contracts/agreements with delegate agencies (on the summary 424A only), and (3) contracts with organizations for the provision of training or technical assistance, if not funded through supplemental training and technical assistance funds. In section A.4 of the Program Narrative, fully explain and justify any contracts not explained and justified in previous applications. Do not include payments to individuals in this line.

Construction - Line 6g. Enter the total costs of alterations or renovations. New construction is unallowable.

Other - Line 6h. Enter the total of all other direct costs not identified in other categories. Explain and justify these costs in section A.4 of the Program Narrative.

Indirect Costs - Line 6j. Enter the total amount of indirect costs. Attach a copy of any rate agreement approved within the past year. If no indirect costs are requested, enter "none."

In Section C - Non-Federal Resources, enter the amounts of non-Federal resources, including cash and in-kind contributions, that will be used to support the project. Attach a brief explanation of the types of volunteers that will be utilized and the rates at which their services are valued; a valuation of donated space including the number of square feet and the current fair rental value assigned per square foot; and a determination of depreciation or use allowance for grantee-owned space based on the property's market value at the time it was originally donated for use as a Head Start facility or the acquisition cost if the space is owned by the grantee. When a grantee or delegate agency owns or has a substantial interest in real property, the depreciation or use allowance must be calculated in accordance with OMB Circular A-122, Cost Principles for Nonprofit Organizations or OMB Circular A-87, Cost Principles for States and Local Governments. Charges to the Head Start grant for use of the property may not exceed the cost of ownership. Thus, depreciation or use allowances may be charged to compensate a grantee or delegate agency for the use of a building which it owns. In these instances, rental costs may not be charged.

APPENDIX TO SF 424A

All applicants must fill out the Head Start Line-Item Budget in the Appendix to SF 424A as a part of their grant applications. A separate Line-Item Budget must be submitted for the grantee, for each delegate agency, and for each Parent and Child Center, with the total request being combined and recorded in SF 424A, Section B. The Appendix to SF 424A explains the object class categories in Section B into which each line item is to be placed.

Explanations and justifications required in response to the SF 424A are specified above and must be provided in section A.4 of the Program Narrative to the extent that they are not provided as a part of the Appendix.

SF 424B - ASSURANCES

Applicants are to submit the standard assurances contained on the SF 424B.

PROGRAM NARRATIVE STATEMENT

Applicants must submit a program narrative statement based on the Interim Instruction for Completion of the Program Narrative Statement for a Head Start Grant Application.

INTERIM INSTRUCTIONS FOR COMPLETION OF THE PROGRAM NARRATIVE STATEMENT FOR A HEAD START GRANT APPLICATION

Applicants must submit a program narrative statement based on the following instructions:

A: CONTINUATION APPLICATIONS

The program narrative statement for a continuation application need only provide a description of accomplishments during the preceding budget period and, as necessary, an explanation of any significant changes in the program as described in the most recent application. All applicants are required to complete Sections 1-4 below.

1. NEED FOR ASSISTANCE AND GEOGRAPHIC AREA

If major changes have occurred since the submission of the most recent application, applicants must update the information previously submitted that addressed the need for Head Start services in the community served by the applicant. Only those changes that have resulted in proposed revisions in the objectives, design or implementation of the program must be explained in the application.

If no changes have occurred, the application should so state. No additional information is required.

2. OBJECTIVES AND RESULTS OR BENEFITS EXPECTED

Applicants must provide information regarding proposed changes to program objectives. If no changes have occurred, the application should so state. No additional information is required.

Applicants must provide information on progress made in meeting the objectives of their program and in implementing major activities established for the previous year.

3. APPROACH

Program Design: Applicants must fill out the Head Start Program Design form attached to these instructions, including information on the type and duration of services being provided to children and families, funded enrollment, and staff employment.

If major changes from the previous year's program are being proposed, applicants must submit information that is needed to explain and justify the proposed changes. Major changes include changes in the program options to be implemented, the communities to be served, the delegate agencies to be funded or a substantial increase or decrease in the number of children to be served which is not the result of an increase or decrease in funding, substantial changes in staffing patterns, or a substantial increase or decrease in administrative costs. If no major changes are being proposed, the application should so state. No additional information is required.

Applicants must provide information on progress made in meeting program requirements and on plans for improving the management and delivery of services. Mention should be made of specific needs for improvement identified through audits, fiscal reports, self-assessments, monitoring reports, cost analysis data, Program Information Report data, and correspondence from the Regional Office.

4. BUDGET APPROPRIATENESS AND REASONABLENESS

If major changes from the previous year's program are being proposed, the applicant must explain how these changes are reflected in the budget.

If no changes have occurred, the application should so state. No additional information is required.

In instances where the Head Start program delivers services in cooperation with other child development and child care programs such as State funded preschool or child care programs, applicants must describe how coordination will be managed from a budget perspective, addressing areas such as shared staff, facilities and equipment.

B: APPLICATIONS FOR SUPPLEMENTAL FUNDS

For supplemental assistance requests, applicants must explain the reason for the request and justify the need for additional funding. Applicants must indicate whether the request is for a permanent funding increase or if the request is for one-time funds. A SF 424 and 424A, including the signature of the Policy Council Chairperson and evidence of Policy Council approval of the request, must also be submitted.

C: APPLICATION FOR GRANT AMENDMENT

Applicants wanting to make a major program change within the course of a grant year with no increase or decrease in funding must submit a request for a grant amendment and secure approval from the appropriate ACF grant office prior to making the change. Prior approval is required when any major change in the program is anticipated. Major changes include changes in the program options to be implemented, the communities to be served, the delegate agencies to be funded or a substantial increase or decrease in the number of children to be served, substantial changes in staffing patterns, or a substantial increase or decrease in administrative costs.

Applicants must explain the reason for the request and submit a SF 424 and 424A, including the signature of the Policy Council Chairperson and evidence of Policy Council approval of the request.

PROGRAM NARRATIVE

Instructions for the Head Start Program Design Form

The purpose of this form is to provide information on the type and duration of services being provided to children and families, on planned enrollment, and on staff employment. Each grantee and delegate agency and each Parent and Child Center must fill out a separate form.

Section I (Summary of Program Design Information) should be filled out and submitted for each grantee and delegate agency and each Parent and Child Center.

Sections II (Program Schedule) and III (Staff Employment) should be filled out for each group of children served for different hours of service each year. The hours of service are calculated by using the number of hours per day, days per week, and days per year of classroom operations or socialization experiences, plus the number and duration of home visits.

The following instructions refer to those items on the form which need additional clarification:

Section I. Summary of Program Design Information

1. Funded Enrollment by Program Option. Funded enrollment by program option must equal the total number of children supported through the budget contained on the SF 424A and the Appendix to the SF 424A.

6. Length of Employment. Provide information on the average number of hours staff are employed per year. If the staff member filling the position also fills another position, Dual Role should be marked "Y" for "Yes." If two staff members are, for example, Education Coordinators and they work different numbers of hours, calculate the average hours worked.

   For example, if a staff member is employed full-time (2,080 hours per year) as a Director/Education Coordinator, 2,080 hours should be entered for both the Director and Education Coordinator positions and "Dual Role" entered as "Yes" for each position. If a staff member is employed part-time (1,040 hours per year) as a Parent Involvement Coordinator, 1,040 should be entered for the Parent Involvement Coordinator and the "Dual Role" column entered as "No." These examples are illustrated below:

Position	Hours/Year	Dual Role (Y)es or (N)o
Director	2,080	Y
Education Coordinator	2,080	Y
Health Coordinator		
Social Services Coordinator		
Parent Involvement Coordinator	1,040	N
Disabilities Coordinator		

HEAD START PROGRAM DESIGN FORM **Grantee/Delegate**____________________

I. Summary of Program Design Information

1. Funded enrollment by program option:

Center-based enrollment ____________
Home-based enrollment ____________
Combination option enrollment ____________
Other option enrollment ____________

Total Enrollment ____________

Enrollment by County:

County FIPS Code	County Name	Number of Children Served

2. Number of children with disabilities enrolled ____________

3. Number of centers to be operated ____________

4. Number of Head Start children included in item #1 that are provided child care services by the agency through funds not included in the SF 424A and the Appendix ____________

5. Number of children provided child development or child care services by the agency that are in addition to those identified in item #1 ____________

6. Length of employment. Indicate the average number of employment hours per year for the following positions:

Position	**Hours/Year**	**Dual Role (Y)es or (N)o**
Director		
Education Coordinator		
Health Coordinator		
Social Services Coordinator		
Parent Involvement Coordinator		
Disabilities Coordinator		

Section II. Program Schedule

Grantee/Delegate Identification. Enter the official grant number and, if appropriate, the official delegate identification number.

Program Schedule Number. Give each schedule an identifying number beginning with 1.

Program Option Identification. Identify the program option of each program schedule as center-based option (CB), home-based option (HB), combination program option (CO) or other program option (OT). Double session classes are to be considered center-based. Double session classes have the same teacher working with one group of children in the morning and another group of children in the afternoon.

Options other than center-based and home-based, such as combination option (CO) or other option (OT), should be identified, and the items on the form that most appropriately describe the services provided by these options should be filled out.

1. The total of all children listed here must equal the total enrollment in Section I, item #1 of this form.

3. Number of hours of center-based class per child, per day. Record the number of hours that a child will spend in the center each day. Do not count transportation time or home visits.

5. Number of days of center-based class per child, per year. Record the number of planned days that class will be held during the year. Use an exact figure for the number of days of operation that excludes planned vacation time and days when the center will not be open to the children.

8. Number of home visits per child, per year. Record the planned number of home visits for each child to be made during the year by the teacher or the home visitor.

9. Number of hours per home visit. Record the number of hours that teachers or home visitors will spend with children and families on each home visit. Do not count staff members' travel time.

HEAD START PROGRAM DESIGN FORM Grantee/Delegate # ______________

II. Program Schedule					
Program Schedule Number					
Program Option Identification					
1. Funded enrollment					
2. Number of CB/CO/OT classes or Number of HB home visitors					
Double Session, enter D					
3. Number of hours of CB/CO/OT classes per child, per day					
4. Number of days of CB/CO/OT class per child, per week					
5. Number of days of CB/CO/OT class per child, per year					
6. Number of hours HB socialization experience					
7. Number of HB socialization experiences per child, per year					
8. Number of CB/HB/CO/OT home visits per child, per year					
9. Number of hours per CB/HB/CO/OT home visits					
III. Paid Staff Employment					
10. Number of hours of employment of teachers or home visitors per week					
11. Number of days of employment of teachers or home visitors per week					
12. Number of days of employment of teachers or home visitors per year					
13. Number of hours of employment of aides per week					
14. Number of days of employment of aides per week					
15. Number of days of employment of aides per year					

APPENDIX TO SF 424A

Head Start Line-Item Budget Instructions

Each grantee, delegate agency, and Parent and Child Center must complete a separate form, filling out all columns of the line-item budget and answering the questions that follow.

The line items are organized into 12 budget categories: Personnel, Fringe Benefits, Occupancy, Child Travel, Staff Travel, Nutrition and Food, Furniture and Equipment, Supplies, Other Child Services, Other Parent Services, Other, and Indirect Costs. The line items in the budget are neither all inclusive nor necessarily relevant to each program, but are examples of appropriate budget items. **Please attempt to use one of the standard line items even though the title or item may be somewhat different from the one used in your program (e.g., use teacher aide for teacher assistant or associate teacher).** If your budget includes titles or items that are not listed, include them in the last line in the appropriate budget category.

Funds for Services to Children with Disabilities. Funds for serving children with disabilities should generally be entered in the following line items: 1.B.7 - Disabilities Coordinator; 1.B.8 - Health/Disabilities Coordinator; 1.J.3 - Other Disabilities Staff; 4.6 - Disabilities Travel; 8.6 - Disabilities Supplies; 9.7 - Speech Therapy; 9.8 - Disabilities Services; 11.11 - Disabilities Training; and 11.12 - Other Disabilities. In cases where costs associated with serving children with disabilities are a part of other line items, they should be identified under question 15, Functional Allocation of Costs, as part of the disabilities function.

Funds for Training and Technical Assistance (T&TA). Funds for providing training and technical assistance must be entered in line items 11.8 - T&TA CDA and 11.9 - Other T&TA.

Column A.	All grantees and delegates must enter budgeted ACYF costs plus planned non-Federal cash in the appropriate budget categories in Column A. All Federal and non-Federal cash should be accounted for in this column, including all cash donations.
Column B.	All grantees and delegates must enter the value of all budgeted non-Federal in-kind contributions in the appropriate line items in Column B.
Column C.	All grantees and delegates must identify, for every proposed ACYF and non-Federal line item in columns A and B, the percent of the costs that are administrative. Those line items which are considered to be 100% administrative are noted below, and 100 is already printed in this column on the form.

APPENDIX TO SF 424A (Continued)

Head Start Line-Item Budget Instructions

1.A Personnel Administration -- all line items.

11. Other -- 1. Audit; 2. Legal; 3. Theft Bond; 4. General Liability Insurance; and 5. Payroll/Accounting.

Those line items which do not allow administrative costs are noted below; there is no line for their entry on the form.

1.B Personnel Coordination -- 1. Education Coordinator; 3. Health Coordinator; 4. Social Services Coordinator; 5. Parent Involvement Coordinator; 6. Social Services/Parent Involvement Coordinator; 7. Disabilities Coordinator; 8. Health/Disabilities Coordinator; and 9. Nutrition Coordinator.

1.C Education -- all line items.

1.D Health -- all line items.

1.E Nutrition -- all line items.

1.F Social Services -- all line items.

1.G Parent Involvement -- all line items.

1.I Transportation -- 1. Bus Driver; 2. Bus Aide.

1.J Dual Roles -- 1. Family Worker; 2. Teacher Aide/Bus Driver; 3. Other Disabilities Staff.

3. Occupancy -- 6. Child Liability Insurance.

4. Child Travel -- all line items.

6. Nutrition and Food -- all line items.

7. Furniture and Equipment -- 3. Classroom/Outdoor; and 4. Kitchen

8. Supplies -- 3. Classroom/Home Base; 4. Medical/Dental; 5. Kitchen; and 6. Disabilities Supplies.

9. Other Child Services -- all line items.

10. Other Parent Services -- all line items.

11. Other -- 8. T&TA CDA; and 11. Disabilities Training.

Column D. All grantees and delegates must identify the number of staff proposed for each personnel category and indicate the number that are full-time (more than 32 hours per week and at least 34 weeks per year) and part-time (less than full-time) for each category. Be sure not to count any staff person more than once.

REFERENCES IN PARENTHESES NEXT TO THE BUDGET CATEGORIES OR LINE ITEMS REFER TO THE OBJECT CLASS CATEGORY INTO WHICH THE COST MUST BE PLACED IN SF 424A, SECTION B, OF THE APPLICATION FORM. THE SUM OF ALL GRANTEE AND DELEGATE AGENCY ACYF COSTS AND NON-FEDERAL SHARE REPORTED IN THIS APPENDIX MUST EQUAL THE AMOUNTS SPECIFIED IN SF 424A OF THE APPLICATION FORM.

The following instructions refer only to those items which need additional clarification:

1. Personnel. For each position, total all staff salaries and enter the sum on the appropriate line. In deciding where to place each title, follow the definitions given below. Consultants and substitutes paid as staff with fringe benefits, rather than through contract, should be listed in this section of the budget.

A. Administration. Enter positions that have executive responsibilities and/or responsibilities related to planning, advertising, legal, accounting and bookkeeping, personnel, purchasing and general office services.

B. Component Coordinators. Enter all positions involved in coordinating component services, including coordinators who also have other functions in the program (e.g., Nutrition Coordinator/Cook or Head Start Director/Education Coordinator). Do not enter salaries or count staff more than once.

C. Education. Enter educational staff such as Teachers, Teacher Aides, Home Visitors and Substitutes who are staff members eligible for fringe benefits.

D. Health. Enter staff devoted to the provision of health services, such as Health Aides, etc.

E. Nutrition. Enter Head Start nutrition component staff, such as Cooks and Cook Aides. Do not include nutrition staff costs that will be reimbursed by USDA.

F. Social Services. Enter social service staff, such as Social Service Aides.

G. Parent Involvement. Enter positions devoted to parent involvement in Head Start such as Parent Involvement Aides.

H. Maintenance. Enter positions devoted to maintaining the premises of the grantee's or delegate's facilities, such as Janitors, Housekeepers, etc.

I. Transportation. Enter transportation staff such as Bus or Van Drivers, Bus Aides, etc.

J. Dual Roles. Enter positions (except Coordinators) that are split between two or more of the above categories such as Director/Teacher, Social Services/Parent Involvement Aide, Teachers/Van Aides, Cook/Secretary, etc. Also enter other disabilities staff not already entered.

TOTAL PERSONNEL. The sum should be the same as that provided on SF 424A, Section B, Object Class Category 6a, of the Application Form.

2. Fringe Benefits. Enter the amounts for each proposed fringe benefit unless these costs are part of an approved indirect cost rate. Social Security is the same as FICA payments. Both State and Federal (FUTA) unemployment insurance should be entered on the Unemployment line.

   TOTAL FRINGE should be the same as that given on SF 424A, Section B, Object Class Category 6b, of the Application Form.

3. Occupancy. Enter proposed occupancy expenses. Rent may be charged only when the applicant does not own or have substantial interest in the real property. Depreciation/Use Allowances should be charged when the building is owned by or has been donated to the applicant or there is a less-than-arms-length lease agreement.

4. Child Travel. List proposed costs associated with transporting children to and from the center, on field trips, etc. Enter costs for the special transportation of children with disabilities separately, if possible. Include all costs of maintaining and repairing vehicles that transport children and the cost of contracts with transportation firms. (Vehicle purchase should be entered in budget category 7, below.)

5. Staff Travel. Enter travel costs, including per diem expenses.

6. Nutrition and Food. Enter proposed ACYF nutrition costs. Do not include nutrition costs that will be reimbursed by USDA.

7. Furniture and Equipment. Enter proposed costs of furniture, equipment, and equipment leases. Repair costs and maintenance contracts of any amount should also be entered with the exception of vehicle maintenance and repair, which is to be entered in budget category 4, above. The fair rental rate of loaned equipment should be entered in Column B.

8. Supplies. List the proposed budgeted amounts for consumable supplies and equipment. Enter the costs of special supplies for children with disabilities separately, if possible.

9. Other Child Services. List other proposed costs for direct services to children such as medical, dental, and mental health services, and other consultant services. If substitutes or consultants who provide direct services to children are to be paid through contract rather than as staff, they should be listed in this category. Enter the in-kind value of volunteers (parents or others) who participate in education component activities. Enter costs for services to children with disabilities separately, if possible.

10. Other Parent Services. List the proposed costs for parent activities and parent travel (local and out-of-town).

11. Other. List the proposed costs for expenses not captured elsewhere. Enter the in-kind value of volunteers (parents or others) who participate in activities not related to the education component. Note the line items for proposed costs for training and technical assistance services, disabilities training, and costs for serving children with disabilities not identified elsewhere.

12. Indirect Costs. Enter the appropriate amount of indirect costs being charged to the grant. Note that items included in the grantee's indirect cost rate should not also be included above as direct cost line items.

13. Totals.

All Budget Categories. Add the amounts from each of the budget category totals for column A, ACYF cash and non-Federal cash, and column B, value of non-Federal in-kind contributions.

Total Budget. Add Totals of column A, ACYF cash and non-Federal cash, and column B, the value of non-Federal in-kind contributions. This total (planned total Federal and non-Federal cost of the proposed program) must equal the amount of Federal and non-Federal funds indicated on the SF 424A of the grant application.

Total ACYF Budget. Indicate the amount of ACYF funds being requested in the categories indicated, including funds for implementing the program options, disabilities services funds, and training and technical assistance funds. This amount should equal the amount of Federal funds requested on the SF 424A of the grant application.

Total Non-Federal Budget. Indicate the amount of non-Federal cash and the value of non-Federal in-kind contributions being provided on separate lines. This amount should equal the amount of non-Federal share indicated on the SF 424A of the grant application.

14. Other Funds that Support the Head Start Program. There may be funds, in addition to the Federal and non-Federal cash and in-kind shown on the SF 424A and the Appendix to the SF 424A, that are used to provide Head Start services to the children and families enrolled in the Head Start program. These resources are to include nutrition costs reimbursed through USDA funds. There may also be resources, both cash and in-kind, that the applicant has not included as non-Federal share. The applicant is to list the total amount of cash and in-kind that will be used to provide services to Head Start enrollees that are not included on the SF 424A and the Head Start Line-Item Budget on the SF 424A and the Head Start Line-Item Budget in the Appendix to SF 424A. (NOTE: Applicants are encouraged to include all non-Federal resources on the SF 424A and the Appendix to the SF 424A but cannot be required to identify specific non-Federal contributions in excess of 20 percent of the total cost of Head Start services.)

The services provided through these funds are to be described in the Program Narrative, Section A.4. This information is needed to help explain how the program of services that is proposed in the agency's application will be carried out.

15. Functional Allocation of Costs. The information in the line-item budget will be used by ACYF to allocate all ACYF and non-Federal costs to specific program components or functional areas: Education, Health, Nutrition, Social Services, Parent Involvement, Disabilities Services, Occupancy, Transportation, Administration and Other. Review question 15 of the line-item budget to determine if the manner in which these funds will be allocated across functions is accurate.

16. Program Options. The information in the line-item budget will be used by ACYF to allocate all ACYF and non-Federal costs among specific program schedules and options. Grantees and delegate agencies which operate more than one option should respond to this question.

HEAD START LINE-ITEM BUDGET Grantee/Delegate # ________________

	A Total Cash ACYF and Non-Federal	B Non-Federal In-Kind	C Percent Administrative	D Number of Persons	
				FT	PT
I. PERSONNEL (object class category 6.a)					
A. Administrative					
1. Executive Director			100		
2. Fiscal Manager			100		
3. Head Start Director			100		
4. Bookkeeper			100		
5. Administrative Assistant			100		
6. Secretary			100		
7. Center Director			100		
A.			100		
B.			100		
C.			100		
D.			100		
E.			100		

HEAD START LINE-ITEM BUDGET **Grantee/Delegate #** ____________

	A Total Cash ACYF and Non-Federal	B Non-Federal In-Kind	C Percent Administrative	D Number of Persons FT	 PT
B. Coordination					
1. Education Coordinator					
2. Director/Education Coordinator					
3. Health Coordinator					
4. Social Services Coordinator					
5. Parent Involvement Coordinator					
6. Social Services/Parent Involvement Coordinator					
7. Disabilities Coordinator					
8. Health/Disabilities Coordinator					
9. Nutrition Coordinator					
A.					
B.					
C.					

Grantee/Delegate # ____________

	A Total Cash ACYF and Non-Federal	B Non-Federal In-Kind	C Percent Administrative	D Number of Persons FT	 PT
C. Education					
1. Teacher					
2. Teacher Aide					
3. Home Visitor					
4. Substitutes					
5. Other Education Staff					
D. Health					
1. Health Aide					
2. Other Health Staff					
E. Nutrition					
1. Cook					
2. Cook Aide					
3. Other Nutrition Staff					
F. Social Services					
1. Social Service Aide					
2. Other Social Service Staff					
G. Parent Involvement					
1. Parent Involvement Aide					
2. Other Parent Involvement Staff					

HEAD START LINE-ITEM BUDGET

Grantee/Delegate # ________________

	A Total Cash ACYF and Non-Federal	B Non-Federal In-Kind	C Percent Administrative	D Number of Persons	
				FT	PT
H. Maintenance					
1. Custodian					
2. Other Maintenance Staff					
I. Transportation					
1. Bus Driver					
2. Bus Aide					
3. Other Transportation Staff					
J. Dual Roles					
1. Family Worker					
2. Teacher Aide/Bus Driver					
3. Other Disabilities Staff					
A.					
B.					
C.					
D.					
TOTAL PERSONNEL					

HEAD START LINE-ITEM BUDGET

Grantee/Delegate # ____________

	A Total Cash ACYF and Non-Federal	B Non-Federal In-Kind	C Percent Administrative
2. FRINGE BENEFITS (object class category 6.b)			
1. Social Security			
2. State Disability			
3. Unemployment			
4. Worker's Compensation			
5. Health/Dental/Life Insurance			
6. Retirement			
7. Other Fringe			
TOTAL FRINGE			
3. OCCUPANCY (object class category 6.h)			
1. Rent			
2. Depreciation/Use Allow			
3. Utilities			
4. Telephone			
5. Building Insurance			
6. Child Liability Insurance			
7. Maintenance/Repair*			
8. Renovation*			
9. Other Occupancy			
TOTAL OCCUPANCY			

---

* If these services are provided by an individual who is not an employee, enter those costs in the object class category 6.h of SF 424A, Section B. If these services are provided through a contract, enter these costs on line 6.f of SF 424A, Section B.

HEAD START LINE-ITEM BUDGET

Grantee/Delegate # ________________

	A Total Cash ACYF and Non-Federal	B Non-Federal In-Kind	C Percent Administrative
4. CHILD TRAVEL			
1. Contract/Rental			
2. Vehicle Maintenance/Repair			
3. Vehicle Insurance			
4. Vehicle Operating Expenses			
5. Field Trips			
6. Disabilities Travel			
7. Other Child Travel			
TOTAL CHILD TRAVEL			
5. STAFF TRAVEL			
1. Out-of-Town (6.c)			
2. Local-(6.h)			
TOTAL STAFF TRAVEL			
6. NUTRITION AND FOOD (object class category 6.h)			
1. Children's Food			
2. Adult's Food			
3. Other Nutrition			
TOTAL NUTRITION & FOOD			
7. FURNITURE & EQUIPMENT (object class category 6.d)			
1. Vehicle Purchase			
2. Office			
3. Classroom/Outdoor			
4. Kitchen			
5. Equipment/Maintenance/Repair*			
6. Other Furniture/Equipment			
TOTAL FURNITURE & EQUIPMENT			

---

* If these services are provided by an individual who is not an employee, enter those costs in the object class category 6.h of SF 424A, Section B. If these services are provided through a contract, enter these costs on line 6.f of SF 424A, Section B.

HEAD START LINE-ITEM BUDGET **Grantee/Delegate #** ____________________

	A Total Cash ACYF and Non-Federal	B Non-Federal In-Kind	C Percent Administrative
8. SUPPLIES (object class category 6.e)			
1. Office/Copying/Postage			
2. Cleaning			
3. Classroom/Home Base			
4. Medical/Dental			
5. Kitchen			
6. Disabilities Supplies			
7. Other Supplies			
TOTAL SUPPLIES			
9. OTHER CHILD SERVICES (object class category 6.h)*			
1. Education Consultant			
2. Substitutes			
3. Volunteers (Education)			
4. Medical/Dental Exam/Screening/Care			
5. Mental Health Assessment/Care			
6. Nutrition Consultant			
7. Speech Therapy			
8. Disabilities Services			
9. Other Services			
TOTAL OTHER CHILD SERVICES			

---

* If these services are provided by an individual who is not an employee, enter those costs in the object class category 6.h of SF 424A, Section B. If these services are provided through a contract, enter these costs on line 6.f of SF 424A, Section B.

HEAD START LINE-ITEM BUDGET

Grantee/Delegate # ________________

	A Total Cash ACYF and Non-Federal	B Non-Federal In-Kind	C Percent Administrative
10. OTHER PARENT SERVICES			
1. Parent Activities (6.h) Parent Travel			
2. Out-of-Town (6.c)			
3. Local (6.h)			
4. Other Parent Services (6.h)			
TOTAL OTHER PARENT SERVICES			
11. OTHER (object class category 6.h)*			
1. Audit			
2. Legal (6.h)*			
3. Theft Bond			
4. General Liability Insurance			
5. Payroll/Accounting			
6. Publications/Subscriptions			
7. Printing/Advertising			
8. T&TA CDA			
9. Other T&TA			
10. Other Training			
11. Disabilities Training			
12. Other Disabilities			
13. Volunteers (Not Education)			
14. Other			
TOTAL OTHER			
12. INDIRECT COSTS			
1. Indirect Costs			
TOTAL INDIRECT SERVICES			

---

* If these services are provided by an individual who is not an employee, enter those costs in the object class category 6.h of SF 424A, Section B. If these services are provided through a contract, enter these costs on line 6.f of SF 424A, Section B.

HEAD START LINE-ITEM BUDGET **Grantee/Delegate #** ____________________

	A **Total Cash ACYF and Non-Federal**	**B** **Non-Federal In-Kind**	**C** **Percent Administrative**
13. TOTALS			
ALL BUDGET CATEGORIES			
TOTAL BUDGET (Cols A + B)			

TOTAL ACYF BUDGET

(a + b + c below)

a. Program Funds ____________________

b. Disabilities Services ____________________

c. T&TA Funds ____________________

TOTAL NON-FEDERAL BUDGET Cash ____________________

In-Kind ____________________

14. Other Funds that Support the Head Start Program

Other funds that support the Head Start program but are are not included on the SF 424A and the Appendix to the SF 424A:

USDA ____________________

Other Cash ____________________

Other In-Kind ____________________

15. Functional Allocation of Costs. ACYF will automatically allocate line-item costs among program component functions. For example, all education staff, services and supplies will be allocated to the education component and all health staff, services and supplies will be allocated to the health component. The automatic allocations are as follows:

Staff and Coordinators. 100% to the appropriate component function or split evenly between functions, except for the position of Head Start Director/ Education Coordinator, which is allocated 75% to Administration and 25% to Education.

Maintenance. 95% Occupancy and 5% Administration.

Dual Roles. Split equally between the appropriate component roles except for the position of Teacher Aide/Bus Driver, which is allocated 80% to Education and 20% to Transportation.

Occupancy. Rent, Depreciation/Use Allowance, Utilities, Building Insurance, Maintenance/Repair, Renovation, and Other Occupancy is 95% Occupancy and 5% Administration; Telephone is 75% Occupancy and 25% Administration; Children's Liability Insurance is 100% Occupancy.

Staff Travel. Local Travel is 95% Transportation and 5% Administration; Out-of-Town travel is 50% Transportation and 50% Administration.

Furniture and Equipment. Vehicle Purchase is 100% Transportation; Office is 100% Administration; Classroom/Outdoor is 100% Education; Kitchen is 100% Nutrition; and Equipment Maintenance/Repair and Other are 100% Other.

Supplies. Office/Copying/Postage is 100% Administration; Cleaning Supplies are 95% Occupancy and 5% Administration.

Other. Audit, Legal, Theft Bond, General Liability Insurance, Payroll/Accounting, and Printing and Advertising are 100% Administration. Publications and Subscriptions are 100% Education. T&TA CDA, Other T&TA, and Other Training are 100% Other. Disabilities Training and Other Disabilities are 100% Disabilities.

Indirect Costs. 100% Administration.

If the above allocations are inappropriate or incorrect for a particular program, specify the line item and the correct functional allocation:

A = Administration
H = Health
S = Social Service
DISAB = Disabilities Services
OCC = Occupancy
E = Education
N = Nutrition
P = Parent Involvement
T = Transportation
OTH = Other

Functional Allocation (percent)

Line Item	A	E	H	N	S	P	DISAB	T	OCC	OTH

16. Program Options. ACYF will automatically allocate line-item costs among program options and schedules. For example, all teacher and aide salaries and fringe benefits will be allocated to the center-based program and all home visitor salaries and fringe benefits will be allocated to the home-based program. Additional automatic allocations are as follows:

Personnel. Nutrition and maintenance staff salaries will be allocated based on the hours children in each option or schedule spend in the center. All other staff salaries and fringe benefits will be prorated based on the number of children enrolled in each option or schedule.

Non-personnel. Planned expenditures for occupancy, food, child travel, classroom equipment, maintenance, and kitchen supplies will be allocated based on the hours children in each option and schedule use the program's centers or transportation systems.

If any of these automatic allocations is inappropriate for your program, indicate below only those line items that should be changed and provide the appropriate percentage allocation of line items for each option:

Percentage Allocation

Line Item	CB	HB	CO	OT

MANUAL FOR HEAD START ADMINISTRATORS

PART V

APPENDIX

PART 16—PROCEDURES OF THE DEPARTMENTAL GRANT APPEALS BOARD

Sec.
16.1 What this part does.
16.2 Definitions.
16.3 When these procedures become available.
16.4 Summary of procedures below.
16.5 How the Board operates.
16.6 Who represents the parties.
16.7 The first steps in the appeal process: The notice of appeal and the Board's response.
16.8 The next step in the appeal process: Preparation of an appeal file and written argument.
16.9 How the Board will promote development of the record.
16.10 Using a conference.
16.11 Hearing.
16.12 The expedited process.
16.13 Powers and responsibilities.
16.14 How Board review is limited.
16.15 Failure to meet deadlines and other requirements.
16.16 Parties to the appeal.
16.17 Ex parte communications (communications outside the record).
16.18 Mediation.
16.19 How to calculate deadlines.

Sec.
16.20 How to submit material to the Board.
16.21 Record and decisions.
16.22 The effect of an appeal.
16.23 How long an appeal takes.
APPENDIX A TO PART 16—WHAT DISPUTES THE BOARD REVIEWS

AUTHORITY: 5 U.S.C. 301 and secs. 1, 5, 6, and 7 of Reorganization Plan No. 1 of 1953, 18 FR 2053, 67 Stat. 631 and authorities cited in the Appendix.

SOURCE: 46 FR 43817, Aug. 31, 1981, unless otherwise noted.

§ 16.1 What this part does.

This part contains requirements and procedures applicable to certain disputes arising under the HHS programs described in Appendix A. This part is designed to provide a fair, impartial, quick and flexible process for appeal from written final decisions. This part supplements the provisions in Part 74 of this title.

§ 16.2 Definitions.

(a) *Board* means the Departmental Grant Appeals Board of the Department of Health and Human Services. Reference below to an action of *the Board* means an action of the Chair, another Board member, or Board staff acting at the direction of a Board member. In certain instances, the provisions restrict action to particular Board personnel, such as the Chair or a Board member assigned to a case.

(b) Other terms shall have the meaning set forth in Part 74 of this title, unless the context below otherwise requires.

§ 16.3 When these procedures become available.

Before the Board will take an appeal, three circumstances must be present:

(a) The dispute must arise under a program which uses the Board for dispute resolution, and must meet any special conditions established for that program. An explanation is contained in Appendix A.

(b) The appellant must have received a final written decision, and must appeal that decision within 30 days after receiving it. Details of how final decisions are developed and issued, and what must be in them, are contained in 45 CFR 74.304.

(c) The appellant must have exhausted any preliminary appeal process required by regulation. For example, see 42 CFR part 50 (subpart D) for Public Health Service programs and part 75 of this title for rate determinations and cost allocation plans. In such cases, the *final written decision* required for the Board's review is the decision resulting from the preliminiary review or appeal process. Appendix A contains further details.

§16.4 Summary of procedures below.

The Board's basic process is review of a written record (which both parties are given ample opportunity to develop), consisting of relevant documents and statements submitted by both parties (see §16.8). In addition, the Board may hold an informal conference (see §16.10). The informal conference primarily involves questioning of the participants by a presiding Board member. Conferences may be conducted by telephone conference call. The written record review also may be supplemented by a hearing involving an opportunity for examining evidence and witnesses, cross-examination, and oral argument (see §16.11). A hearing is more expensive and time-consuming than a determination on the written record alone or with an informal conference. Generally, therefore, the Board will schedule a hearing only if the Board determines that there are complex issues or material facts in dispute, or that the Board's review would otherwise be significantly enhanced by a hearing. Where the amount in dispute is $25,000 or less, there are special expedited procedures (see §16.12 of this part). In all cases, the Board has the flexibility to modify procedures to ensure fairness, to avoid delay, and to accommodate the peculiar needs of a given case. The Board makes maximum feasible use of preliminary informal steps to refine issues and to encourage resolution by the parties. The Board also has the capability to provide mediation services (see §16.18).

§16.5 How the Board operates.

(a) The Board's professional staff consists of a Chair (who is also a Board member) and full- and part-time Board members, all appointed by the Secretary; and a staff of employees and consultants who are attorneys or persons from other relevant disciplines, such as accounting.

(b) The Chair will assign a Board member to have lead responsibility for each case (the "presiding Board member"). The presiding Board member will conduct the conference or hearing, if one is held. Each decision of the Board is issued by the presiding Board member and two other Board members.

(c) The Board staff assists the presiding Board member, and may request information from the parties; conduct telephone conference calls to request information, to clarify issues, or to schedule events; and assist in developing decisions and other documents in a case.

(d) The Chair will assure that no Board or staff member will participate in a case where his or her impartiality could reasonably be questioned.

(e) The Board's powers and responsibilities are set forth in §16.13.

§16.6 Who represents the parties.

The appellant's notice of appeal, or the first subsequent submission to the Board, should specify the name, address and telephone number of the appellant's representative. In its first submission to the Board and the appellant, the respondent (i.e., the federal party to the appeal) should specify the name, address and telephone number of the respondent's representative.

§16.7 The first steps in the appeal process: the notice of appeal and the Board's response.

(a) As explained in 45 CFR 74.304, a prospective appellant must submit a notice of appeal to the Board within 30 days after receiving the final decision. The notice of appeal must include a copy of the final decision, a statement of the amount in dispute in the appeal, and a brief statement of why the decision is wrong.

(b) Within ten days after receiving the notice of appeal, the Board will send an acknowledgment, enclose a copy of these procedures, and advise the appellant of the next steps. The Board will also send a copy of the notice of appeal, its attachments, and the Board's acknowledgment to the respondent. If the Board Chair has determined that the appeal does not meet the conditions of § 16.3 or if further information is needed to make this determination, the Board will notify the parties at this point.

§ 16.8 The next step in the appeal process: preparation of an appeal file and written argument.

Except in expedited cases (generally those of $25,000 or less; see § 16.12 for details), the appellant and the respondent each participate in developing an appeal file for the Board to review. Each also submits written argument in support of its position. The responsibilities of each are as follows:

(a) *The appellant's responsibility.* Within 30 days after receiving the acknowledgment of the appeal, the appellant shall submit the following to the Board (with a copy to the respondent):

(1) An appeal file containing the documents supporting the claim, tabbed and organized chronologically and accompanied by an indexed list identifying each document. The appellant should include only those documents which are important to the Board's decision on the issues in the case.

(2) A written statement of the appellant's argument concerning why the respondent's final decision is wrong (appellant's brief).

(b) *The respondent's responsibility.* Within 30 days after receiving the appellant's submission under paragraph (a) of this section, the respondent shall submit the following to the Board (with a copy to the appellant):

(1) A supplement to the appeal file containing any additional documents supporting the respondent's position, organized and indexed as indicated under paragraph (a) of this section. The respondent should avoid submitting duplicates of documents submitted by the appellant.

(2) A written statement (respondent's brief) responding to the appellant's brief.

(c) *The appellant's reply.* Within 15 days after receiving the respondent's submission, the appellant may submit a short reply. The appellant should avoid repeating arguments already made.

(d) *Cooperative efforts.* Whenever possible, the parties should try to develop a joint appeal file, agree to preparation of the file by one of them, agree to facts to eliminate the need for some documents, or agree that one party will submit documents identified by the other.

(e) *Voluminous documentation.* Where submission of all relevant documents would lead to a voluminous appeal file (for example where review of a disputed audit finding of inadequate documentation might involve thousands of receipts), the Board will consult with the parties about how to reduce the size of the file.

§ 16.9 How the Board will promote development of the record.

The Board may, at the time it acknowledges an appeal or at any appropriate later point, request additional documents or information; request briefing on issues in the case; issue orders to show cause why a proposed finding or decision of the Board should not become final; hold preliminary conferences (generally by telephone) to establish schedules and refine issues; and take such other steps as the Board determines appropriate to develop a prompt, sound decision.

§ 16.10 Using a conference.

(a) Once the Board has reviewed the appeal file, the Board may, on its own or in response to a party's request, schedule an informal conference. The conference will be conducted by the presiding Board member. The purposes of the conference are to give the parties an opportunity to make an oral presentation and the Board an opportunity to clarify issues and question both parties about matters which the Board may not yet fully understand from the record.

(b) If the Board has decided to hold a conference, the Board will consult or correspond with the parties to schedule the conference, identify issues, and discuss procedures. The Board will identify the persons who will be allowed to participate, along with the parties' representatives, in the conference. The parties can submit with their briefs under § 16.8 a list of persons who might participate with them, indicating how

204

each person is involved in the matter. If the parties wish, they may also suggest questions or areas of inquiry which the Board may wish to pursue with each participant.

(c) Unless the parties and the Board otherwise agree, the following procedures apply:

(1) Conferences will be recorded at Department expense. On request, a party will be sent one copy of the transcript. The presiding Board member will insure an orderly transcript by controlling the sequence and identification of speakers.

(2) Only in exceptional circumstances will documents be received at a conference. Inquiry will focus on material in the appeal file. If a party finds that further documents should be in the record for the conference, the party should supplement the appeal file, submitting a supplementary index and copies of the documents to the Board and the other party not less than ten days prior to the conference.

(3) Each party's representative may make an oral presentation. Generally, the only oral communications of other participants will consist of statements requested by the Board or responses to the Board's questions. The Board will allow reply comment, and may allow short closing statements. On request, the Board may allow the participants to question each other.

(4) There will be no post-conference submissions, unless the Board determines they would be helpful to resolve the case. The Board may require or allow the parties to submit proposed findings and conclusions.

§16.11 Hearing.

(a) *Electing a hearing.* If the appellant believes a hearing is appropriate, the appellant should specifically request one at the earliest possible time (in the notice of appeal or with the appeal file). The Board will approve a request (and may schedule a hearing on its own or in response to a later request) if it finds there are complex issues or material facts in dispute the resolution of which would be significantly aided by a hearing, or if the Board determines that its decisionmaking otherwise would be enhanced by oral presentations and arguments in an adversary, evidentiary hearing. The Board will also provide a hearing if otherwise required by law or regulation.

(b) *Preliminary conference before the hearing.* The Board generally will hold a prehearing conference (which may be conducted by telephone conference call) to consider any of the following: the possibility of settlement; simplifying and clarifying issues; stipulations and admissions; limitations on evidence and witnesses that will be presented at the hearing; scheduling the hearing; and any other matter that may aid in resolving the appeal. Normally, this conference will be conducted informally and off the record; however, the Board, after consulting with the parties, may reduce results of the conference to writing in a document which will be made part of the record, or may transcribe proceedings and make the transcript part of the record.

(c) *Where hearings are held.* Hearings generally are held in Washington, D.C. In exceptional circumstances, the Board may hold the hearing at an HHS Regional Office or other convenient facility near the appellant.

(d) *Conduct of the hearing.* (1) The presiding Board member will conduct the hearing. Hearings will be as informal as reasonably possible, keeping in mind the need to establish an orderly record. The presiding Board member generally will admit evidence unless it is determined to be clearly irrelevant, immaterial or unduly repetitious, so the parties should avoid frequent objections to questions and documents. Both sides may make opening and closing statements, may present witnesses as agreed upon in the prehearing conference, and may cross-examine. Since the parties have ample opportunity to develop a complete appeal file, a party may introduce an exhibit at the hearing only after explaining to the satisfaction of the presiding Board member why the exhibit was not submitted earlier (for example, because the information was not available).

(2) The Board may request the parties to submit written statements of witnesses to the Board and each other prior to the hearing so that the hearing will primarily be concerned with cross-examination and rebuttal.

(3) False statements of a witness may be the basis for criminal prosecution under sections 287 and 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code.

(4) The hearing will be recorded at Department expense.

(e) *Procedures after the hearing*. The Board will send one copy of the transcript to each party as soon as it is received by the Board. At the discretion of the Board, the parties may be required or allowed to submit post-hearing briefs or proposed findings and conclusions (the parties will be informed at the hearing). A party should note any major prejudicial transcript errors in an addendum to its post-hearing brief (or if no brief will be submitted, in a letter submitted within a time limit set by the Board).

§ 16.12 The expedited process.

(a) *Applicability*. Where the amount in dispute is $25,000 or less, the Board will use these expedited procedures, unless the Board Chair determines otherwise under paragraph (b) of this section. If the Board and the parties agree, the Board may use these procedures in cases of more than $25,000.

(b) *Exceptions*. If there are unique or unusually complex issues involved, or other exceptional circumstances, the Board may use additional procedures.

(c) *Regular expedited procedures*. (1) Within 30 days after receiving the Board's acknowledgment of the appeal (see § 16.7), each party shall submit to the Board and the other party any relevant background documents (organized as required under § 16.8), with a cover letter (generally not to exceed ten pages) containing any arguments the party wishes to make.

(2) Promptly after receiving the parties' submissions, the presiding Board member will arrange a telephone conference call to receive the parties' oral comments in response to each other's submissions. After notice to the parties, the Board will record the call. The Board member will advise the parties whether any opportunities for further briefing, submissions or oral presentations will be established. Cooperative efforts will be encouraged (see § 16.8(d)).

(3) The Board may require the parties to submit proposed findings and conclusions.

(d) *Special expedited procedures where there has already been review*. Some HHS components (for example, the Public Health Service) use a board or other relatively independent reviewing authority to conduct a formal preliminary review process which results in a written decision based on a record including documents or statements presented after reasonable notice and opportunity to present such material. In such cases, the following rules apply to appeals of $25,000 or less instead of those under paragraph (c) of this section:

(1) Generally, the Board's review will be restricted to whether the decision of the preliminary review authority was clearly erroneous. But if the Board determines that the record is inadequate, or that the procedures under which the record was developed in a given instance were unfair, the Board will not be restricted this way.

(2) Within 30 days after receiving the Board's acknowledgment of appeal (see § 16.7), the parties shall submit the following:

(i) The appellant shall submit to the Board and the respondent a statement why the decision was clearly erroneous. Unless allowed by the Board after consultation with the respondent, the appellant shall not submit further documents.

(ii) The respondent shall submit to the Board the record in the case. If the respondent has reason to believe that all materials in the record already are in the possession of the appellant, the respondent need only send the appellant a list of the materials submitted to the Board.

(iii) The respondent may, if it wishes, submit a statement why the decision was not clearly erroneous.

(3) The Board, in its discretion, may allow or require the parties to present further arguments or information.

§ 16.13 Powers and responsibilities.

In addition to powers specified elsewhere in these procedures, Board members have the power to issue orders (including "show cause" orders); to examine witnesses; to take all steps necessary for the conduct of an orderly hearing; to rule on requests and motions, including motions to dismiss; to grant extensions of time for good reasons; to dismiss for failure to meet deadlines and other requirements; to close or suspend cases which are not ready for review; to order or assist the parties to submit relevant information; to remand a case for further action by the respondent; to waive or modify these procedures in a specific case with notice to the parties; to reconsider a Board decision where a party promptly alleges a clear error of fact or law; and to take any other action necessary to resolve disputes in accordance with the objectives of these procedures.

§ 16.14 How Board review is limited.

The Board shall be bound by all applicable laws and regulations.

§ 16.15 Failure to meet deadlines and other requirements.

(a) Since one of the objectives of administrative dispute resolution is to provide a decision as fast as possible consistent with fairness, the Board will not allow parties to delay the process unduly. The Board may grant extensions of time, but only if the party gives a good reason for the delay.

(b) If the appellant fails to meet any filing or procedural deadlines, appeal file or brief submission requirements, or other requirements established by the Board, the Board may dismiss the appeal, may issue an order requiring the party to show cause why the appeal should not be dismissed, or may take other action the Board considers appropriate.

(c) If the respondent fails to meet any such requirements, the Board may issue a decision based on the record submitted to that point or take such other measures as the Board considers appropriate.

§ 16.16 Parties to the appeal.

(a) The only parties to the appeal are the appellant and the respondent. If the Board determines that a third person is a real party in interest (for example, where the major impact of an audit disallowance would be on the grantee's contractor, not on the grantee), the Board may allow the third person to present the case on appeal for the appellant or to appear with a party in the case, after consultation with the parties and if the appellant does not object.

(b) The Board may also allow other participation, in the manner and by the deadlines established by the Board, where the Board decides that the intervenor has a clearly identifiable and substantial interest in the outcome of the dispute, that participation would sharpen issues or otherwise be helpful in resolution of the dispute, and that participation would not result in substantial delay.

§ 16.17 Ex parte communications (communications outside the record).

(a) A party shall not communicate with a Board or staff member about matters involved in an appeal without notice to the other party. If such communication occurs, the Board will disclose it to the other party and make it part of the record after the other party has an opportunity to comment. Board members and staff shall not consider any information outside the record (see § 16.21 for what the record consists of) about matters involved in an appeal.

(b) The above does not apply to the following: Communications among Board members and staff; communications concerning the Board's administrative functions or procedures; requests from the Board to a party for a document (although the material submitted in response also must be given to the other party); and material which the Board includes in the record after notice and an opportunity to comment.

§ 16.18 Mediation.

(a) *In cases pending before the Board.* If the Board decides that mediation would be useful to resolve a dispute, the Board, in consultation with the parties, may suggest use of mediation techniques and will provide or assist in selecting a mediator. The mediator may take any steps agreed upon by the parties to resolve the dispute or clarify issues. The results of mediation are not binding on the parties unless the parties so agree in writing. The Board will internally insulate the mediator from any Board or staff members assigned to handle the appeal.

(b) *In other cases.* In any other grants dispute, the Board may, within the limitations of its resources, offer persons trained in mediation skills to aid in resolving the dispute. Mediation services will only be offered at the request, or with the concurrence, of a responsible federal program official in the program under which the dispute arises. The Board will insulate the mediator if any appeal subsequently arises from the dispute.

§ 16.19 How to calculate deadlines.

In counting days, include Saturdays, Sundays, and holidays; but if a due date would fall on a Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday, then the due date is the next Federal working day.

§ 16.20 How to submit material to the Board.

(a) All submissions should be addressed as follows: Departmental Grant Appeals Board, Room 2004, Switzer Building, 330 C Street SW., Washington, DC 20201.

(b) All submissions after the notice of appeal should identify the Board's docket number (the Board's acknowledgement under § 16.7 will specify the docket number).

(c) Unless the Board otherwise specifies, parties shall submit to the Board an original and two copies of all materials. Each submission other than the notice of appeal, must include a statement that one copy of the materials has been sent to the other party, identifying when and to whom the copy was sent.

(d) Unless hand delivered, all materials should be sent to the Board and the other party by certified or registered mail, return receipt requested.

(e) The Board considers material to be submitted on the date when it is postmarked or hand delivered to the Board.

§ 16.21 Record and decisions.

(a) Each decision is issued by three Board members (see § 16.5(b)), who base their decision on a record consisting of the appeal file; other submissions of the parties; transcripts or other records of any meetings, conferences or hearings conducted by the Board; written statements resulting from conferences; evidence submitted at hearings; and orders and other documents issued by the Board. In addition, the Board may include other materials (such as evidence submitted in another appeal) after the parties are given notice and an opportunity to comment.

(b) The Board will promptly notify the parties in writing of any disposition of a case and the basis for the disposition.

§ 16.22 The effect of an appeal.

(a) *General*. Until the Board disposes of an appeal, the respondent shall take no action to implement the final decision appealed.

(b) *Exceptions*. The respondent may—

(1) Suspend funding (see § 74.114 of this title);

(2) Defer or disallow other claims questioned for reasons also disputed in the pending appeal;

(3) In programs listed in Appendix A, B.(a)(1), implement a decision to disallow Federal financial participation claimed in expenditures reported on a statement of expenditures, by recovering, withholding or offsetting payments, if the decision is issued before the reported expenditures are included in the calculation of a subsequent grant; or

(4) Take other action to recover, withhold, or offset funds if specifically authorized by statute or regulation.

§ 16.23 How long an appeal takes.

The Board has established general goals for its consideration of cases, as follows (measured from the point when the Board receives the first submission after the notice of appeal):

—For regular review based on a written record under § 16.8, 6 months. When a conference under § 16.10 is held, the goal remains at 6 months, unless a requirement for post-conference briefing in a particular case renders the goal unrealistic.

—For cases involving a hearing under § 16.11, 9 months.

—For the expedited process under § 16.12, 3 months.

These are goals, not rigid requirements. The paramount concern of the Board is to take the time needed to review a record fairly and adequately in order to produce a sound decision. Furthermore, many factors are beyond the Board's direct control, such as unforeseen delays due to the parties' negotiations or requests for extensions, how many cases are filed, and Board resources. On the other hand, the parties may agree to steps which may shorten review by the Board; for example, by waiving the right to submit a brief, by agreeing to shorten submission schedules, or by electing the expedited process.

APPENDIX A TO PART 16—WHAT DISPUTES THE BOARD REVIEWS

A. What this Appendix covers.

This appendix describes programs which use the Board for dispute resolution, the types of disputes covered, and any conditions for Board review of final written decisions resulting from those disputes. Disputes under programs not specified in this appendix may be covered in a program regulation or in a memorandum of understanding between the Board and the head of the appropriate HHS operating component or other agency responsible for administering the program. If in doubt, call the Board. Even though a dispute may be covered here, the Board still may not be able to review it if the limits in paragraph F apply.

B. Mandatory grant programs.

(a) The Board reviews the following types of final written decisions in disputes arising in HHS programs authorizing the award of mandatory grants:

(1) Disallowances under Titles I, IV, VI, X, XIV, XVI(AABD), XIX, and XX of the Social Security Act, including penalty disallowances such as those under sections 403(g) and 1903(g) of the Act and fiscal disallowances based on quality control samples.

(2) Disallowances in mandatory grant programs administered by the Public Health Service, including Title V of the Social Security Act.

(3) Disallowances in the programs under sections 113 and 132 of the Developmental Disabilities Act.

(4) Disallowances under Title III of the Older American Act.

(5) Decisions relating to repayment and withholding under block grant programs as provided in 45 CFR 96.52.

(6) Decisions relating to repayment and withholding under State Legalization Impact Assistance Grants as provided in 45 CFR 402.24 and 402.25.

(b) In some of these disputes, there is an option for review by the head of the granting agency prior to appeal to the Board. Where an appellant has requested review by the agency head first, the "final written decision" required by §16.3 for purposes of Board review will generally be the agency head's decision affirming the disallowance. If the agency head declines to review the disallowance or if the appellant withdraws its request for review by the agency head, the original disallowance decision is the "final written decision." In the latter cases, the 30-day period for submitting a notice of appeal begins with the date of receipt of the notice declining review or with the date of the withdrawal letter.

C. Direct, discretionary project programs.

(a) The Board reviews the following types of final written decisions in disputes arising in any HHS program authorizing the award of direct, discretionary project grants or cooperative agreements:

(1) A disallowance or other determination denying payment of an amount claimed under an award, or requiring return or setoff of funds already received. This does not apply to determinations of award amount or disposition of unobligated balances, or selection in the award document of an option for disposition of program-related income.

(2) A termination for failure to comply with the terms of an award.

(3) A denial of a noncompeting continuation award under the project period system of funding where the denial is for failure to comply with the terms of a previous award.

(4) A voiding (a decision that an award is invalid because it was not authorized by statute or regulation or because it was fraudulently obtained).

(b) Where an HHS component uses a preliminary appeal process (for example, the Public Health Service), the "final written decision" for purposes of Board review is the decision issued as a result of that process.

D. Cost allocation and rate disputes.

The Board reviews final written decisions in disputes which may affect a number of HHS programs because they involve cost allocation plans or rate determinations. These include decisions related to cost allocation plans negotiated with State or local governments and negotiated rates such as indirect cost rates, fringe benefit rates, computer rates, research patient care rates, and other special rates. The "final written decision" for purposes of Board review of these disputes is the decision issued as a result of the preliminary appeal process at Part 75 of this title.

E. SSI agreement disputes.

The Board reviews disputes in the Supplemental Security Income (SSI) program arising under agreements for Federal administration of State supplementary payments under section 1616 of the Social Security Act or mandatory minimum supplements under section 212 of Pub. L. 93-66. In these cases, the Board provides an opportunity to be heard and offer evidence at the Secretarial level of review as set out in the applicable agreements. Thus, the "final written decision" for purposes of Board review is that determination appealable to the Secretary under the agreement.

F. Where Board review is not available.

The Board will not review a decision if a hearing under 5 U.S.C. 554 is required by statute, if the basis of the decision is a violation of applicable civil rights or nondiscrimination laws or regulations (for example, Title VI of the Civil Rights Act), or if some other hearing process is established pursuant to statute.

G. How the Board determines whether it will review a case.

Under §16.7, the Board Chair determines whether an appeal meets the requirements of this Appendix. If the Chair finds that there is some question about this, the Board will request the written opinion of the HHS component which issued the decision. Unless the Chair determines that the opinion is clearly erroneous, the Board will be bound by the opinion. If the HHS component does not respond within a time set by the Chair, or cannot determine whether the Board clearly does or does not have jurisdiction, the Board will take the appeal.

[46 FR 43817, Aug. 31, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 29492, July 6, 1982; 53 FR 7864, Mar. 10, 1988]

PART 80—NONDISCRIMINATION UNDER PROGRAMS RECEIVING FEDERAL ASSISTANCE THROUGH THE DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES EFFECTUATION OF TITLE VI OF THE CIVIL RIGHTS ACT OF 1964

Sec.
80.1 Purpose.
80.2 Application of this regulation.
80.3 Discrimination prohibited.
80.4 Assurances required.
80.5 Illustrative application.
80.6 Compliance information.
80.7 Conduct of investigations.
80.8 Procedure for effecting compliance.
80.9 Hearings.
80.10 Decisions and notices.
80.11 Judicial review.
80.12 Effect on other regulations; forms and instructions.
80.13 Definitions.

APPENDIX A—FEDERAL FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE TO WHICH THESE REGULATIONS APPLY

APPENDIX B—GUIDELINES FOR ELIMINATING DISCRIMINATION AND DENIAL OF SERVICES ON THE BASIS OF RACE, COLOR, NATIONAL ORIGIN, SEX, AND HANDICAP IN VOCATIONAL EDUCATION PROGRAMS

AUTHORITY: Sec. 602, 78 Stat. 252; 42 U.S.C. 2000d-1, unless otherwise noted.

SOURCE: 29 FR 16298, Dec. 4, 1964, unless otherwise noted.

§ 80.1 Purpose.

The purpose of this part is to effectuate the provisions of title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (hereafter referred to as the "Act") to the end that no person in the United States shall; on the ground of race, color, or national origin, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination under any program or activity receiving Federal financial assistance from the Department of Health and Human Services.

(Sec. 601, Civil Rights Act of 1964; 78 Stat 252; 42 U.S.C. 2000d)

[29 FR 16298, Dec. 4, 1964, as amended at 38 FR 17982, July 5, 1973]

§ 80.2 Application of this regulation.

This regulation applies to any program for which Federal financial assistance is authorized to be extended to a recipient under a law administered by the Department, including the Federal assisted programs and activities listed in Appendix A of this regulation. It applies to money paid, property transferred, or other Federal financial assistance extended after the effective date of the regulation pursuant to an application approved prior to such effective date. This regulation does not apply to (a) any Federal financial assistance by way of insurance or guaranty contracts, (b) money paid, property transferred, or other assistance extended before the effective date of this regulation, (c) the use of any assistance by any individual who is the ultimate beneficiary under any such program, or (d) any employment practice, under any such program, or any employer, employment agency, or labor organization, except to the extent described in § 80.3. The fact that a type of Federal assistance is not listed in Appendix A shall not mean, if Title VI of the Act is otherwise applicable, that a program is not covered. Federal financial assistance under statutes now in force or hereinafter enacted may be added to this list by notice published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(Secs. 602, 604, Civil Rights Act of 1964; 78 Stat. 252, 253; 42 U.S.C. 2000d-1, 2000d-3)

[38 FR 17979, July 5, 1973]

§ 80.3 Discrimination prohibited.

(a) *General.* No person in the United States shall, on the ground of race, color, or national origin be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination under any program to which this part applies.

(b) *Specific discriminatory actions prohibited.* (1) A recipient under any program to which this part applies may not, directly or through contractual or other arrangements, on ground of race, color, or national origin:

(i) Deny an individual any service, financial aid, or other benefit provided under the program;

(ii) Provide any service, financial aid, or other benefit to an individual which is different, or is provided in a different manner, from that provided to others under the program;

(iii) Subject an individual to segregation or separate treatment in any matter related to his receipt of any service, financial aid, or other benefit under the program;

(iv) Restrict an individual in any way in the enjoyment of any advantage or privilege enjoyed by others receiving any service, financial aid, or other benefit under the program;

(v) Treat an individual differently from others in determining whether he satisfies any admission, enrollment, quota, eligibility, membership or other requirement or condition which individuals must meet in order to be provided any service, financial aid, or other benefit provided under the program;

(vi) Deny an individual an opportunity to participate in the program through the provision of services or otherwise or afford him an opportunity to do so which is different from that afforded others under the program (including the opportunity to participate in the program as an employee but only to the extent set forth in paragraph (c) of this section).

(vii) Deny a person the opportunity to participate as a member of a planning or advisory body which is an integral part of the program.

(2) A recipient, in determining the types of services, financial aid, or other benefits, or facilities which will be provided under any such program, or the class of individuals to whom, or the situations in which, such services, financial aid, other benefits, or facilities will be provided under any such program, or the class of individuals to be afforded an opportunity to participate in any such program, may not, directly or through contractual or other arrangements, utilize criteria or methods of administration which have the effect of subjecting individuals to discrimination because of their race, color, or national origin, or have the effect of defeating or substantially impairing accomplishment of the objectives of the program as respect individuals of a particular race, color, or national origin.

(3) In determining the site or location of a facilities, an applicant or recipient may not make selections with the effect of excluding individuals from, denying them the benefits of, or subjecting them to discrimination under any programs to which this regulation applies, on the ground of race, color, or national origin; or with the purpose or effect of defeating or substantially impairing the accomplishment of the objectives of the Act or this regulation.

(4) As used in this section, the services, financial aid, or other benefits provided under a program receiving Federal financial assistance shall be deemed to include any service, financial aid, or other benefits provided in or through a facility provided with the aid of Federal financial assistance.

(5) The enumeration of specific forms of prohibited discrimination in this paragraph and paragraph (c) of this section does not limit the generality of the prohibition in paragraph (a) of this section.

(6)(i) In administering a program regarding which the recipient has previously discriminated against persons on the ground of race, color, or national origin, the recipient must take affirmative action to overcome the effects of prior discrimination.

(ii) Even in the absence of such prior discrimination, a recipient in administering a program may take affirmative action to overcome the effects of conditions which resulted in limiting participation by persons of a particular race, color, or national origin.

(c) *Employment practices.* (1) Where a primary objective of the Federal financial assistance to a program to which this regulation applies is to provide employment, a recipient may not (directly or through contractual or other arrangements) subject an individual to discrimination on the ground of race, color, or national origin in its employment practices under such program (including recruitment or recruitment advertising, employment, layoff or termination, upgrading, demotion, or transfer, rates of pay or other forms of compensation, and use of facilities), including programs where a primary objective of the Federal financial assistance is (i) to reduce the employment of such individuals or to help them through employment to meet subsistence needs, (ii) to assist such individuals through employment to meet expenses incident to the commencement or continuation of their education or training, (iii) to provide work experience which contributes to the education or training of such individuals, or (iv) to provide remunerative activity to such individuals who because of handicaps cannot be readily absorbed in the competive labor market. The following, under existing laws, have one of the above objectives as a primary objective:

(*a*) Projects under the Public Works Acceleration Act, Pub. L. 87-658, 42 U.S.C. 2641-2643.

(*b*) Work-study under the Vocational Education Act of 1963, as amended, 20 U.S.C. 1371-1374.

(*c*) Programs assisted under laws listed in Appendix A as respects employment opportunities provided thereunder, or in facilities provided thereunder, which are limited, or for which preference is given, to students, fellows, or other persons in training for the same or related employments.

(*d*) Assistance to rehabilitation facilities under the Vocational Rehabilitation Act, 29 U.S.C. 32-34, 41a and 41b.

(2) The requirements applicable to construction employment under any such program shall be those specified in or pursuant to Part III of Executive Order 11246 or any Executive order which supersedes it.

(3) Where a primary objective of the Federal financial assistance is not to provide employment, but discrimination on the ground of race, color, or national origin in the employment practices of the recipient or other persons subject to the regulation tends, on the ground of race, color, or national origin, to exclude individuals from participation in, to deny them the benefits of, or to subject them to discrimination under any program to which this regulation applies, the foregoing provisions of this paragraph (c) shall apply to the employment practices of the recipient or other persons subject to the regulation, to the extent necessary to assure equality of opportunity to, and nondiscriminatory treatment of, beneficiaries.

(d) *Indian Health and Cuban Refugee Services.* An individual shall not be deemed subjected to discrimination by reason of his exclusion from the benefits of a program limited by Federal law to individuals of a particular race, color, or national origin different from his.

(e) *Medical emergencies.* Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this section, a recipient of Federal financial assistance shall not be deemed to have failed to comply with paragraph (a) of this section if immediate provision of a service or other benefit to an individual is necessary to prevent his death or serious impairment of his health, and such service or other benefit cannot be provided except by or through a medical institution which refuses or fails to comply with paragraph (a) of this section.

(Sec. 601, 602, 604, Civil Rights Act of 1964; 78 Stat. 252, 253, 42 U.S.C. 2000d, 2000d-1, 2000d-3)

[29 FR 16298, Dec. 4, 1964 as amended at 38 FR 17979, 17982, July 5, 1973]

§ 80.4 Assurances required.

(a) *General.* (1) Every application for Federal financial assistance to carry out a program to which this part applies, except a program to which paragraph (b) of this section applies, and every application for Federal financial assistance to provide a facility shall, as a condition to its approval and the extension of any Federal financial assistance pursuant to the application, contain or be accompanied by an assurance that the program will be conducted or the facility operated in compliance with all requirements imposed by or pursuant to this part. In the case of an application for Federal financial assistance to provide real property or structures thereon, the assurance shall obligate the recipient, or, in the case of a subsequent transfer, the transferee, for the period during which the real property or structures are used for a purpose for which the Federal financial assistance is extended or for another purpose involving the provision of similar services or benefits. In the case of personal property the assurance shall obligate the recipient for the period during which he retains ownership or possession of the property. In all other cases the assurance shall obligate the recipient for the period during which Federal financial assistance is extended pursuant to the application. The responsible Department official shall specify the form of the foregoing assurances for each program, and the extent to which like assurances will be required of subgrantees, contractors and subcontractors, transferees, successors in interest, and other participants in the program. Any such assurance shall include provisions which give the United States a right to seek its judicial enforcement.

(2) Where Federal financial assistance is provided in the form of a transfer of real property or interest therein from the Federal Government the instrument effecting or recording the transfer shall contain a covenant running with the land to assure nondiscrimination for the period during which the real property is used for a purpose for which the Federal financial assistance is extended or for another purpose involving the provision of similar services or benefits. Where no transfer of property is involved but property is improved with Federal financial assistance, the recipient shall agree to include such a covenant to any subsequent transfer of the property. Where the property is obtained from the Federal Government, such covenant may also include a condition coupled with a right to be reserved by the Department to revert title to the property in the event of a breach of the covenant where, in the discretion of the responsible Department official, such a condition and right of reverter is appropriate to the statute under which the real property is obtained and to the nature of the grant and the grantee. In the event a transferee of real property proposes to mortgage or otherwise encumber the real property as security for financing construction of new, or improvement of existing, facilities on such property for the purposes for which the property was transferred, the responsible Department official may agree, upon request of the transferee and if necessary to accomplish such financing, and upon such conditions as he deems appropriate, to forbear the exercise of such right to revert title for so long as the lien of such mortgage or other encumbrance remains effective.

(b) *Continuing State programs.* Every application by a State or a State agency to carry out a program involving continuing Federal financial assistance to which this regulation applies (including the Federal financial assistance listed in Part 2 of Appendix A) shall as a condition to its approval and the extension of any Federal financial assistance pursuant to the application (1) contain or be accompanied by a statement that the program is (or, in the case of a new program, will be) conducted in compliance with all requirements imposed by or pursuant to this regulation, and (2) provide or be accompanied by provision for such methods of administration for the program as are found by the responsible Department official to give reasonable assurance that the applicant and all recipients of Federal financial assistance under such program will comply with all requirements imposed by or pursuant to this regulation.

(c) *Elementary and secondary schools.* The requirements of paragraph (a) or (b) of this section with respect to any elementary or secondary school or school system shall be deemed to be satisfied if such school or school system (1) is subject to a final order of a court of the United States for the desegregation of such school or school system, and provides an assurance that it will comply with such order, including any future modification of such order, or (2) submits a plan for the desegregation of such school or school system which the responsible Department official determines is adequate to accomplish the purposes of the Act and this part, at the earliest practicable time, and provides reasonable assurance that it will

214

carry out such plan; in any case of continuing Federal financial assistance the responsible Department official may reserve the right to redetermine, after such period as may be specified by him, the adequacy of the plan to accomplish the purposes of the Act and the regulations in this part. In any case in which a final order of a court of the United States for the desegregation of such school or school system is entered after submission of such a plan, such plan shall be revised to conform to such final order, including any future modification of such order.

(d) *Assurance from institutions.* (1) In the case of any application for Federal financial assistance to an institution of higher education (including assistance for construction, for research, for special training project, for student loans or for any other purpose), the assurance required by this section shall extend to admission practices and to all other practices relating to the treatment of students.

(2) The assurance required with respect to an institution of higher education, hospital, or any other institution, insofar as the assurance relates to the institution's practices with respect to admission or other treatment of individuals as students, patients, or clients of the institution or to the opportunity to participate in the provision of services or other benefits to such individuals, shall be applicable to the entire institution unless the applicant establishes, to the satisfaction of the responsible Department official, that the institution's practices in designated parts or programs of the institution will in no way affect its practices in the program of the institution for which Federal financial assistance is sought, or the beneficiaries of or participants in such program. If in any such case the assistance sought is for the construction of a facility or part of a facility, the assurance shall in any event extend to the entire facility and to facilities operated in connection therewith.

(Sec. 601, 602, Civil Rights Act of 1964; 78 Stat. 252; 42 U.S.C. 2000d, 2000d-1. Sec. 182; 80 Stat. 1209; 42 U.S.C. 2000d-5)

[29 FR 16298, Dec. 4, 1964, as amended at 32 FR 14555, Oct. 19, 1967; 38 FR 17980, 17982, July 5, 1973]

§ 80.5 Illustrative application.

The following examples will illustrate the programs aided by Federal financial assistance of the Department. (In all cases the discrimination prohibited is discrimination on the ground of race, color, or national origin prohibited by Title VI of the Act and this regulation, as a condition of the receipt of Federal financial assistance).

(a) In Federally assisted programs for the provision of health or welfare services, discrimination in the selection or eligibility of individuals to receive the services, and segregation or other discriminatory practices in the manner of providing them, are prohibited. This prohibition extends to all facilities and services provided by the grantee under the program or, if the grantee is a State, by a political subdivision of the State. It extends also to services purchased or otherwise obtained by the grantee (or political subdivision) from hospitals, nursing homes, schools, and similar institutions for beneficiaries of the program, and to the facilities in which such services are provided, subject, however, to the provisions of § 80.3(e).

(b) In federally-affected area assistance (Pub. L. 815 and Pub. L. 874) for construction aid and for general support of the operation of elementary or secondary schools, or in more limited support to such schools such as for the acquisition of equipment, the provision of vocational education, or the provision of guidance and counseling services, discrimination by the recipient school district in any of its elementary or secondary schools in the admission of students, or in the treatment of its students in any aspect of the educational process, is prohibited. In this and the following illustrations the prohibition of discrimination in the treatment of students or other trainees includes the prohibition of discrimination among the students or trainees in the availability or use of any academic, dormitory, eating, recreational, or other facilities of the grantee or other recipient.

(c) In a research, training, demonstration, or other grant to a university for activities to be conducted in a graduate school, discrimination in the admission and treatment of students in the graduate school is prohibited, and the prohibition extends to the entire university unless it satisfies the responsible Department official that practices with respect to other parts or programs of the university will not interfere, directly or indirectly, with fulfillment of the assurance required with respect to the graduate school.

(d) In a training grant to a hospital or other nonacademic institution, discrimination is prohibited in the selection of individuals to be trained and in their treatment by the grantee during their training. In a research or demonstration grant to such an institution discrimination is prohibited with respect to any educational activity and any provision of medical or other services and any financial aid to individuals incident to the program.

(e) In grants to assist in the construction of facilities for the provision of health, educational or welfare services, assurances will be required that services will be provided without discrimination, to the same extent that discrimination would be prohibited as a condition of Federal operating grants for the support of such services. Thus, as a condition of grants for the construction of academic, research, or other facilities at institutions of higher education, assurances will be required that there will be no discrimination in the admission or treatment of students. In case of hospital construction grants the assurance will apply to patients, to interns, residents, student nurses, and other trainees, and to the privilege of physicians, dentists, and other professionally qualified persons to practice in the hospital, and will apply to the entire facility for which, or for a part of which, the grant is made, and to facilities operated in connection therewith. In other construction grants the assurances required will similarly be adapted to the nature of the activities to be conducted in the facilities for construction of which the grants have been authorized by Congress.

(f) Upon transfers of real or personal surplus property for health or educational uses, discrimination is prohibited to the same extent as in the case of grants for the construction of facilities or the provision of equipment for like purposes.

(g) Each applicant for a grant for the construction of educational television facilities is required to provide an assurance that it will, in its broadcast services, give due consideration to the interests of all significant racial or ethnic groups within the population to be served by the applicant.

(h) A recipient may not take action that is calculated to bring about indirectly what this regulation forbids it to accomplish directly. Thus, a State, in selecting or approving projects or sites for the construction of public libraries which will receive Federal financial assistance, may not base its selections or approvals on criteria which have the effect of defeating or of substantially impairing accomplishments of the objectives of the Federal assistance as respects individuals of a particular race, color or national origin.

(i) In some situations, even though past discriminatory practices attributable to a recipient or applicant have been abandoned, the consequences of such practices continue to impede the full availability of a benefit. If the efforts required of the applicant or recipient under § 80.6(d), to provide information as to the availability of the program or activity and the rights of beneficiaries under this regulation, have failed to overcome these consequences, it will become necessary under the requirement stated in (i) of § 80.3(b) (6) for such applicant or recipient to take additional steps to make the benefits fully available to racial and nationality groups previously subject to discrimination. This action might take the form, for example, of special arrangements for obtaining referrals or making selections which will insure that groups previously subjected to discrimination are adequately served.

(j) Even though an applicant or recipient has never used discriminatory policies, the services and benefits of the program or activity it administers may not in fact be equally available to some racial or nationality groups. In such circumstances, an applicant or recipient may properly give special consideration to race, color, or national origin to make the benefits of its program more widely available to such groups, not then being adequately served. For example, where a university is not adequately serving members of a particular racial or nationality group, it may establish special recruitment policies to make its program better known and more readily available to such group, and take other steps to provide that group with more adequate service.

(Sec. 601, 602, Civil Rights Act of 1964; 78 Stat. 252; 42 U.S.C. 2000d, 2000d-1)

[29 FR 16298, Dec. 4, 1964; 29 FR 16988, Dec. 11, 1964, as amended at 38 FR 17980, 17982, July 5, 1973]

§ 80.6 Compliance information.

(a) *Cooperation and assistance.* The responsible Department official shall to the fullest extent practicable seek the cooperation of recipients in obtaining compliance with this part and shall provide assistance and guidance to recipients to help them comply voluntarily with this part.

(b) *Compliance reports.* Each recipient shall keep such records and submit to the responsible Department official or his designee timely, complete and accurate compliance reports at such times, and in such form and containing such information, as the responsible Department official or his designee may determine to be necessary to enable him to ascertain whether the recipient has complied or is complying with this part. For example, recipients should have available for the Department racial and ethnic data showing the extent to which members of minority groups are beneficiaries of and participants in federally-assisted programs. In the case of any program under which a primary recipient extends Federal financial assistance to any other recipient, such other recipient shall also submit such compliance reports to the primary recipient as may be necessary to enable the primary recipient to carry out its obligations under this part.

(c) *Access to sources of information.* Each recipient shall permit access by the responsible Department official or his designee during normal business hours to such of its books, records, accounts, and other sources of information, and its facilities as may be pertinent to ascertain compliance with this part. Where any information required of a recipient is in the exclusive possession of any other agency, institution or person and this agency, institution or person shall fail or refuse to furnish this information the recipient shall so certify in its report and shall set forth what efforts it has made to obtain the information. Asserted considerations of privacy or confidentiality may not operate to bar the Department from evaluating or seeking to enforce compliance with this part. Information of a confidential nature obtained in connection with compliance evaluation or enforcement shall not be disclosed except where necessary in formal enforcement proceedings or where otherwise required by law.

(d) *Information to beneficiaries and participants.* Each recipient shall make available to participants, beneficiaries, and other interested persons such information regarding the provisions of this regulation and its applicability to the program for which the recipient receives Federal financial assistance, and make such information available to them in such manner, as the responsible Department official finds necessary to apprise such persons of the protections against discrimination assured them by the Act and this regulation.

(Sec. 601, 602, Civil Rights Act of 1964; 78 Stat. 252; 42 U.S.C. 2000d, 2000d-1)

[29 FR 16298, Dec. 4, 1964, as amended at 32 FR 14555, Oct. 19, 1967; 38 FR 17981, 17982, July 5, 1973]

§ 80.7 Conduct of investigations.

(a) *Periodic compliance reviews.* The responsible Department official or his designee shall from time to time review the practices of recipients to determine whether they are complying with this part.

(b) *Complaints.* Any person who believes himself or any specific class of individuals to be subjected to discrimination prohibited by this part may by himself or by a representative file

217

with the responsible Department official or his designee a written complaint. A complaint must be filed not later than 180 days from the date of the alleged discrimination, unless the time for filing is extended by the responsible Department official or his designee.

(c) *Investigations.* The responsible Department official or his designee will make a prompt investigation whenever a compliance review, report, complaint, or any other information indicates a possible failure to comply with this part. The investigation should include, where appropriate, a review of the pertinent practices and policies of the recipient, the circumstances under which the possible noncompliance with this part occurred, and other factors relevant to a determination as to whether the recipient has failed to comply with this part.

(d) *Resolution of matters.* (1) If an investigation pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section indicates a failure to comply with this part, the responsible Department official or his designee will so inform the recipient and the matter will be resolved by informal means whenever possible. If it has been determined that the matter cannot be resolved by informal means, action will be taken as provided for in § 80.8.

(2) If an investigation does not warrant action pursuant to paragraph (d)(1) of this section the responsible Department official or his designee will so inform the recipient and the complainant, if any, in writing.

(e) *Intimidatory or retaliatory acts prohibited.* No recipient or other person shall intimidate, threaten, coerce, or discriminate against any individual for the purpose of interfering with any right or privilege secured by section 601 of the Act or this part, or because he has made a complaint, testified, assisted, or participated in any manner in an investigation, proceeding or hearing under this part. The identity of complainants shall be kept confidential except to the extent necessary to carry out the purposes of this part, including the conduct of any investigation, hearing, or judicial proceeding arising thereunder.

(Sec. 601, 602, Civil Rights Act of 1964; 78 Stat. 252; 42 U.S.C. 2000d, 2000d-1)

[29 FR 16298, Dec. 4, 1964, as amended at 38 FR 17981, 17982, July 5, 1973]

§ 80.8 Procedure for effecting compliance.

(a) *General.* If there appears to be a failure or threatened failure to comply with this regulation, and if the noncompliance or threatened noncompliance cannot be corrected by informal means, compliance with this part may be effected by the suspension or termination of or refusal to grant or to continue Federal financial assistance or by any other means authorized by law. Such other means may include, but are not limited to, (1) a reference to the Department of Justice with a recommendation that appropriate proceedings be brought to enforce any rights of the United States under any law of the United States (including other titles of the Act), or any assurance or other contractual undertaking, and (2) any applicable proceeding under State or local law.

(b) *Noncompliance with § 80.4.* If an applicant fails or refuses to furnish an assurance required under § 80.4 or otherwise fails or refuses to comply with a requirement imposed by or pursuant to that section Federal financial assistance may be refused in accordance with the procedures of paragraph (c) of this section. The Department shall not be required to provide assistance in such a case during the pendency of the administrative proceedings under such paragraph except that the Department shall continue assistance during the pendency of such proceedings where such assistance is due and payable pursuant to an application therefor approved prior to the effective date of this part.

(c) *Termination of or refusal to grant or to continue Federal financial assistance.* No order suspending, terminating or refusing to grant or continue Federal financial assistance shall become effective until (1) the responsible Department official has advised the applicant or recipient of his failure to comply and has determined that compliance cannot be secured by voluntary means, (2) there has been an express finding on the record, after opportunity for hearing, of a failure by the applicant or recipient to comply with a requirement imposed by or pursuant to this part, (3) the expiration of 30 days after the Secretary has filed with the committee of the House and the committee of the Senate having legislative jurisdiction over the program involved, a full written report of the circumstances and the grounds for such action. Any action to suspend or terminate or to refuse to grant or to continue Federal financial assistance shall be limited to the particular political entity, or part thereof, or other applicant or recipient as to whom such a finding has been made and shall be limited in its effect to the particular program, or part thereof, in which such noncompliance has been so found.

(d) *Other means authorized by law.* No action to effect compliance by any other means authorized by law shall be taken until (1) the responsible Department official has determined that compliance cannot be secured by voluntary means, (2) the recipient or other person has been notified of its failure to comply and of the action to be taken to effect compliance, and (3) the expiration of at least 10 days from the mailing of such notice to the recipient or other person. During this period of at least 10 days additional efforts shall be made to persuade the recipient or other person to comply with the regulation and to take such corrective action as may be appropriate.

(Sec. 601, 602, Civil Rights Act of 1964; 78 Stat. 252; 42 U.S.C. 2000d, 2000d-1. Sec. 182, 80 Stat. 1209; 42 U.S.C. 2000d-5)

[29 FR 16298, Dec. 4, 1964, as amended at 32 FR 14556, Oct. 19, 1967; 38 FR 17982, July 5, 1973]

§ 80.9 Hearings.

(a) *Opportunity for hearing.* Whenever an opportunity for a hearing is required by § 80.8(c), reasonable notice shall be given by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, to the affected applicant or recipient. This notice shall advise the applicant or recipient of the action proposed to be taken, the specific provision under which the proposed action against it is to be taken, and the matters of fact or law asserted as the basis for this action, and either (1) fix a date not less than 20 days after the date of such notice within which the applicant or recipient may request of the responsible Department official that the matter be scheduled for hearing or (2) advise the applicant or recipient that the matter in question has been set down for hearing at a stated place and time. The time and place so fixed shall be reasonable and shall be subject to change for cause. The complainant, if any, shall be advised of the time and place of the hearing. An applicant or recipient may waive a hearing and submit written information and argument for the record. The failure of an applicant or recipient to request a hearing for which a date has been set shall be deemed to be a waiver of the right to a hearing under section 602 of the Act and § 80.8(c) of this regulation and consent to the making of a decision on the basis of such information as may be filed as the record.

(b) *Time and place of hearing.* Hearings shall be held at the offices of the Department in Washington, D.C., at a time fixed by the responsible Department official unless he determines that the convenience of the applicant or recipient or of the Department requires that another place be selected. Hearings shall be held before a hearing examiner designated in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 3105 and 3344 (section 11 of the Administrative Procedure Act).

(c) *Right to counsel.* In all proceedings under this section, the applicant or recipient and the Department shall have the right to be represented by counsel.

(d) *Procedures, evidence, and record.* (1) The hearing, decision, and any administrative review thereof shall be conducted in conformity with sections 5-8 of the Administrative Procedure Act, and in accordance with such rules of procedure as are proper (and not inconsistent with this section) relating to the conduct of the hearing, giving of notices subsequent to those provided for in paragraph (a) of this section, taking of testimony, exhibits, arguments and briefs, requests for findings, and other related matters. Both the Department and the applicant or recipient shall be entitled to introduce all relevant evidence on the

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

issues as stated in the notice for hearing or as determined by the officer conducting the hearing at the outset of or during the hearing. Any person (other than a Government employee considered to be on official business) who, having been invited or requested to appear and testify as a witness on the Government's behalf, attends at a time and place scheduled for a hearing provided for by this part, may be reimbursed for his travel and actual expenses of attendance in an amount not to exceed the amount payable under the standardized travel regulations to a Government employee traveling on official business.

(2) Technical rules of evidence shall not apply to hearings conducted pursuant to this part, but rules or principles designed to assure production of the most credible evidence available and to subject testimony to test by cross-examination shall be applied where reasonably necessary by the officer conducting the hearing. The hearing officer may exclude irrelevant, immaterial, or unduly repetitious evidence. All documents and other evidence offered or taken for the record shall be open to examination by the parties and opportunity shall be given to refute facts and arguments advanced on either side of the issues. A transcript shall be made of the oral evidence except to the extent the substance thereof is stipulated for the record. All decisions shall be based upon the hearing record and written findings shall be made.

(e) *Consolidated or Joint Hearings.* In cases in which the same or related facts are asserted to constitute noncompliance with this regulation with respect to two or more programs to which this part applies, or noncompliance with this part and the regulations of one or more other Federal departments or agencies issued under Title VI of the Act, the responsible Department official may, by agreement with such other departments or agencies where applicable, provide for the conduct of consolidated or joint hearings, and for the application to such hearings of rules of procedures not inconsistent with this part. Final decisions in such cases, insofar as this regulation is concerned, shall be made in accordance with § 80.10.

(Sec. 602, Civil Rights Act of 1964; 78 Stat. 252; 42 U.S.C. 2000d-1)

[29 FR 16298, Dec. 4, 1964, as amended at 32 FR 14555, Oct. 19, 1967; 38 FR 17981, 17982, July 5, 1973]

§ 80.10 Decisions and notices.

(a) *Decisions by hearing examiners.* After a hearing is held by a hearing examiner such hearing examiner shall either make an initial decision, if so authorized, or certify the entire record including his recommended findings and proposed decision to the reviewing authority for a final decision, and a copy of such initial decision or certification shall be mailed to the applicant or recipient and to the complainant, if any. Where the initial decision referred to in this paragraph or in paragraph (c) of this section is made by the hearing examiner, the applicant or recipient or the counsel for the Department may, within the period provided for in the rules of procedure issued by the responsible Department official, file with the reviewing authority exceptions to the initial decision, with his reasons therefor. Upon the filing of such exceptions the reviewing authority shall review the initial decision and issue its own decision thereof including the reasons therefor. In the absence of exceptions the initial decision shall constitute the final decision, subject to the provisions of paragraph (e) of this section.

(b) *Decisions on record or review by the reviewing authority.* Whenever a record is certified to the reviewing authority for decision or it reviews the decision of a hearing examiner pursuant to paragraph (a) or (c) of this section, the applicant or recipient shall be given reasonable opportunity to file with it briefs or other written statements of its contentions, and a copy of the final decision of the reviewing authority shall be given in writing to the applicant or recipient and to the complainant, if any.

(c) *Decisions on record where a hearing is waived.* Whenever a hearing is waived pursuant to § 80.9(a) the reviewing authority shall make its final decision on the record or refer the matter to a hearing examiner for an initial decision to be made on the record. A copy of such decision shall be given in writing to the applicant or recipient, and to the complainant, if any.

(d) *Rulings required.* Each decision of a hearing examiner or reviewing authority shall set forth a ruling on each finding, conclusion, or exception presented, and shall identify the requirement or requirements imposed by or pursuant to this part with which it is found that the applicant or recipient has failed to comply.

(e) *Review in certain cases by the Secretary.* If the Secretary has not personally made the final decision referred to in paragraphs (a), (b), or (c) of this section, a recipient or applicant or the counsel for the Department may request the Secretary to review a decision of the Reviewing Authority in accordance with rules of procedure issued by the responsible Department official. Such review is not a matter of right and shall be granted only where the Secretary determines there are special and important reasons therefor. The Secretary may grant or deny such request, in whole or in part. He may also review such a decision upon his own motion in accordance with rules of procedure issued by the responsible Department official. In the absence of a review under this paragraph, a final decision referred to in paragraphs (a), (b), (c) of this section shall become the final decision of the Department when the Secretary transmits it as such to Congressional committees with the report required under section 602 of the Act. Failure of an applicant or recipient to file an exception with the Reviewing Authority or to request review under this paragraph shall not be deemed a failure to exhaust administrative remedies for the purpose of obtaining judicial review.

(f) *Content of orders.* The final decision may provide for suspension or termination of, or refusal to grant or continue Federal financial assistance, in whole or in part, to which this regulation applies, and may contain such terms, conditions, and other provisions as are consistent with and will effectuate the purposes of the Act and this regulation, including provisions designed to assure that no Federal financial assistance to which this regulation applies will thereafter be extended under such law or laws to the applicant or recipient determined by such decision to be in default in its performance of an assurance given by it pursuant to this regulation, or to have otherwise failed to comply with this regulation unless and until it corrects its noncompliance and satisfies the responsible Department official that it will fully comply with this regulation.

(g) *Post-termination proceedings.* (1) An applicant or recipient adversely affected by an order issued under paragraph (f) of this section shall be restored to full eligibility to receive Federal financial assistance if it satisfies the terms and conditions of that order for such eligibility or if it brings itself into compliance with this part and provides reasonable assurance that it will fully comply with this part. An elementary or secondary school or school system which is unable to file an assurance of compliance with § 80.3 shall be restored to full eligibility to receive Federal financial assistance, if it files a court order or a plan for desegregation which meets the requirements of § 80.4(c), and provides reasonable assurance that it will comply with the court order or plan.

(2) Any applicant or recipient adversely affected by an order entered pursuant to paragraph (f) of this section may at any time request the responsible Department official to restore fully its eligibility to receive Federal financial assistance. Any such request shall be supported by information showing that the applicant or recipient has met the requirements of paragraph (g)(1) of this section. If the responsible Department official determines that those requirements have been satisfied, he shall restore such eligibility.

(3) If the responsible Department official denies any such request, the applicant or recipient may submit a request for a hearing in writing, specifying why it believes such official to have been in error. It shall thereupon be given an expeditious hearing, with a decision on the record, in accordance with rules of procedure issued by the

221

responsible Department official. The applicant or recipient will be restored to such eligibility if it proves at such hearing that it satisfied the requirements of paragraph (g)(1) of this section. While proceedings under this paragraph are pending, the sanctions imposed by the order issued under paragraph (f) of this section shall remain in effect.

(Sec. 602, Civil Rights Act of 1964; 78 Stat. 252; 42 U.S.C. 2000d-1)

[29 FR 16298, Dec. 4, 1964, as amended at 32 FR 14555, Oct. 19, 1967; 38 FR 17981, 17982, July 5, 1973]

§ 80.11 Judicial review.

Action taken pursuant to section 602 of the Act is subject to judicial review as provided in section 603 of the Act.

(Sec. 603, 78 Stat. 253; 42 U.S.C. 2000d-2)

[29 FR 16298, Dec. 4, 1964, as amended at 32 FR 14556, Oct. 19, 1967]

§ 80.12 Effect on other regulations, forms and instructions.

(a) *Effect on other regulations.* All regulations, orders, or like directions heretofore issued by any officer of the Department which impose requirements designed to prohibit any discrimination against individuals on the ground of race, color, or national origin under any program to which this regulation applies, and which authorize the suspension or termination of or refusal to grant or to continue Federal financial assistance to any applicant for or recipient of assistance for failure to comply with such requirements, are hereby superseded to the extent that such discrimination is prohibited by this regulation, except that nothing in this regulation shall be deemed to relieve any person of any obligation assumed or imposed under any such superseded regulation, order, instruction, or like direction prior to the effective date of this regulation. Nothing in this regulation, however, shall be deemed to supersede any of the following (including future amendments thereof): (1) The "Standards for a Merit System of Personnel Administration," issued jointly by the Secretaries of Defense, of Health and Human Services, and of Labor, 45 CFR Part 70; (2) Executive Order 11063 and regulations issued thereunder, or any other regulations or instructions, insofar as such Order, regulations, or instructions prohibit discrimination on the ground of race, color, or national origin in any program or situation to which this regulation is inapplicable, or prohibit discrimination on any other ground; or (3) requirements for Emergency School Assistance as published in 35 FR 13442 and codified as 45 CFR Part 181.

(b) *Forms and instructions.* The responsible Department official shall issue and promptly make available to interested persons forms and detailed instructions and procedures for effectuating this part.

(c) *Supervision and coordination.* The responsible Department official may from time to time assign to officials of the Department, or to officials of other departments or agencies of the Government with the consent of such departments or agencies, responsibilities in connection with the effectuation of the purposes of Title VI of the Act and this regulation (other than responsibility for review as provided in § 80.10(e)), including the achievements of effective coordination and maximum uniformity within the Department and within the Executive Branch of the Government in the application of Title VI and this regulation to similar programs and in similar situations. Any action taken, determination made, or requirement imposed by an official of another Department or Agency acting pursuant to an assignment of responsibility under this subsection shall have the same effect as though such action had been taken by the responsible official of this Department.

(Sec. 602, Civil Rights Act of 1964; 78 Stat. 252; 42 U.S.C. 2000d-1)

[29 FR 16298, Dec. 4, 1964, as amended at 32 FR 14555, Oct. 19, 1967; 38 FR 17981, 17982, July 5, 1973]

§ 80.13 Definitions.

As used in this part—

(a) The term "Department" means the Department of Health and Human Services, and includes each of its operating agencies and other organizational units.

(b) The term "Secretary" means the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

(c) The term "responsible Department official" means the Secretary or, to the extent of any delegation by the Secretary of authority to act in his stead under any one or more provisions of this part, any person or persons to whom the Secretary has heretofore delegated, or to whom the Secretary may hereafter delegate such authority.

(d) The term "reviewing authority" means the Secretary, or any person or persons (including a board or other body specially created for that purpose and also including the responsible Department official) acting pursuant to authority delegated by the Secretary to carry out responsibilities under § 80.10 (a) through (d).

(e) The term "United States" means the States of the United States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, Wake Island, the Canal Zone, and the territories and possessions of the United States, and the term "State" means any one of the foregoing.

(f) The term "Federal financial assistance" includes (1) grants and loans of Federal funds, (2) the grant or donation of Federal property and interests in property, (3) the detail of Federal personnel, (4) the sale and lease of, and the permission to use (on other than a casual or transient basis), Federal property or any interest in such property without consideration or at a nominal consideration, or at a consideration which is reduced for the purpose of assisting the recipient, or in recognition of the public interest to be served by such sale or lease to the recipient, and (5) any Federal agreement, arrangement, or other contract which has as one of its purposes the provision of assistance.

(g) The term "program" includes any program, project, or activity for the provision of services, financial aid, or other benefits to individuals (including education or training, health, welfare, rehabilitation, housing, or other services, whether provided through employees of the recipient of Federal financial assistance or provided by others through contracts or other arrangements with the recipient, and including work opportunities and cash or loan or other assistance to individuals), or for the provison of facilities for furnishing services, financial aid or other benefits to individuals. The services, financial aid, or other benefits provided under a program receiving Federal financial assistance shall be deemed to include any services, financial aid, or other benefits provided with the aid of Federal financial assistance or with the aid of any non-Federal funds, property, or other resources required to be expended or made available for the program to meet matching requirements or other conditions which must be met in order to receive the Federal financial assistance, and to include any services, financial aid, or other benefits provided in or through a facility provided with the aid of Federal financial assistance or such non-Federal resources.

(h) The term "facility" includes all or any portion of structures, equipment, or other real or personal property or interests therein, and the provision of facilities includes the construction, expansion, renovation, remodeling, alteration or acquisition of facilities.

(i) The term "recipient" means any State, political subdivision of any State, or instrumentality of any State or political subdivision, any public or private agency, institution, or organization, or other entity, or any individual, in any State, to whom Federal financial assistance is extended, directly or through another recipient, for any program, including any successor, assign, or transferee thereof, but such term does not include any ultimate beneficiary under any such program.

(j) The term "primary recipient" means any recipient which is authorized or required to extend Federal financial assistance to another recipient for the purpose of carrying out a program.

(k) The term "applicant" means one who submits an application, request, or plan required to be approved by a Department official, or by a primary recipient, as a condition to eligibility for Federal financial assistance, and the term "application" means such an application, request, or plan.

(Sec. 602, Civil Rights Act of 1964; 78 Stat. 252; 42 U.S.C. 2000d-1)

[29 FR 16298, Dec. 4, 1964; 29 FR 16988, Dec. 11, 1964, as amended at 32 FR 14555, Oct. 19, 1967; 38 FR 17982, July 5, 1973]

APPENDIX A—FEDERAL FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE TO WHICH THESE REGULATIONS APPLY

Part 1. Assistance other than for State-Administered Continuing Programs

1. Loans for acquisition of equipment for academic subjects, and for minor remodeling (20 U.S.C. 445).
2. Construction of facilities for institutions of higher education (20 U.S.C. 701-758).
3. School Construction in federally-affected and in major disaster areas (20 U.S.C. 631-647).
4. Construction of educational broadcast facilities (47 U.S.C. 390-399).
5. Loan service of captioned films and educational media; research on, and production and distribution of, educational media for the handicapped, and training of persons in the use of such media for the handicapped (20 U.S.C. 1452).
6. Demonstration residential vocational education schools (20 U.S.C. 1321).
7. Research and related activities in education of handicapped children (20 U.S.C. 1441).
8. Educational research, dissemination and demonstration projects; research training; and construction under the Cooperation Research Act (20 U.S.C. 331-332(b)).
9. Research in teaching modern foreign languages (20 U.S.C. 512).
10. Training projects for manpower development and training (42 U.S.C. 2601, 2602, 2610a-2610c).
11. Research and training projects in Vocational Education (20 U.S.C. 1281(a), 1282-1284).
12. Allowances to institutions training NDEA graduate fellows (20 U.S.C. 461-465).
13. Grants for training in librarianship (20 U.S.C. 1031-1033).
14. Grants for training personnel for the education of handicapped children (20 U.S.C. 1431).
15. Allowances for institutions training teachers and related educational personnel in elementary and secondary education, or post-secondary vocational education (20 U.S.C. 1111-1118).
16. Recruitment, enrollment, training and assignment of Teacher Corps personnel (20 U.S.C. 1101-1107a).
17. Operation and maintenance of schools in Federally-affected and in major disaster areas (20 U.S.C. 236-241; 241-1; 242-244).
18. Grants or contracts for the operation of training institutes for elementary or secondary school personnel to deal with special educational problems occasioned by desegregation (42 U.S.C. 2000c-3).
19. Grants for in-service training of teachers and other schools personnel and employment of specialists in desegregation problems (42 U.S.C. 2000c-4).
20. Higher education students loan program (Title II, National Defense Education Act, 20 U.S.C. 421-429).
21. Educational Opportunity grants and assistance for State and private programs of low-interest insured loans and State loans to students in institutions of higher education (Title IV, Higher Education Act of 1965, 20 U.S.C. 1061-1087).
22. Grants and contracts for the conduct of Talent Search, Upward Bound, and Special Services Programs (20 U.S.C. 1068).
23. Land-grant college aid (7 U.S.C. 301-308; 321-326; 328-331).
24. Language and area centers (Title VI, National Defense Education Act, 20 U.S.C. 511).
25. American Printing House for the Blind (20 U.S.C. 101-105).
26. Future Farmers of America (36 U.S.C. 271-391) and similar programs.
27. Science clubs (Pub. L. 85-875, 20 U.S.C. 2, note).
28. Howard University (20 U.S.C. 121-129).
29. Gallaudet College (31 D.C. Code, Ch. 10).
30. Establishment and operation of a model secondary school for the deaf by Gallaudet College (31 D.C. Code 1051-1053; 80 Stat. 1027-1028).
31. Faculty development programs, workshops and institutes (20 U.S.C. 1131-1132).
32. National Technical Institute for the Deaf (20 U.S.C. 681-685).
33. Institutes and other programs for training educational personnel (Parts D, E, and F, Title V, Higher Education Act of 1965) (20 U.S.C. 1119-1119c-4).
34. Grants and contracts for research and demonstration projects in librarianship (20 U.S.C. 1034).
35. Acquisition of college library resources (20 U.S.C. 1021-1028).
36. Grants for strengthening developing institutions of higher education (20 U.S.C. 1051-1054); National Fellowships for teaching at developing institutions (20 U.S.C. 1055), and grants to retired professors to teach at developing institutions (20 U.S.C. 1056).
37. College Work-Study Program (42 U.S.C. 2751-2757).

38. Financial assistance for acquisition of higher education equipment, and minor remodeling (20 U.S.C. 1121-1129).

39. Grants for special experimental demonstration projects and teacher training in adult education (20 U.S.C. 1208).

40. Grant programs for advanced and undergraduate international studies (20 U.S.C. 1171-1176; 22 U.S.C. 2452(b)).

41. Experimental projects for developing State leadership or establishment of special services (20 U.S.C. 865).

42. Grants to and arrangements with State educational and other agencies to meet special educational needs of migratory children of migratory agricultural workers (20 U.S.C. 241e(c)).

43. Grants by the Commissioner of Education to local educational agencies for supplementary educational centers and services; guidance, counseling, and testing (20 U.S.C. 841-844; 844b).

44. Resource centers for improvement of education of handicapped children (20 U.S.C. 1421) and centers and services for deaf-blind children (20 U.S.C. 1422).

45. Recruitment of personnel and dissemination of information on education of handicapped (20 U.S.C. 1433).

46. Grants for research and demonstrations relating to physical education or recreation for handicapped children (20 U.S.C. 1442) and training of physical educators and recreation personnel (20 U.S.C. 1434).

47. Dropout prevention projects (20 U.S.C. 887).

48. Bilingual education programs (20 U.S.C. 880b-880b-6).

49. Grants to agencies and organizations for Cuban refugees (22) U.S.C. 2601(b)(4).

50. Grants and contracts for special programs for children with specific learning disabilities including research and related activities, training and operating model centers (20 U.S.C. 1461).

51. Curriculum development in vocational and technical education (20 U.S.C. 1391).

52. Establishment, including construction, and operation of a National Center on Educational Media and Materials for the Handicapped (20 U.S.C. 1453).

53. Grants and contracts for the development and operation of experimental preschool and early education programs for handicapped (20 U.S.C. 1423).

54. Grants to public or private non-profit agencies to carry on the Follow Through Program in kindergarten and elementary schools (42 U.S.C. 2809 (a)(2)).

55. Grants for programs of cooperative education and grants and contracts for training and research in cooperative education (20 U.S.C. 1087a-1087c).

56. Grants and contracts to encourage the sharing of college facilities and resources (network for knowledge) (20 U.S.C. 1133-1133b).

57. Grants, contracts, and fellowships to improve programs preparing persons for public service and to attract students to public service (20 U.S.C. 1134-1134b).

58. Grants for the improvement of graduate programs (20 U.S.C. 1135-1135c).

59. Contracts for expanding and improving law school clinical experience programs (20 U.S.C. 1136-1136b).

60. Exemplary programs and projects in vocational education (20 U.S.C. 1301-1305).

61. Grants to reduce borrowing cost for construction of residential schools and dormitories (20 U.S.C. 1323).

62. Project grants and contracts for research and demonstration relating to new or improved health facilities and services (section 304, PHS Act, 42 U.S.C. 242b).

63. Grants for construction or modernization of emergency rooms of general hospitals (Title VI, Part C, PHS Act, 42 U.S.C. 291j).

64. Institutional and special projects grants to schools of nursing (sections 805-808, PHS Act, 42 U.S.C. 296d-296g).

65. Grants for construction and initial staffing of facilities for prevention and treatment of alcoholism (section 241-2, Community Mental Health Centers Act (42 U.S.C. 2688 f and g).

66. Grants for construction and initial staffing of specialized facilities for the treatment of alcoholics requiring care in such facilities (section 243, Community Mental Health Centers Act, 42 U.S.C. 2688h).

67. Special project grants for training programs, evaluation of existing treatment programs, and conduct of significant programs relating to treatment of alcoholics (section 246, Community Mental Health Centers Act, 42 U.S.C. 2688j-1).

68. Grants for construction and initial staff of treatment facilities for narcotic addicts (section 251, Community Mental Health Centers Act, 42 U.S.C. 2688m).

69. Special project grants for training programs, evaluation of existing treatment programs, and conduct of significant programs relating to treatment of narcotics addicts (section 252, Community Mental Health Centers Act, 42 U.S.C. 2688n-1).

70. Grants for consultation services for Community Mental Health Centers, alcoholism prevention and treatment facilities for narcotic addicts, and facilities for mental health of children (section 264, Community Mental Health Centers Act, 42 U.S.C. 2688r).

71. Grants for construction and initial staff of facilities for mental health of children (section 271, Community Mental Health Centers Act, 42 U.S.C. 2688u).

72. Special project grants for training programs and evaluation of existing treatment program relating to mental health of chil-

dren (section 272, Community Mental Health Centers Act, 42 U.S.C. 2688x).

73. Grants and loans for construction and modernization of medical facilities in the District of Columbia (Pub. L. 90-457; 82 Stat. 631-3).

74. Teaching facilities for nurse training (sections 801-804, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 296-296c).

75. Teaching facilities for allied health professions personnel (section 791, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 295h).

76. Mental retardation research facilities (Title VI, Part D, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 295-395e).

77. George Washington University Hospital construction (76 Stat. 83, Pub. L. 87-460, May 31, 1962).

78. Research projects, including conferences, communication activities and primate or other center grants (sections 301, 303, 304, and 308, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 241, 242a, 242b, and 242f).

79. General research support (section 301(d), Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 241).

80. Mental Health demonstrations and administrative studies (section 303(a)(2), Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 242a).

81. Migratory workers health services (section 310, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 242h).

82. Immunization programs (section 317, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 247b).

83. Health research training projects and fellowship grants (sections 301, 433, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 242, 289c).

84. Categorical (heart, cancer, etc.) grants for training traineeships or fellowships (sections 303, 433, etc., Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 242a, 289c, etc.).

85. Advanced professional nurse traineeships (section 821, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 297).

86. Department projects under Appalachian Regional Development Act (40 U.S.C. App. A).

87. Grants to institutions for traineeships for professional public health personnel section 306, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 242d).

88. Grants for graduate or specialized training in public health (section 309, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 242g).

89. Health professions school student loan program (Title VII, Part C, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 294-294(k)).

90. Grants for provision in schools of public health of training, consultation and technical assistance in the field of public health and in the administration of state or local public health programs (section 309(c)), Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 242(g)(c)).

91. Project grants for training, studies, or demonstrations looking metropolitan area, or other local area plans for health services (section 314(c), Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 246(c)).

92. Project grants for training, studies, or demonstrations looking toward the development of improved comprehensive health planning (section 314(c), Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 246(c)).

93. Project grants for health services development (section 314(e), Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 246(e)).

94. Institutional and special grants to health professions schools (Title VII, Part E, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 295f-295f-4).

95. Improvement grants to centers for allied health professions (section 792, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 295h-1).

96. Scholarship grants to health professions schools (Title VII, Part F, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 295h-1).

97. Scholarship grants to schools of nursing (Title VIII, Part D, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 198c-298c-6).

98. Traineeships for advanced training of allied health professions personnel (section 793, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 295h-2).

99. Contracts to encourage full utilization of nursing educational talent (section 868, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 298c-7).

100. Grants to community mental health centers for the compensation of professional and technical personnel for the initial operation of new centers or of new services in centers (Community Mental Health Centers Act, Part B, 42 U.S.C. 2688-2688d).

101. Grants for the planning, construction, equipment and operation of multicounty demonstration health projects in the Appalachian region (section 202 of Appalachian Regional Development Act, Pub. L. 89-4, as amended, Pub. L. 90-103 40 U.S.C. App. 202).

102. Education, research, training, and demonstrations in the fields of heart disease, cancer, stroke and related diseases (sections 900-110, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 299a-j).

103. Assistance to medical libraries (sections 390-399, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 280b-280b-9).

104. Nursing student loans (sections 822-828, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 297a-g).

105. Hawaii leprosy payments (section 331, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 255).

106. Heart disease laboratories and related facilities for patient care (section 412(d), Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 287a(d)).

107. Grants for construction of hospitals serving Indians (Pub. L. 85-151, 42 U.S.C. 2005).

108. Indian Sanitation Facilities (Pub. L. 86-121, 42 U.S.C. 2004a).

109. Research projects relating to maternal and child health services and crippled children's services (42 U.S.C. 712).

110. Maternal and child health special project grants to State agencies and institutions of higher learning (42 U.S.C. 703(s)).

111. Maternity and infant care and family planning services; special project grants to local health agencies and other organizations (42 U.S.C. 708).

112. Special project grants to State agencies and institutions of higher learning for crippled children's services (42 U.S.C. 704(2)).

113. Special project grants for health of school and preschool children (42 U.S.C. 709) and for dental health of children (42 U.S.C. 710).

114. Grants to institutions of higher learning for training personnel for health care and related services for mothers and children (42 U.S.C. 711).

115. Grants and contracts for the conduct of research, experiments, or demonstrations relating to the developments, utilization, quality, organization, and financing of services, facilities, and resources of hospitals, long-term care facilities, for other medical facilities (section 304, Public Health Service Act, as amended by Pub. L. 90-174, 42 U.S.C. 242b).

116. Health research facilities (Title VII Part A, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 292-292j).

117. Teaching facilities for health professions personnel (Title VII, Part B, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 293-293h).

118. Project grants and contracts for research, development, training, and studies in the field of electronic product radiation (section 356, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 263d).

119. Project grants and contracts for research, studies, demonstrations, training, and education relating to coal mine health (section 501, Federal Coal Mine Health and Safety Act of 1969, Public Law 91-173).

120. Surplus real and related personal property disposal (40 U.S.C. 484(k)).

121. Supplementary medical insurance benefits for the aged (Title XVIII, Part A, Social Security Act, 42 U.S.C. 1395c-1395i-2).

122. Issuance of rent-free permits for vending stands, credit unions, employee associations, etc. (20 U.S.C. 107-107f; 45 C.F.R. Part 20; section 25, 12 U.S.C. 1170).

123. Grants for special vocational rehabilitation projects (29 U.S.C. 34(a)(1)).

124. Experimental, pilot or demonstration projects to promote the objectives of Title I, X, XIV, XVI, or XIX or Part A of Title IV of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 1315).

125. Social Security and welfare cooperative research or demonstration projects (42 U.S.C. 1310).

126. Child welfare research, training, or demonstration projects (42 U.S.C. 626).

127. Training projects (Title VI, Older Americans Act, 42 U.S.C. 3041-3042).

128. Grants for expansion of vocational rehabilitation services (29 U.S.C. 34(a)(2) (A)).

129. Grants for construction of rehabilitation facilities (29 U.S.C. 41a(a)-(e)) and for initial staffing of rehabilitation facilities (29 U.S.C. 41a(f)).

130. Project development grants for rehabilitation facilities (29 U.S.C. 41a(g)(2)).

131. Rehabilitation Facility improvement grants (29 U.S.C. 41b(b)).

132. Agreement for the establishment and operation of a national center for deaf-blind youths and adults (29 U.S.C. 42a).

133. Project grants for services for migratory agricultural workers (29 U.S.C. 42b).

134. Grants for initial staffing of community mental retardation facilities (42 U.S.C. 2678-2678d).

135. Grants for training welfare personnel and for expansion and development of undergraduate and graduate social work programs (42 U.S.C. 906, 908).

136. Research and development projects concerning older Americans (42 U.S.C. 3031-3032).

137. Grants to States for training of nursing home administrators (42 U.S.C. 1396g (e)).

138. Contracts or jointly financed cooperative arrangements with industry (29 U.S.C. 34(a)(2)(B)).

139. Project grants for new careers in rehabilitation (29 U.S.C. 34(a)(2)(C)).

140. Children of low-income families (20 U.S.C. 241a-241m).

141. Grants for training (29 U.S.C. 37(a) (2)).

142. Grants for projects for training services (29 U.S.C. 41b(a)).

143. Grants for comprehensive juvenile delinquency planning (42 U.S.C. 3811).

144. Grants for project planning in juvenile delinquency (42 U.S.C. 3812).

145. Grants for juvenile delinquency rehabilitative services projects (42 U.S.C. 3822, 3842).

146. Grants for juvenile delinquency preventive service projects (42 U.S.C. 3861).

147. Grants for training projects in juvenile delinquency fields (42 U.S.C. 3861).

148. Grants for development of improved techniques and practices in juvenile delinquency services (42 U.S.C. 3871).

149. Grants for technical assistance in juvenile delinquency services (42 U.S.C. 3872).

150. Grants for State technical assistance to local units in juvenile delinquency services (42 U.S.C. 3873).

151. Grants for public service centers projects (42 U.S.C. 2744).

152. Grants to public or private non-profit agencies to carry on the Project Headstart Program (42 U.S.C. 2809(a)(1)).

153. Project grants for new careers for the handicapped (29 U.S.C. 34(a)(2)(D)).

154. Construction, demonstration, and training grants for university-affiliated facilities for persons with developmental disabilities (42 U.S.C. 2661-2666).

Part 2. Continuing Assistance to State Administered Programs.

1. Grants to States for public library services and construction, interlibrary cooperation and specialized State library services for certain State institutions and the physically handicapped (20 U.S.C. 351-355).

2. Grants to States for strengthening instruction in academic subjects (20 U.S.C. 441-444).

3. Grants to States for vocational education (20 U.S.C. 1241-1264).

4. Arrangements with State education agencies for training under the Manpower Development and Training Act (42 U.S.C. 2601-2602, 2610a).

5. Grants to States to assist in the elementary and secondary education of children of low-income families (20 U.S.C. 241a-241m).

6. Grants to States to provide for school library resources, textbooks and other instructional materials for pupils and teachers in elementary and secondary schools (20 U.S.C. 821-827).

7. Grants to States to strengthen State departments of education (20 U.S.C. 861-870).

8. Grants to States for community service programs (20 U.S.C. 1001-1011).

9. Grants to States for adult basic education and related research, teacher training and special projects (20 U.S.C. 1201-1211).

10. Grants to State educational agencies for supplementary educational centers and services, and guidance, counseling and testing (20 U.S.C. 841-847).

11. Grants to States for research and training in vocational education (20 U.S.C. 1281(b)).

12. Grants to States for exemplary programs and projects in vocational education (20 U.S.C. 1301-1305).

13. Grants to States for residential vocational education schools (20 U.S.C. 1321).

14. Grants to States for consumer and homemaking education (20 U.S.C. 1341).

15. Grants to States for cooperative vocational educational program (20 U.S.C. 1351-1355).

16. Grants to States for vocational work-study programs (20 U.S.C. 1371-1374).

17. Grants to States to attract and qualify teachers to meet critical teaching shortages (20 U.S.C. 1108-1110c).

18. Grants to States for education of handicapped children (20 U.S.C. 1411-1414).

19. Grants for administration of State plans and for comprehensive planning to determine construction needs of institutions of higher education (20 U.S.C. 715(b)).

20. Grants to States for comprehensive health planning (section 314(a), Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 246(a)).

21. Grants to States for establishing and maintaining adequate public health services (section 314(d), Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 246(d)).

22. Grants, loans, and loan guarantees with interest subsidies for hospital and medical facilities (Title VI, Public Health Service Act, 42 U.S.C. 291 et seq.).

23. Grants to States for community mental health centers construction (Community Mental Health Centers Act, Part A, 42 U.S.C. 2681-2687).

24. Cost of rehabilitation services (Title II, Social Security Act section 222(d); 42 U.S.C. 422(d)).

25. Surplus personal property disposal donations for health and educational purposes through State agencies (40 U.S.C. 484(j)).

26. Grants for State and community programs on aging (Title III, Older Americans Act, 42 U.S.C. 3021-3025).

27. Grants to States for planning, provision of services, and construction and operation of facilities for persons with developmental disabilities (42 U.S.C. 2670-2677c).

28. Grants to States for vocational rehabilitation services (29 U.S.C. 32); for innovation of vocational rehabilitation services (29 U.S.C. 33); and for rehabilitation facilities planning (29 U.S.C. 41a(g)(1)).

29. Designation of State licensing agency for blind operators of vending stands (20 U.S.C. 107-107f).

30. Grants to States for old-age assistance (42 U.S.C. 301 et seq.); aid to families with dependent children (42 U.S.C. 601 et seq.); child-welfare services (42 U.S.C. 620 et seq.); aid to the blind (42 U.S.C. 1201 et seq.); aid to the permanently and totally disabled (42 U.S.C. 1351 et seq.); aid to the aged, blind, or disabled (42 U.S.C. 1381 et seq.); medical assistance (42 U.S.C. 1396 et seq.).

31. Grants to States for maternal and child health and crippled children's services (42 U.S.C. 701-707); for special projects for maternal and infant care (42 U.S.C. 708).

32. Grants to States for juvenile delinquency preventive and rehabilitative services (42 U.S.C. 3841).

[38 FR 17982, July 5, 1973; 40 FR 18173, Apr. 25, 1975]

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

APPENDIX B—GUIDELINES FOR ELIMINATING DISCRIMINATION AND DENIAL OF SERVICES ON THE BASIS OF RACE, COLOR, NATIONAL ORIGIN, SEX, AND HANDICAP IN VOCATIONAL EDUCATION PROGRAMS

I. SCOPE AND COVERAGE

A. APPLICATION OF GUIDELINES

These Guidelines apply to recipients of any Federal financial assistance from the Department of Health and Human Services that offer or administer programs of vocational education or training. This includes State agency recipients.

B. DEFINITION OF RECIPIENT

The definition of "recipient" of Federal financial assistance is established by Department regulations implementing Title VI, Title IX, and Section 504 (45 CFR 80.13(i), 86.2(h), 84.3(f).

For the purposes of Title VI:

The term "recipient" means any State, political subdivision of any State, or instrumentality of any State or political subdivision, any public or private agency, institution, or organization, or other entity, or any individual, in any State, to whom Federal financial assistance is extended, directly or through another recipient, for any program, including any successor, assignee, or transferee thereof, but such term does not include any ultimate beneficiary [e.g., students] under any such program. (45 CFR 80.13(i)).

For the purpose of Title IX:

"Recipient" means any State or political subdivision thereof, or any instrumentality of a State or political subdivision thereof, any public or private agency, institution, or organization, or other entity, or any person to whom Federal financial assistance is extended directly or through another recipient and which operates an education program or activity which receives or benefits from such assistance, including any subunit, successor, assignee, or transferee thereof. (45 CFR 86.2(h)).

For the purposes of Section 504:

"Recipient" means any State or its political subdivision, any instrumentality of a State or its political subdivision, any public or private agency, institution, organization, or other entity, or any person to which Federal financial assistance is extended directly or through another recipient, including any successor, assignee, or transferee of a recipient, but excluding the ultimate beneficiary of the assistance. (45 CFR 84.3(f)).

C. EXAMPLES OF RECIPIENTS COVERED BY THESE GUIDELINES

The following education agencies, when they provide vocational education, are examples of recipients covered by these Guidelines:

1. The board of education of a public school district and its administrative agency.
2. The administrative board of a specialized vocational high school serving students from more than one school district.
3. The administrative board of a technical or vocation school that is used exclusively or principally for the provision of vocational education to persons who have completed or left high school (including persons seeking a certificate or an associate degree through a vocational program offered by the school) and who are available for study in preparation for entering the labor market.
4. The administrative board of a postsecondary institution, such as a technical institute, skill center, junior college, community college, or four year college that has a department or division that provides vocational education to students seeking immediate employment, a certificate or an associate degree.
5. The administrative board of a proprietary (private) vocational education school.
6. A State agency recipient itself operating a vocational education facility.

D. EXAMPLES OF SCHOOLS TO WHICH THESE GUIDELINES APPLY

The following are examples of the types of schools to which these Guidelines apply.

1. A junior high school, middle school, or those grades of a comprehensive high school that offers instruction to inform, orient, or prepare students for vocational education at the secondary level.
2. A vocational education facility operated by a State agency.
3. A comprehensive high school that has a department exclusively or principally used for providing vocational education; or that offers at least one vocational program to secondary level students who are available for study in preparation for entering the labor market; or that offers adult vocational education to persons who have completed or left high school and who are available for study in preparation for entering the labor market.
4. A comprehensive high school, offering the activities described above, that receives students on a contract basis from other school districts for the purpose of providing vocational education.
5. A specialized high school used exclusively or principally for the provision of vocational education, that enrolls students from one or more school districts for the purpose of providing vocational education.
6. A technical or vocational school that primarily provides vocational education to persons who have completed or left high school and who are available for study in

preparation for entering the labor market, including students seeking an associate degree or certificate through a course of vocational instruction offered by the school.

7. A junior college, a community college, or four-year college that has a department or division that provides vocational education to students seeking immediate employment, an associate degree or a certificate through a course of vocational instruction offered by the school.

8. A proprietary school, licensed by the State, that offers vocational education.

NOTE: Subsequent sections of these Guidelines may use the term *secondary vocational education center* in referring to the institutions described in paragraphs 3, 4 and 5 above or the term *postsecondary vocational education center* in referring to institutions described in paragraphs 6 and 7 above or the term *vocational education center* in referring to any or all institutions described above.

II. Responsibilities Assigned Only to State Agency Recipients

A. RESPONSIBILITIES OF ALL STATE AGENCY RECIPIENTS

State agency recipients, in addition to complying with all other provisions of the Guidelines relevant to them, may not require, approve of, or engage in any discrimination or denial of services on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap in performing any of the following activities:

1. Establishment of criteria or formulas for distribution of Federal or State funds to vocational education programs in the State;

2. Establishment of requirements for admission to or requirements for the administration of vocational education programs;

3. Approval of action by local entities providing vocational education. (For example, a State agency must ensure compliance with Section IV of these Guidelines if and when it reviews a vocational education agency decision to create or change a geographic service area.);

4. Conducting its own programs. (For example, in employing its staff it may not discriminate on the basis of sex or handicap.)

B. STATE AGENCIES PERFORMING OVERSIGHT RESPONSIBILITIES

The State agency responsible for the administration of vocational education programs must adopt a compliance program to prevent, identify and remedy discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex or handicap by its subrecipients. (A "subrecipient," in this context, is a local agency or vocational education center that receives financial assistance through a State agency.) This compliance program must include:

1. Collecting and analyzing civil rights related data and information that subrecipients compile for their own purposes or that are submitted to State and Federal officials under existing authorities;

2. Conducting periodic compliance reviews of selected subrecipients (i.e., an investigation of a subrecipient to determine whether it engages in unlawful discrimination in any aspect of its program); upon finding unlawful discrimination, notifying the subrecipient of steps it must take to attain compliance and attempting to obtain voluntary compliance;

3. Providing technical assistance upon request to subrecipients. This will include assisting subrecipients identify unlawful discrimination and instructing them in remedies for and prevention of such discrimination;

4. Periodically reporting its activities and findings under the foregoing paragraphs, including findings of unlawful discrimination under paragraph 2, immediately above, to the Office for Civil Rights.

State agencies are not required to terminate or defer assistance to any subrecipient. Nor are they required to conduct hearings. The responsibilities of the Office for Civil Rights to collect and analyze data, to conduct compliance reviews, to investigate complaints and to provide technical assistance are not diminished or attenuated by the requirements of Section II of the Guidelines.

C. STATEMENT OF PROCEDURES AND PRACTICES

Within one year from the publication of these Guidelines in final form, each State agency recipient performing oversight responsibilities must submit to the Office for Civil Rights the methods of administration and related procedures it will follow to comply with the requirements described in paragraphs A and B immediately above. The Department will review each submission and will promptly either approve it, or return it to State officials for revision.

III. Distribution of Federal Financial Assistance and Other Funds for Vocational Education

A. AGENCY RESPONSIBILITIES

Recipients that administer grants for vocational education must distribute Federal, State, or local vocational education funds so that no student or group of students is unlawfully denied an equal opportunity to benefit from vocational education on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap.

B. DISTRIBUTION OF FUNDS

Recipients may not adopt a formula or other method for the allocation of Federal, State, or local vocational education funds that has the effect of discriminating on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap. However, a recipient may adopt a formula or other method of allocation that uses as a factor race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap [or an index or proxy for race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap e.g., number of persons receiving Aid to Families with Dependent Children or with limited English speaking ability] if the factor is included to compensate for past discrimination or to comply with those provisions of the Vocational Education Amendments of 1976 designed to assist specified protected groups.

C. EXAMPLE OF A PATTERN SUGGESTING UNLAWFUL DISCRIMINATION

In each State it is likely that some local recipients will enroll greater proportions of minority students in vocational education than the State-wide proportion of minority students in vocational education. A funding formula or other method of allocation that results in such local recipients receiving per-pupil allocations of Federal or State vocational education funds lower than the State-wide average per-pupil allocation will be presumed unlawfully discriminatory.

D. DISTRIBUTION THROUGH COMPETITIVE GRANTS OR CONTRACTS

Each State agency that establishes criteria for awarding competitive vocational education grants or contracts must establish and apply the criteria without regard to the race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap of any or all of a recipient's students, except to compensate for past discrimination.

E. APPLICATION PROCESSES FOR COMPETITIVE OR DISCRETIONARY GRANTS

State agencies must disseminate information needed to satisfy the requirements of any application process for competitive or discretionary grants so that all recipients, including those having a high percentage of minority or handicapped students, are informed of and able to seek funds. State agencies that provide technical assistance for the completion of the application process must provide such assistance without discrimination against any one recipient or class of recipients.

F. ALTERATION OF FUND DISTRIBUTION TO PROVIDE EQUAL OPPORTUNITY

If the Office for Civil Rights finds that a recipient's system for distributing vocational education funds unlawfully discriminates on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap, it will require the recipient to adopt an alternative nondiscriminatory method of distribution. The Office for Civil Rights may also require the recipient to compensate for the effects of its past unlawful discrimination in the distribution of funds.

IV. ACCESS AND ADMISSION OF STUDENTS TO VOCATIONAL EDUCATION PROGRAMS

A. RECIPIENT RESPONSIBILITIES

Criteria controlling student eligibility for admission to vocational education schools, facilities and programs may not unlawfully discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap. A recipient may not develop, impose, maintain, approve, or implement such discriminatory admissions criteria.

B. SITE SELECTION FOR VOCATIONAL SCHOOLS

State and local recipients may not select or approve a site for a vocational education facility for the purpose or with the effect of excluding, segregating, or otherwise discriminating against students on the basis of race, color, or national origin. Recipients must locate vocational education facilities at sites that are readily accessible to both nonminority and minority communities, and that do not tend to identify the facility or program as intended for nonminority or minority students.

C. ELIGIBILITY FOR ADMISSION TO VOCATIONAL EDUCATION CENTERS BASED ON RESIDENCE

Recipients may not establish, approve or maintain geographic boundaries for a vocational education center service area or attendance zone, (hereinafter "service area"), that unlawfully exclude students on the basis of race, color, or national origin. The Office for Civil Rights will presume, subject to rebuttal, that any one or combination of the following circumstances indicates that the boundaries of a given service area are unlawfully constituted:

1. A school system or service area contiguous to the given service area, contains minority or nonminority students in substantially greater proportion than the given service area;

2. A substantial number of minority students who reside outside the given vocational education center service area, and who are not eligible for the center reside, nonetheless, as close to the center as a substantial number of non-minority students who are eligible for the center;

3. The over-all vocational education program of the given service area in comparison to the over-all vocational education program of a contiguous school system or service area enrolling a substantially greater

proportion of minority students: (a) Provides its students with a broader range of curricular offerings, facilities and equipment; or (b) provides its graduates greater opportunity for employment in jobs: (i) For which there is a demonstrated need in the community or region; (ii) that pay higher entry level salaries or wages, or (iii) that are generally acknowledged to offer greater prestige or status.

D. ADDITIONS AND RENOVATIONS TO EXISTING VOCATIONAL EDUCATION FACILITIES

A recipient may not add to, modify, or renovate the physical plant of a vocational education facility in a manner that creates, maintains, or increases student segregation on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap.

E. REMEDIES FOR VIOLATIONS OF SITE SELECTION AND GEOGRAPHIC SERVICE AREA REQUIREMENTS

If the conditions specified in paragraphs IV, A, B, C, or D, immediately above, are found and not rebutted by proof of nondiscrimination, the Office for Civil rights will require the recipient(s) to submit a plan to remedy the discrimination. The following are examples of steps that may be included in the plan, where necessary to overcome the discrimination: (1) Redrawing of the boundaries of the vocational education center's service area to include areas unlawfully excluded and/or to exclude areas unlawfully included; (2) provision of transportation to students residing in areas unlawfully excluded; (3) provision of additional programs and services to students who would have been eligible for attendance at the vocational education center but for the discriminatory service area or site selection; (4) reassignment of students; and (5) construction of new facilities or expansion of existing facilities.

F. ELIGIBILITY FOR ADMISSION TO SECONDARY VOCATIONAL EDUCATION CENTERS BASED ON NUMERICAL LIMITS IMPOSED ON SENDING SCHOOLS

A recipient may not adopt or maintain a system for admission to a secondary vocational education center or program that limits admission to a fixed number of students from each sending school included in the center's service area if such a system disproportionately excludes students from the center on the basis of race, sex, national origin or handicap. (Example: Assume 25 percent of a school district's high school students are black and that most of those black students are enrolled in one high school, the white students, 75 percent of the district's total enrollment, are generally enrolled in the five remaining high schools. This paragraph prohibits a system of admission to the secondary vocational education center that limits eligibility to a fixed and equal number of students from each of the district's six high schools.)

G. REMEDIES FOR VIOLATION OF ELIGIBILITY BASED ON NUMERICAL LIMITS REQUIREMENTS

If the Office for Civil Rights finds a violation of paragraph F, above, the recipient must implement an alternative system of admissions that does not disproportionately exclude students on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap.

H. ELIGIBILITY FOR ADMISSION TO VOCATIONAL EDUCATION CENTERS, BRANCHES OR ANNEXES BASED UPON STUDENT OPTION

A vocational education center, branch or annex, open to all students in a service area and predominantly enrolling minority students or students of one race, national origin or sex, will be presumed unlawfully segregated if: (1) It was established by a recipient for members of one race, national origin or sex; or (2) it has since its construction been attended primarily by members of one race, national origin or sex; or (3) most of its program offerings have traditionally been selected predominantely by members of one race, national origin or sex.

I. REMEDIES FOR FACILITY SEGREGATION UNDER STUDENT OPTION PLANS

If the conditions specified in paragraph IV-H are found and not rebutted by proof of nondiscrimination, the Office for Civil Rights will require the recipient(s) to submit a plan to remedy the segregation. The following are examples of steps that may be included in the plan, where necessary to overcome the discrimination:

(1) elimination of program duplication in the segregated facility and other proximate vocational facilities; (2) relocation or "clustering" of programs or courses; (3) adding programs and courses that traditionally have been identified as intended for members of a particular race, national origin or sex to schools that have traditionally served members of the other sex or traditionally served persons of a different race or national origin; (4) merger of programs into one facility through school closings or new construction; (5) intensive outreach recruitment and counseling; (6) providing free transportation to students whose enrollment would promote desegregation.

[Paragraph J omitted]

K. ELIGIBILITY BASED ON EVALUATION OF EACH APPLICANT UNDER ADMISSIONS CRITERIA

Recipients may not judge candidates for admission to vocational education programs on the basis of criteria that have the effect of disproportionately excluding persons of a particular race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap. However, if a recipient can demonstrate that such criteria have been validated as essential to participation in a given program and that alternative equally valid criteria that do not have such a disproportionate adverse effect are unavailable, the criteria will be judged nondiscriminatory. Examples of admissions criteria that must meet this test are past academic performance, record of disciplinary infractions, counselors' approval, teachers' recommendations, interest inventories, high school diplomas and standardized tests, such as the Test of Adult Basic Education (TABE).

An introductory, preliminary, or exploratory course may not be established as a prerequisite for admission to a program unless the course has been and is available without regard to race, color, national origin, sex, and handicap. However, a course that was formerly only available on a discriminatory basis may be made a prerequisite for admission to a program if the recipient can demonstrate that: (a) the course is essential to participation in the program; *and* (b) the course is presently available to those seeking enrollment for the first time and to those formerly excluded.

L. ELIGIBILITY OF NATIONAL ORIGIN MINORITY PERSONS WITH LIMITED ENGLISH LANGUAGE SKILLS

Recipients may not restrict an applicant's admission to vocational education programs because the applicant, as a member of a national origin minority with limited English language skills, cannot participate in and benefit from vocational instruction to the same extent as a student whose primary language is English. It is the responsibility of the recipient to identify such applicants and assess their ability to participate in vocational instruction.

Acceptable methods of identification include: (1) Identification by administrative staff, teachers, or parents of secondary level students; (2) identification by the student in postsecondary or adult programs; and (3) appropriate diagnostic procedures, if necessary.

Recipients must take steps to open all vocational programs to these national origin minority students. A recipient must demonstrate that a concentration of students with limited English language skills in one or a few programs is not the result of discriminatory limitations upon the opportunities available to such students.

M. REMEDIAL ACTION IN BEHALF OF PERSONS WITH LIMITED ENGLISH LANGUAGE SKILLS

If the Office for Civil Rights finds that a recipient has denied national origin minority persons admission to a vocational school or program because of their limited English language skills or has assigned students to vocational programs solely on the basis of their limited English language skills, the recipient will be required to submit a remedial plan that insures national origin minority students equal access to vocational education programs.

N. EQUAL ACCESS FOR HANDICAPPED STUDENTS

Recipients may not deny handicapped students access to vocational education programs or courses because of architectural or equipment barriers, or because of the need for related aids and services or auxiliary aids. If necessary, recipients must: (1) Modify instructional equipment; (2) modify or adapt the manner in which the courses are offered; (3) house the program in facilities that are readily accessible to mobility impaired students or alter facilities to make them readily accessible to mobility impaired students; and (4) provide auxiliary aids that effectively make lectures and necessary materials available to postsecondary handicapped students; (5) provide related aids or services that assure secondary students an appropriate education.

Academic requirements that the recipient can demonstrate are essential to a program of instruction or to any directly related licensing requirement will not be regarded as discriminatory. However, where possible, a recipient must adjust those requirements to the needs of individual handicapped students.

Access to vocational programs or courses may not be denied handicapped students on the ground that employment opportunities in any occupation or profession may be more limited for handicapped persons than for non-handicapped persons.

O. PUBLIC NOTIFICATION

Prior to the beginning of each school year, recipients must advise students, parents, employees and the general public that all vocational opportunities will be offered without regard to race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap. Announcement of this policy of non-discrimination may be made, for example, in local newspapers, recipient publications and/or other media that reach the general public, program beneficiaries, minorities (including national origin minorities with limited English language skills), women, and handicapped persons. A brief summary of program offerings and admission criteria should be included in the announcement; also the name, address and telephone number of the person designated to coordinate Title IX and Section 504 compliance activity.

If a recipient's service area contains a community of national origin minority persons with limited English language skills, public notification materials must be disseminated to that community in its language and must state that recipients will take steps to assure that the lack of English language skills will not be a barrier to admission and participation in vocational education programs.

V. COUNSELING AND PREVOCATIONAL PROGRAMS

A. RECIPIENT RESPONSIBILITIES

Recipients must insure that their counseling materials and activities (including student program selection and career/employment selection), promotional, and recruitment efforts do not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap.

B. COUNSELING AND PROSPECTS FOR SUCCESS

Recipients that operate vocational education programs must insure that counselors do not direct or urge any student to enroll in a particular career or program, or measure or predict a student's prospects for success in in any career or program based upon the student's race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap. Recipients may not counsel handicapped students toward more restrictive career objectives than nonhandicapped students with similar abilities and interests. If a vocational program disproportionately enrolls male or female students, minority or nonminority students, or handicapped students, recipients must take steps to insure that the disproportion does not result from unlawful discrimination in counseling activities.

C. STUDENT RECRUITMENT ACTIVITIES

Recipients must conduct their student recruitment activities so as not to exclude or limit opportunities on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap. Where recruitment activities involve the presentation or portrayal of vocational and career opportunities, the curricula and programs described should cover a broad range of occupational opportunities and not be limited on the basis of the race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap of the students or potential students to whom the presentation is made. Also, to the extent possible, recruiting teams should include persons of different races, national origins, sexes, and handicaps.

D. COUNSELING OF STUDENTS WITH LIMITED ENGLISH-SPEAKING ABILITY OR HEARING IMPAIRMENTS

Recipients must insure that counselors can effectively communicate with national origin minority students with limited English language skills and with students who have hearing impairments. This requirement may be satisfied by having interpreters available.

E. PROMOTIONAL ACTIVITIES

Recipients may not undertake promotional efforts (including activities of school officials, counselors, and vocational staff) in a manner that creates or perpetuates stereotypes or limitations based on race, color, national origin, sex or handicap. Examples of promotional efforts are career days, parents' night, shop demonstrations, visitations by groups of prospective students and by representatives from business and industry. Materials that are part of promotional efforts may not create or perpetuate stereotypes through text or illustration. To the extent possible they should portray males or females, minorities or handicapped persons in programs and occupations in which these groups traditionally have not been represented. If a recipient's service area contains a community of national origin minority persons with limited English language skills, promotional literature must be distributed to that community in its language.

VI. EQUAL OPPORTUNITY IN THE VOCATIONAL EDUCATION INSTRUCTIONAL SETTING

A. ACCOMMODATIONS FOR HANDICAPPED STUDENTS

Recipients must place secondary level handicapped students in the regular educational environment of any vocational education program to the maximum extent appropriate to the needs of the student unless it can be demonstrated that the education of the handicapped person in the regular environment with the use of supplementary aids and services cannot be achieved satisfactorily. Handicapped students may be placed in a program only after the recipient satisfies the provisions of the Department's Regulation, 45 CFR Part 84, relating to evaluation, placement, and procedural safeguards. If a separate class or facility is identifiable as being for handicapped persons, the facility, the programs, and the services must be comparable to the facilities, programs, and services offered to nonhandicapped students.

B. STUDENT FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE

Recipients may not award financial assistance in the form of loans, grants, scholarships, special funds, subsidies, compensation for work, or prizes to vocational education students on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap, except to overcome the effects of past discrimination. Recipients may administer sex restricted financial assistance where the assistance and restriction are established by will, trust, bequest, or any similar legal instrument, if the overall effect of all financial assistance awarded does not discriminate on the basis of sex. Materials and information used to notify students of opportunities for financial assistance may not contain language or examples that would lead applicants to believe the assistance is provided on a discriminatory basis. If a recipient's service area contains a community of national origin minority persons with limited English language skills, such information must be disseminated to that community in its language.

C. HOUSING IN RESIDENTIAL POSTSECONDARY VOCATIONAL EDUCATION CENTERS

Recipients must extend housing opportunities without discrimination based on race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap. This obligation extends to recipients that provide on-campus housing and/or that have agreements with providers of off-campus housing. In particular, a recipient postsecondary vocational education program that provides on-campus or off-campus housing to its nonhandicapped students must provide, at the same cost and under the same conditions, comparable convenient and accessible housing to handicapped students.

D. COMPARABLE FACILITIES

Recipients must provide changing rooms, showers, and other facilities for students of one sex that are comparable to those provided to students of the other sex. This may be accomplished by alternating use of the same facilities or by providing separate, comparable facilities.

Such facilities must be adapted or modified to the extent necessary to make the vocational education program readily accessible to handicapped persons.

VII. WORK STUDY, COOPERATIVE VOCATIONAL EDUCATION, JOB PLACEMENT, AND APPRENTICE TRAINING

A. RESPONSIBILITIES IN COOPERATIVE VOCATIONAL EDUCATION PROGRAMS, WORK-STUDY PROGRAMS, AND JOB PLACEMENT PROGRAMS

A recipient must insure that: (a) It does not discriminate against its students on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap in making available opportunities in cooperative education, work study and job placement programs; and (b) students participating in cooperative education, work study and job placement programs are not discriminated against by employers or prospective employers on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap in recruitment, hiring, placement, assignment to work tasks, hours of employment, levels of responsibility, and in pay.

If a recipient enters into a written agreement for the referral or assignment of students to an employer, the agreement must contain an assurance from the employer that students will be accepted and assigned to jobs and otherwise treated without regard to race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap.

Recipients may not honor any employer's request for students who are free of handicaps or for students of a particular race, color, national origin, or sex. In the event an employer or prospective employer is or has been subject to court action involving discrimination in employment, school officials should rely on the court's findings if the decision resolves the issue of whether the employer has engaged in unlawful discrimination.

B. APPRENTICE TRAINING PROGRAMS

A recipient may not enter into any agreement for the provision or support of apprentice training for students or union members with any labor union or other sponsor that discriminates against its members or applicants for membership on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap. If a recipient enters into a written agreement with a labor union or other sponsor providing for apprentice training, the agreement must contain an assurance from the union or other sponsor: (1) That it does not engage in such discrimination against its membership or applicants for membership; and (2) that apprentice training will be offered and conducted for its membership free of such discrimination.

VIII. EMPLOYMENT OF FACULTY AND STAFF

A. EMPLOYMENT GENERALLY

Recipients may not engage in any employment practice that discriminates against any employee or applicant for employment on the basis of sex or handicap. Recipients may not engage in any employment practice that discriminates on the basis of race, color, or national origin if such discrimination tends to result in segregation, exclusion or other discrimination against students.

B. RECRUITMENT

Recipients may not limit their recruitment for employees to schools, communities, or companies disproportionately composed of persons of a particular race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap except for the purpose of overcoming the effects of past discrimination. Every source of faculty must be notified that the recipient does not discriminate in employment on the basis of race, color, national origin, sex, or handicap.

C. PATTERNS OF DISCRIMINATION

Whenever the Office for Civil Rights finds that in light of the representation of protected groups in the relevant labor market there is a significant underrepresentation or overrepresentation of protected group persons on the staff of a vocational education school or program, it will presume that the disproportion results from unlawful discrimination. This presumption can be overcome by proof that qualified persons of the particular race, color, national origin, or sex, or that qualified handicapped persons are not in fact available in the relevant labor market.

D. SALARY POLICIES

Recipients must establish and maintain faculty salary scales and policy based upon the conditions and responsibilities of employment, without regard to race, color, national origin, sex or handicap.

E. EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITIES FOR HANDICAPPED APPLICANTS

Recipients must provide equal employment opportunities for teaching and administrative positions to handicapped applicants who can perform the essential functions of the position in question. Recipients must make reasonable accommodation for the physical or mental limitations of handicapped applicants who are otherwise qualified unless recipients can demonstrate that the accommodation would impose an undue hardship.

F. THE EFFECTS OF PAST DISCRIMINATION

Recipients must take steps to overcome the effects of past discrimination in the recruitment, hiring, and assignment of faculty. Such steps may include the recruitment or reassignment of qualified persons of a particular race, national origin, or sex, or who are handicapped.

G. STAFF OF STATE ADVISORY COUNCILS OF VOCATIONAL EDUCATION

State Advisory Councils of Vocational Education are recipients of Federal financial assistance and therefore must comply with Section VIII of the Guidelines.

H EMPLOYMENT AT STATE OPERATED VOCATIONAL EDUCATION CENTERS THROUGH STATE CIVIL-SERVICE AUTHORITIES

Where recruitment and hiring of staff for State operated vocational education centers is conducted by a State civil service employment authority, the State education agency operating the program must insure that recruitment and hiring of staff for the vocational education center is conducted in accordance with the requirements of these Guidelines.

IX. PROPRIETARY VOCATIONAL EDUCATION SCHOOLS

A. RECIPIENT RESPONSIBILITIES

Proprietary vocational education schools that are recipients of Federal financial assistance through Federal student assistance programs or otherwise are subject to all of the requirements of the Department's regulations and these Guidelines.

B. ENFORCEMENT AUTHORITY

Enforcement of the provisions of Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972 and Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 is the responsibility of the Department of Health and Human Services. However, authority to enforce Title VI of the Civil rights Act of 1964 for proprietary vocational education schools has been delegated to the Veterans Administration.

When the Office for Civil Rights receives a Title VI complaint alleging discrimination by a proprietary vocational education school it will forward the complaint to the Veterans Administration and cite the applicable requirements of the Department's regulations and these Guidelines. The complainant will be notified of such action.

[44 FR 17164, Mar. 21, 1979]

ACYF-HS

TRANSMITTAL NOTICE - REQUIREMENTS OF SECTION 504 OF THE REHABILITATION ACT OF 1973 - APPLICATION TO HEAD START

TN-80.4

WHAT WE ARE SENDING

- ACYF Transmittal Notice - The application of Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 to Head Start
- The Regulations for implementing Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (published in the Federal Register May 4, 1977).

MANUAL MATERIAL TO BE REPLACED - None

WHAT YOU SHOULD DO

1. Make this information available to your staff members, and policy councils. It is particularly significant for personnel involved in hiring, those involved in admissions and those setting policies for hiring and for admissions, including the Head Start Policy Council/Committee. It is also of particular importance to any personnel involved in selection, remodeling or construction of facilities.

2. It is important to understand that each Head Start agency must complete a self-evaluation and that the written results must be on file and available for examination by interested persons (section 84.6,(c), page 22679). For Technical Assistance concerning the completion of a self evaluation guide, contact your Resource Access Project (RAP).

BACKGROUND

As a part of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (P.L. 93-112) Congress enacted Section 504, which provides that:

> "No otherwise qualified handicapped individual....shall, solely by reason of his handicap, be excluded from the participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity receiving Federal financial assistance".

For purposes of Section 504 "handicapped individual" is defined as "any person who (A) has a physical or mental impairment which substantially limits one or more of such person's major life activities (B) has a record of such an impairment, or (C) is regarded as having such an impairment". Thus the definition is broader than the definition used for purposes of meeting the Head Start mandate to provide educational opportunities to handicapped children.

Since Head Start has always included handicapped children and has a mandate to provide at least 10% of enrollment opportunities to handicapped children, (enacted by P.L. 93-644 and amended by P.L. 95-568) the basic intent of the requirements of section 504 of P.L. 93-112 is fundamental to Head Start. However, P.L. 93-112, Section 504 is broader than enrolled children and there are aspects of this legislation which warrant particular attention:

1. PROGRAM ACCESSIBILITY

   The Section 504 regulations provide that programs must be accessible to handicapped persons-- including staff, parents, children and collaborating service agencies.

   It does not require that every building or part of a building be physically accessible, but the program services as a whole must be accessible.

   Structural changes to make the program services available must be made only if alternatives, such as reassignment of classes, are not possible.

2. PRESCHOOL EDUCATION

   As a federally-funded agency, Head Start cannot exclude otherwise qualified applicants from its services because of a disability.

   Head Start personnel must become knowledgeable of the provisions of Section 504 and Public Law 94-142 which guarantee every handicapped child a free appropriate public school education, regardless of the nature or severity of the handicap. It is only with full knowledge of these laws that Head Start staff can become effective advocates for handicapped children and their families.

3. STAFF DEVELOPMENT AND TRAINING

   Head Start is committed to an on-going policy of career development for staff and parents. This policy provides extensive opportunities for training and skill development.

   As a federally-funded agency, Head Start must adhere to the provisions of Section 504 which require accessibility to all training and career development services which are sponsored by Head Start. Disabled personnel and clients may not be denied educational/training services on the basis of a handicapping condition.

4. HEALTH, WELFARE AND SOCIAL SERVICES

   The provisions for accessibility and reasonable accommodation that apply to the Head Start agency itself also apply to health, welfare, and social institutions which receive federal funding. This means that Head Start personnel must assure that their clients are not denied the full benefits of these collaborating institutions on the basis of handicap.

   Providers of health, welfare and social services may find it necessary to remove barriers, make house calls, or meet handicapped people in offices that are accessible.

Health, welfare and social services for handicapped people must be equal in quality to those in the institution's overall program, and equitable standards of eligibility are required.

5. EMPLOYMENT PROVISIONS

Head Start employers may not refuse to hire or promote handicapped persons solely because of their disability. Reasonable accommodation may have to be made for the applicant's handicap. Failure to hire or promote an employee who is unqualified or who cannot be helped by reasonable accommodation is not discrimination.

Pre-employment physical examinations cannot be required of handicapped persons--unless the examination is required of all employees.

Pre-employment inquiry cannot be made about a person's handicapping condition although employers may ask about an applicant's ability to perform job-related functions.

6. HEAD START AGENCY SELF-EVALUATION

All recipients of HHS funds must complete a self-evaluation process to determine which of their policies need to be changed to assure equal opportunity for handicapped persons.

The written results of the Head Start agency's self-evaluation must be on file and available for examination by interested persons.

If you wish technical assistance in the design or completion of your agency's self-evaluation contact your Resource Access Project (RAP).

Attachment

504 Regulations (published in the Federal Register May 4, 1977)

federal register

WEDNESDAY, MAY 4, 1977

PART IV

THE NATIONAL ARCHIVES OF THE UNITED STATES • 1934 •

DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION, AND WELFARE

Office of the Secretary

■

NONDISCRIMINATION ON BASIS OF HANDICAP

Programs and Activities Receiving or Benefiting from Federal Financial Assistance

Title 45—Public Welfare

SUBTITLE A—DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION, AND WELFARE, GENERAL ADMINISTRATION

PART 84—NONDISCRIMINATION ON THE BASIS OF HANDICAP IN PROGRAMS AND ACTIVITIES RECEIVING OR BENEFITING FROM FEDERAL FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE

AGENCY: Department of Health, Education, and Welfare.

ACTION: Final rule.

SUMMARY: This regulation implements section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, 29 U.S.C. 706, with regard to federal financial assistance administered by the Department of Health, Education, and Welfare. Section 504 provides that "no otherwise qualified handicapped individual * * * shall, solely by reason of his handicap, be excluded from the participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity receiving federal financial assistance." The regulation, which applies to all recipients of federal assistance from HEW, is intended to ensure that their federally assisted programs and activities are operated without discrimination on the basis of handicap. The regulation defines and forbids acts of discrimination against qualified handicapped persons in employment and in the operation of programs and activities receiving assistance from the Department. As employers, recipients must make reasonable accommodation to the handicaps of applicants and employees unless the accommodation would cause the employer undue hardship. As providers of services, recipients are required to make programs operated in existing facilities accessible to handicapped persons, to ensure that new facilities are constructed so as to be readily accessible to handicapped persons, and to operate their programs in a nondiscriminatory manner.

EFFECTIVE DATE: June 3, 1977.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT:

John Wodatch, Director, Office of New Programs, Office for Civil Rights, Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, Washington, D.C. 20201, 202-245-1821.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

BACKGROUND

As part of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (Public Law 93-112) Congress enacted section 504, which provides that "no otherwise qualified handicapped individual in the United States, as defined in section 7(6), shall, solely by reason of his handicap, be excluded from the participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity receiving Federal financal assistance." In the same statute, Congress defined the term "handicapped individual" solely with relationship to employment; section 7(6) of the 1973 Act defined the term "handicapped individual" as "any individual who (a) has a physical or mental disability which for such individual constitutes or results in substantial handicap to employment and (b) can reasonably be expected to benefit in terms of employability from vocational rehabilitation services * * *." However, the following year, in section 111(a) of the Rehabilitation Act Amendments of 1974 (Public Law 93-516), Congress amended the definition of "handicapped individual" for purposes of section 504 and the other provisions of titles IV and V of the Rehabilitation Act so that the definition is no longer limited to the dimension of employability. For purposes of section 504 of the Act, a "handicapped individual" is defined as "any person who (A) has a physical or mental impairment which substantially limits one or more of such person's major life activities, (B) has a record of such an impairment, or (C) is regarded as having such an impairment." With this amended definition, it became clear that section 504 was intended to forbid discrimination against all handicapped individuals, regardless of their need for or ability to benefit from vocational rehabilitation services.

Section 504 thus represents the first Federal civil rights law protecting the rights of handicapped persons and reflects a national commitment to end discrimination on the basis of handicap. The language of section 504 is almost identical to the comparable nondiscrimination provisions of title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 and title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972 (applying to racial discrimination and to discrimination in education on the basis of sex). It establishes a mandate to end discrimination and to bring handicapped persons into the mainstream of American life. The Secretary intends vigorously to implement and enforce that mandate.

THE PROBLEM OF DISCRIMINATION

From the outset, the Department has recognized that the problem of ending discrimination on the basis of handicap presents considerations that are extremely complex. The diversity of types of handicaps, as well as the wide variety of settings in which programs financed by the Department are offered, make the task of prescribing general rules of nondiscriminatory treatment a difficult one.

There is overwhelming evidence that in the past many handicapped persons have been excluded from programs entirely or denied equal treatment, simply because they are handicapped. But eliminating such gross exclusions and denials of equal treatment is not sufficient to assure genuine equal opportunity. In drafting a regulation to prohibit exclusion and discrimination, it became clear that different or special treatment of handicapped persons, because of their handicaps, may be necessary in a number of contexts in order to ensure equal opportunity. Thus, for example, it is meaningless to "admit" a handicapped person in a wheelchair to a program if the program is offered only on the third floor of a walk-up building. Nor is one providing equal educational opportunity to a deaf child by admitting him or her to a classroom but providing no means for the child to understand the teacher or receive instruction.

These problems have been compounded by the fact that ending discriminatory practices and providing equal access to programs may involve major burdens on some recipients. Those burdens and costs, to be sure, provide no basis for exemption from section 504 or this regulation: Congress' mandate to end discrimination is clear. But it is also clear that factors of burden and cost had to be taken into account in the regulation in prescribing the actions necessary to end discrimination and to bring handicapped persons into full participation in federally financed programs and activities.

The very general language of section 504 itself and the scant legislative history surrounding its enactment provide little guidance as to how these complex issues should be resolved. The rulemaking process in which the Department has engaged has, however, provided a basis for an initial resolution of those issues. The Secretary believes the resulting regulation offers genuine promise of providing an effective and workable program for ending discrimination against handicapped persons.

RULEMAKING HISTORY

On May 17, 1976, the Department published a Notice of Intent to Issue Proposed Rules, seeking public comment on fifteen identified critical issues. 41 FR 20296. A draft proposed rule was attached to the Notice of Intent, as was a statement of the estimated economic and inflationary impact of the draft proposal, prepared in accordance with the requirements of Executive Order 11821.

Over three hundred written comments were received in response to the Notice of Intent. The written comments were supplemented by a series of ten meetings conducted by the Office for Civil Rights at various locations across the country.

On July 16, 1976, the Department published a Notice of Proposed Rulemaking analyzing comments received on the critical issues identified in the Notice of Intent and setting forth a revised proposed regulation for public comment. 41 FR 29548. The initial 60-day comment period was extended in response to numerous requests until October 14, 1976. Additional comments received since that date have also been considered to the extent feasible. A total of more than 700 comments were received in response to the July 16 Notice of Proposed Rulemaking; they have been analyzed along with approximately 150 comments sent in response to May 17 Notice that were received too late to be analyzed during the first comment period. Finally, an additional twenty-two public meetings were held after publication of the July 16 Notice, again designed to inform interested persons and organizations of the proposed regulation and to solicit their comments and recommendations. Transcripts of all these meetings were made and analyzed along with the written comments. Copies of these transcripts, as well as the written comments, are available for public inspection in Room 5400, 330 Independence Avenue, S.W., Washington, D.C. 20201.

The Secretary believes that both the written comments and the views expressed at the public meetings have illuminated the complex issues involved in implementing section 504 in an effective and workable fashion. The Secretary's response to the comments of interested parties, and the explanation for changes in the proposed regulation, are set forth in the section-by-section analysis of each subpart of the regulation, which appears as Appendix A to the regulation. As that analysis explains, a number of provisions in the proposed regulation have been eliminated as duplicative or unnecessary; others have been shortened or clarified. The goal throughout has been to design a regulation that preserves the essential elements of a strong and effective program for ending discrimination, while avoiding the imposition of unnecessary or counterproductive administrative obligations on recipients.

Overview of Regulation

The regulation is divided into seven subparts. Subpart A (General Provisions) defines the important terms that are used throughout the regulation and states in general terms the discriminatory acts that are prohibited. It also sets forth what the Secretary believes is a simple, workable system of administration: assurances of compliance, self-evaluation by recipients, establishment of grievance procedures, and notification of employes and beneficiaries of the recipient's policy of nondiscrimination on the basis of handicap. The regulation covers all types of physical and mental impairments, including drug addition and alcoholism.

Subpart B, dealing with employment practices, bars discrimination by recipients of HEW assistance in recruitment, hiring, compensation, job assignment and classification, and fringe benefits. It also requires employers to make reasonable accommodation to qualified handicapped applicants or employees unless it can be demonstrated that the accommodation would impose an undue hardship on the employer.

Subpart C sets forth the central requirement of the regulation—program accessibility. All new facilities are required to be constructed so as to be readily accessible to and usable by handicapped persons. Every existing facility need not be made physically accessible, but all recipients must ensure that programs conducted in those facilities are made accessible. While flexibility is allowed in choosing methods that in fact make programs in existing facilities accessible, structural changes in such facilities must be undertaken if no other means of assuring program accessibility is available.

Subparts A, B, and C of the regulation, as well as subpart G—which incorporates by reference the Department's procedures under title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964—apply to all recipients of financial assistance from the Department. The remaining subparts of the regulation contain more specific requirements applicable to three major classes of recipients.

Subpart D is concerned with preschool, elementary, and secondary education. Its provisions have been closely coordinated with those of the Education for All Handicapped Children Act of 1975 (Pub. L. 94-142). They require, basically, that recipients operating public education programs provide a free appropriate education to each qualified handicapped child in the most normal setting appropriate. The regulation also sets forth evaluation requirements designed to ensure the proper classification and placement of handicapped children, and due process procedures for resolving disputes over placement of students. While the Department does not intend to review individual placement decisions, it does intend to ensure that testing and evaluation procedures required by the regulation are carried out, and that school systems provide an adequate opportunity for parents to challenge and seek review of these critical decisions. And the Department will place a high priority on pursuing cases in which a pattern or practice of discriminatory placements may be involved.

Subpart E deals with postsecondary education. It proscribes discrimination against handicapped persons in recruitment, admission and treatment after admission. Colleges and universities are required to make reasonable adjustments to permit handicapped persons to fulfill academic requirements, and to ensure that they are not effectively excluded from programs because of the absence of auxiliary aids. Groups of colleges may not establish consortia exclusively for handicapped students.

Finally, Subpart F deals with health, welfare and other social service programs. It forbids discrimination in providing such services and requires larger recipients to provide auxiliary aids to handicapped individuals where necessary. Specific provisions require hospitals not to discriminate against addicts or alcoholics who need medical services and to establish emergency room procedures for communication with persons with impaired hearing. Under Subpart C, health and social service providers may satisfy their program accessibility obligations with respect to existing facilities by arranging to meet beneficiaries in accessible locations. In addition, small providers may refer patients or other beneficiaries to accessible providers as a "last resort" alternative to making significant structural changes.

Executive Order 11914

Under Executive Order 11914 (41 FR 17871, April 28, 1976), the Department is required to issue general standards for other departments and agencies of the Federal government to follow in promulgating regulations implementing Section 504. This responsibility will be fulfilled promptly and independently from this regulation. The Department does, however, expect to incorporate the definition of handicapped person adopted in § 84.3 (j) of this regulation in the standards for determining what persons are covered by the Act. The Secretary also anticipates that the relevant provisions of Subparts A, B and C of the regulation will be the basis for guidelines, pursuant to the Executive Order, as to what are discriminatory practices.

Economic Impact

The Department has previously certified, in issuing the Notice of Intent and the Notice of Proposed Rulemaking, that the economic and inflationary impact of the proposed regulation had been carefully evaluated in accordance with OMB Circular A-107. That analysis, which was printed at 41 FR 20312 (May 17, 1976), has been revised and updated, and is available on request.

Section-by-Section Analysis of Regulation

Appended to the final regulation is a section-by-section analysis of the regulation, which describes the basis and purpose of each section, discusses significant comments, and explains the basis for any changes made from the proposed regulation published in July 1976.

In consideration of the foregoing, Part 84, to read as set forth below, is hereby ordered to be added to Title 45 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

Dated: April 28, 1977.

JOSEPH A. CALIFANO, Jr.,
Secretary, Department of Health, Education, and Welfare.

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
84.1 Purpose.
84.2 Application.
84.3 Definitions.
84.4 Discrimination prohibited.
84.5 Assurances required.
84.6 Remedial action, voluntary action, and self-evaluation.
84.7 Designation of responsible employee and adoption of grievance procedures.
84.8 Notice.
84.9 Administrative requirements for small recipients.
84.10 Effect of state or local law or other requirements and effect of employment opportunities.

Subpart B—Employment Practices

84.11 Discrimination prohibited.
84.12 Reasonable accommodation.
84.13 Employment criteria.
84.14 Preemployment inquiries.
84.15–84.20 [Reserved]

Subpart C—Program Accessibility

84.21 Discrimination prohibited.
84.22 Existing facilities.
84.23 New construction.
84.24–84.30 [Reserved]

Subpart D—Preschool, Elementary, and Secondary Education

84.31 Application of this subpart.
84.32 Location and notification.
84.33 Free appropriate public education.
84.34 Educational setting.
84.35 Evaluation and placement.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Sec.
84.36 Procedural safeguards.
84.37 Nonacademic services.
84.38 Preschool and adult education programs.
84.39 Private bducation programs.
84.40 [Reserved]

Subpart E—Postsecondary Education

84.41 Application of this subpart.
84.42 Admissions and recruitment.
84.43 Treatment of students; general.
84.44 Academic adjustments.
84.45 Housing.
84.46 Financial and employment assistance to students.
84.47 Nonacademic services.
84.48–84.50 [Reserved]

Subpart F—Health, Welfare, and Social Services

84.51 Application of this subpart.
84.52 Health, welfare, and other social services.
84.53 Drug and alcohol addicts.
84.54 Education of institutionalized persons.
84.55–84.60 [Reserved]

Subpart G—Procedures

84.61 Procedures.
84.62–99 [Reserved]

APPENDIX A—ANALYSIS OF FINAL REGULATION

AUTHORITY: Sec. 504, Rehabilitation Act of 1973, Pub. L. 93–112, 87 Stat. 394 (29 U.S.C. 794); sec. 111(a), Rehabilitation Act Amendments of 1974, Pub. L. 93-516, 88 Stat. 1619 (29 U.S.C. 706); sec. 606, Education of the Handicapped Act (20 U.S.C. 1405), as amended by Pub. L. 94–142, 89 Stat 795; sec. 321, Comprehensive Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism Prevention, Treatment, and Rehabilitation Act of 1970, 84 Stat. 182 (42 U.S.C. 4581), as amended; sec. 407, Drug Abuse Office and Treatment Act of 1972, 86 Stat. 78 (21 U.S.C. 1174), as amended.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 84.1 Purpose.

The purpose of this part is to effectuate section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, which is designed to eliminate discrimination on the basis of handicap in any program or activity receiving Federal financial assistance.

§ 84.2 Application.

This part applies to each recipient of Federal financial assistance from the Department of Health, Education, and Welfare and to each program or activity that receives or benefits from such assistance.

§ 84.3 Definitions.

As used in this part, the term:

(a) "The Act" means the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, Pub. L. 93–112, as amended by the Rehabilitation Act Amendments of 1974, Public Law 93–516, 29 U.S.C. 794.

(b) "Section 504" means section 504 of the Act.

(c) "Education of the Handicapped Act" means that statute as amended by the Education for • all Handicapped Children Act of 1975, Pub. L. 94–142, 20 U.S.C. 1401 et seq.

(d) "Department" means the Department of Health, Education, and Welfare.

(e) "Director" means the Director of the Office for Civil Rights of the Department.

(f) "Recipient" means any state or its political subdivision, any instrumentality of a state or its political subdivision, any public or private agency, institution, organization, or other entity, or any person to which Federal financial assistance is extended directly or through another recipient, including any successor, assignee, or transferee of a recipient, but excluding the ultimate beneficiary of the assistance.

(g) "Applicant for assistance" means one who submits an application, request, or plan required to be approved by a Department official or by a recipient as a condition to becoming a recipient.

(h) "Federal financial assistance" means any grant, loan, contract (other than a procurement contract or a contract of insurance or guaranty), or any other arrangement by which the Department provides or otherwise makes available assistance in the form of:

(1) Funds;

(2) Services of Federal personnel; or

(3) Real and personal property or any interest in or use of such property, including:

(i) Transfers or leases of such property for less than fair market value or for reduced consideration; and

(ii) Proceeds from a subsequent transfer or lease of such property if the Federal share of its fair market value is not returned to the Federal Government.

(i) "Facility" means all or any portion of buildings, structures, equipment, roads, walks, parking lots, or other real or personal property or interest in such property.

(j) "Handicapped person." (1) "Handicapped persons" means any person who (i) has a physical or mental impairment which substantially limits one or more major life activities, (ii) has a record of such an impairment, or (iii) is regarded as having such an impairment.

(2) As used in paragraph (j)(1) of this section, the phrase:

(i) "Physical or mental impairment" means (A) any physiological disorder or condition, cosmetic disfigurement, or anatomical loss affecting one or more of the following body systems: neurological; musculoskeletal; special sense organs; respiratory, including speech organs; cardiovascular; reproductive, digestive; genito-urinary; hemic and lymphatic; skin; and endocrine; or (B) any mental or psychological disorder, such as mental retardation, organic brain syndrome, emotional or mental illness, and specific learning disabilities.

(ii) "Major life activities" means functions such as caring for one's self, performing manual tasks, walking, seeing, hearing, speaking, breathing, learning, and working.

(iii) "Has a record of such an impairment" means has a history of, or has been misclassified as having, a mental or physical impairment that substantially limits one or more major life activities.

(iv) "Is regarded as having an impairment" means (A) has a physical or mental impairment that does not substantially limit major life activities but that is treated by a recipient as constituting such a limitation; (B) has a physical or mental impairment that substantially limits major life acitivities only as a result of the attitudes of others toward such impairment; or (C) has none of the impairments defined in paragraph (j)(2)(i) of this section but is treated by a recipient as having such an impairment.

(k) "Qualified handicapped person" means:

(1) With respect to employment, a handicapped person who, with reasonable accommodation, can perform the essential functions of the job in question;

(2) With respect to public preschool elementary, secondary, or adult educational services, a handicapped person (i) of an age during which nonhandicapped persons are provided such services, (ii) of any age during which it is mandatory under state law to provide such services to handicapped persons, or (iii) to whom a state is required to provide a free appropriate public education under § 612 of the Education of the Handicapped Act; and

(3) With respect to postsecondary and vocational education services, a handicapped person who meets the academic and technical standards requisite to admission or participation in the recipient's education program or activity;

(4) With respect to other services, a handicapped person who meets the essential eligibility requirements for the receipt of such services.

(l) "Handicap" means any condition or characteristic that renders a person a handicapped person as defined in paragraph (j) of this section.

§ 84.4 Discrimination prohibited.

(a) *General.* No qualified handicapped person shall, on the basis of handicap, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity which receives or benefits from Federal financial assistance.

(b) *Discriminatory actions prohibited.* (1) A recipient, in providing any aid, benefit, or service, may not, directly or through contractual, licensing, or other arrangements, on the basis of handicap:

(i) Deny a qualified handicapped person the opportunity to participate in or benefit from the aid, benefit, or service;

(ii) Afford a qualified handicapped person an opportunity to participate in or benefit from the aid, benefit, or service that is not equal to that afforded others;

(iii) Provide a qualified handicapped person with an aid, benefit, or service that is not as effective as that provided to others;

(iv) Provide different or separate aid, benefits, or services to handicapped persons or to any class of handicapped persons unless such action is necessary to provide qualified handicapped persons with aid, benefits, or services that are as effective as those provided to others;

(v) Aid or perpetuate discrimination against a qualified handicapped person by providing significant assistance to an agency, organization, or person that discriminates on the basis of handicap in providing any aid, benefit, or service to beneficiaries of the recipients program;

(vi) Deny a qualified handicapped person the opportunity to participate as a member of planning or advisory boards; or

(vii) Otherwise limit a qualified handicapped person in the enjoyment of any right, privilege, advantage, or opportunity enjoyed by others receiving an aid, benefit, or service.

(2) For purposes of this part, aids, benefits, and services, to be equally effective, are not required to produce the identical result or level of achievement for handicapped and nonhandicapped persons, but must afford handicapped persons equal opportunity to obtain the same result, to gain the same benefit, or to reach the same level of achievement, in the most integrated setting appropriate to the person's needs.

(3) Despite the existence of separate or different programs or activities provided in accordance with this part, a recipient may not deny a qualified handicapped person the opportunity to participate in such programs or activities that are not separate or different.

(4) A recipient may not, directly or through contractual or other arrangements, utilize criteria or methods of administration (i) that have the effect of subjecting qualified handicapped persons to discrimination on the basis of handicap, (ii) that have the purpose or effect of defeating or substantially impairing accomplishment of the objectives of the recipient's program with respect to handicapped persons, or (iii) that perpetuate the discrimination of another recipient if both recipients are subject to common administrative control or are agencies of the same State.

(5) In determining the site or location of a facility, an applicant for assistance or a recipient may not make selections (i) that have the effect of excluding handicapped persons from, denying them the benefits of, or otherwise subjecting them to discrimination under any program or activity that receives or benefits from Federal financial assistance or (ii) that have the purpose or effect of defeating or substantially impairing the accomplishment of the objectives of the program or activity with respect to handicapped persons.

(6) As used in this section, the aid, benefit, or service provided under a program or activity receiving or benefiting from Federal financial assistance includes any aid, benefit, or service provided in or through a facility that has been constructed, expanded, altered, leased or rented, or otherwise acquired, in whole or in part, with Federal financial assistance.

(c) *Programs limited by Federal law.* The exclusion of nonhandicapped persons from the benefits of a program limited by Federal statute or executive order to handicapped persons or the exclusion of a specific class of handicapped persons from a program limited by Federal statute or executive order to a different class of handicapped persons is not prohibited by this part.

§ 84.5 Assurances required.

(a) *Assurances.* An applicant for Federal financial assistance for a program or activity to which this part applies shall submit an assurance, on a form specified by the Director, that the program will be operated in compliance with this part. An applicant may incorporate these assurances by reference in subsequent applications to the Department.

(b) *Duration of obligation.* (1) In the case of Federal financial assistance extended in the form of real property or to provide real property or structures on the property, the assurance will obligate the recipient or, in the case of a subsequent transfer, the transferee, for the period during which the real property or structures are used for the purpose for which Federal financial assistance is extended or for another purpose involving the provision of similar services or benefits.

(2) In the case of Federal financial assistance extended to provide personal property, the assurance will obligate the recipient for the period during which it retains ownership or possession of the property.

(3) In all other cases the assurance will obligate the recipient for the period during which Federal financial assistance is extended.

(c) *Covenants.* (1) Where Federal financial assistance is provided in the form of real property or interest in the property from the Department, the instrument effecting or recording this transfer shall contain a covenant running with the land to assure nondiscrimination for the period during which the real property is used for a purpose for which the Federal financial assistance is extended or for another purpose involving the provision of similar services or benefits.

(2) Where no transfer of property is involved but property is purchased or improved with Federal financial assistance, the recipient shall agree to include the covenant described in paragraph (b)(2) of this section in the instrument effecting or recording any subsequent transfer of the property.

(3) Where Federal financial assistance is provided in the form of real property or interest in the property from the Department, the covenant shall also include a condition coupled with a right to be reserved by the Department to revert title to the property in the event of a breach of the covenant. If a transferee of real property proposes to mortgage or otherwise encumber the real property as security for financing construction of new, or improvement of existing, facilities on the property for the purposes for which the property was transferred, the Director may, upon request of the transferee and if necessary to accomplish such financing and upon such conditions as he or she deems appropriate, agree to forbear the exercise of such right to revert title for so long as the lien of such mortgage or other encumbrance remains effective.

§ 84.6 Remedial action, voluntary action, and self-evaluation.

(a) *Remedial action.* (1) If the Director finds that a recipient has discriminated against persons on the basis of handicap in violation of section 504 or this part, the recipient shall take such remedial action as the Director deems necessary to overcome the effects of the discrimination.

(2) Where a recipient is found to have discriminated against persons on the basis of handicap in violation of section 504 or this part and where another recipient exercises control over the recipient that has discriminated, the Director, where appropriate, may require either or both recipients to take remedial action.

(3) The Director may, where necessary to overcome the effects of discrimination in violation of section 504 or this part, require a recipient to take remedial action (i) with respect to handicapped persons who are no longer participants in the recipient's program but who were participants in the program when such discrimination occurred or (ii) with respect to handicapped persons who would have been participants in the program had the discrimination not occurred.

(b) *Voluntary action.* A recipient may take steps, in addition to any action that is required by this part, to overcome the effects of conditions that resulted in limited participation in the recipient's program or activity by qualified handicapped persons.

(c) *Self-evalution.* (1) A recipient shall, within one year of the effective date of this part:

(i) Evaluate, with the assistance of interested persons, including handicapped persons or organizations representing handicapped persons, its current policies and practices and the effects thereof that do not or may not meet the requirements of this part;

(ii) Modify, after consultation with interested persons, including handicapped persons or organizations representing handicapped persons, any policies and practices that do not meet the requirements of this part; and

(iii) Take, after consultation with interested persons, including handicapped persons or organizations representing handicapped persons, appropriate remedial steps to eliminate the effects of any discrimination that resulted from adherence to these policies and practices.

(2) A recipient that employs fifteen or more persons shall, for at least three years followed completion of the evaluation required under paragraph (c)(1) of this section, maintain on file, make available for public inspection, and provide to the Director upon request: (i) a list of the interested persons consulted, (ii) a description of areas examined and any problems identified, and (iii) a description of any modifications made and of any remedial steps taken.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

§ 84.7 Designation of responsible employee and adoption of grievance procedures.

(a) *Designation of responsible employee*. A recipient that employs fifteen or more persons shall designate at least one person to coordinate its efforts to comply with this part.

(b) *Adoption of grievance procedures*. A recipient that employs fifteen or more persons shall adopt grievance procedures that incorporate appropriate due process standards and that provide for the prompt and equitable resolution of complaints alleging any action prohibited by this part. Such procedures need not be established with respect to complaints from applicants for employment or from applicants for admission to postsecondary educational institutions.

§84.8 Notice.

(a) A recipient that employs fifteen or more persons shall take appropriate initial and continuing steps to notify participants, beneficiaries, applicants, and employees, including those with impaired vision or hearing, and unions or professional organizations holding collective bargaining or professional agreements with the recipient that it does not discriminate on the basis of handicap in violation of section 504 and this part. The notification shall state, where appropriate, that the recipient does not discriminate in admission or access to, or treatment or employment in, its programs and activities. The notification shall also include an identification of the responsible employee designated pursuant to § 84.7(a). A recipient shall make the initial notification required by this paragraph within 90 days of the effective date of this part. Methods of initial and continuing notification may include the posting of notices, publication in newspapers and magazines, placement of notices in recipients' publication, and distribution of memoranda or other written communications.

(b) If a recipient publishes or uses recruitment materials or publications containing general information that it makes available to participants, beneficiaries, applicants, or employees, it shall include in those materials or publications a statement of the policy described in paragraph (a) of this section. A recipient may meet the requirement of this paragraph either by including appropriate inserts in existing materials and publications or by revising and reprinting the materials and publications.

§ 84.9 Administrative requirements for small recipients.

The Director may require any recipient with fewer than fifteen employees, or any class of such recipients, to comply with §§ 84.7 and 84.8, in whole or in part, when the Director finds a violation of this part or finds that such compliance will not significantly impair the ability of the recipient or class of recipients to provide benefits or services.

§ 84.10 Effect of state or local law or other requirements and effect of employment opportunities.

(a) The obligation to comply with this part is not obviated or alleviated by the existence of any state or local law or other requirement that, on the basis of handicap, imposes prohibitions or limits upon the eligibility of qualified handicapped persons to receive services or to practice any occupation or profession.

(b) The obligation to comply with this part is not obviated or alleviated because employment opportunities in any occupation or profession are or may be more limited for handicapped persons than for nonhandicapped persons.

Subpart B—Employment Practices

§ 84.11 Discrimination prohibited.

(a) *General*. (1) No qualified handicapped person shall, on the basis of handicap, be subjected to discrimination in employment under any program or activity to which this part applies.

(2) A recipient that receives assistance under the Education of the Handicapped Act shall take positive steps to employ and advance in employment qualified handicapped persons in programs assisted under that Act.

(3) A recipient shall make all decisions concerning employment under any program or activity to which this part applies in a manner which ensures that discrimination on the basis of handicap does not occur and may not limit, segregate, or classify applicants or employees in any way that adversely affects their opportunities or status because of handicap.

(4) A recipient may not participate in a contractual or other relationship that has the effect of subjecting qualified handicapped applicants or employees to discrimination prohibited by this subpart. The relationships referred to in this subparagraph include relationships with employment and referral agencies, with labor unions, with organizations providing or administering fringe benefits to employees of the recipient, and with organizations providing training and apprenticeship programs.

(b) *Specific activities*. The provisions of this subpart apply to:

(1) Recruitment, advertising, and the processing of applications for employment;

(2) Hiring, upgrading, promotion, award of tenure, demotion, transfer, layoff, termination, right of return from layoff, and rehiring;

(3) Rates of pay or any other form of compensation and changes in compensation;

(4) Job assignments, job classifications, organizational structures, position descriptions, lines of progression, and seniority lists;

(5) Leaves of absence, sick leave, or any other leave;

(6) Fringe benefits available by virtue of employment, whether or not administered by the recipient;

(7) Selection and financial support for training, including apprenticeship, professional meetings, conferences, and other related activities, and selection for leaves of absence to pursue training;

(8) Employer sponsored activities, including social or recreational programs; and

(9) Any other term, condition, or privilege of employment.

(c) A recipient's obligation to comply with this subpart is not affected by any inconsistent term of any collective bargaining agreement to which it is a party.

§ 84.12 Reasonable accommodation.

(a) A recipient shall make reasonable accommodation to the known physical or mental limitations of an otherwise qualified handicapped applicant or employee unless the recipient can demonstrate that the accommodation would impose an undue hardship on the operation of its program.

(b) Reasonable accommodation may include: (1) making facilities used by employees readily accessible to and usable by handicapped persons, and (2) job restructuring, part-time or modified work schedules, acquisition or modification of equipment or devices, the provision of readers or interpreters, and other similar actions.

(c) In determining pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section whether an accommodation would impose an undue hardship on the operation of a recipient's program, factors to be considered include:

(1) The overall size of the recipient's program with respect to number of employees, number and type of facilities, and size of budget;

(2) The type of the recipient's operation, including the composition and structure of the recipient's workforce; and

(3) The nature and cost of the accommodation needed.

(d) A recipient may not deny any employment opportunity to a qualified handicapped employee or applicant if the basis for the denial is the need to make reasonable accommodation to the physical or mental limitations of the employee or applicant.

§ 84.13 Employment criteria.

(a) A recipient may not make use of any employment test or other selection criterion that screens out or tends to screen out handicapped persons or any class of handicapped persons unless: (1) the test score or other selection criterion, as used by the recipient, is shown to be job-related for the position in question, and (2) alternative job-related tests or criteria that do not screen out or tend to screen out as many handicapped persons are not shown by the Director to be available.

(b) A recipient shall select and administer tests concerning employment so as best to ensure that, when administered to an applicant or employee who has a handicap that impairs sensory, manual, or speaking skills, the test results accu-

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

rately reflect the applicant's or employee's job skills, aptitude, or whatever other factor the test purports to measure, rather than reflecting the applicant's or employee's impaired sensory, manual, or speaking skills (except where those skills are the factors that the test purports to measure).

§ 84.14 Preemployment inquiries.

(a) Except as provided in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, a recipient may not conduct a preemployment medical examination or may not make preemployment inquiry of an applicant as to whether the applicant is a handicapped person or as to the nature or severity of a handicap. A recipient may, however, make preemployment inquiry into an applicant's ability to perform job-related functions.

(b) When a recipient is taking remedial action to correct the effects of past discrimination pursuant to § 84.6 (a), when a recipient is taking voluntary action to overcome the effects of conditions that resulted in limited participation in its federally assisted program or activity pursuant to § 84.6(b), or when a recipient is taking affirmative action pursuant to section 503 of the Act, the recipient may invite applicants for employment to indicate whether and to what extent they are handicapped, *Provided*, That:

(1) The recipient states clearly on any written questionnaire used for this purpose or makes clear orally if no written questionnaire is used that the information requested is intended for use solely in connection with its remedial action obligations or its voluntary or affirmative action efforts; and

(2) The recipient states clearly that the information is being requested on a voluntary basis, that it will be kept confidential as provided in paragraph (d) of this section, that refusal to provide it will not subject the applicant or employee to any adverse treatment, and that it will be used only in accordance with this part.

(c) Nothing in this section shall prohibit a recipient from conditioning an offer of employment on the results of a medical examination conducted prior to the employee's entrance on duty, *Provided*, That: (1) All entering employees are subjected to such an examination regardless of handicap, and (2) the results of such an examination are used only in accordance with the requirements of this part.

(d) Information obtained in accordance with this section as to the medical condition or history of the applicant shall be collected and maintained on separate forms that shall be accorded confidentiality as medical records, except that:

(1) Supervisors and managers may be informed regarding restrictions on the work or duties of handicapped persons and regarding necessary accommodations;

(2) First aid and safety personnel may be informed, where appropriate, if the condition might require emergency treatment; and

(3) Government officials investigating compliance with the Act shall be provided relevant information upon request.

§§ 84.15—84.20 [Reserved]

Subpart C—Program Accessibility

§ 84.21 Discrimination prohibited.

No qualified handicapped person shall, because a recipient's facilities are inaccessible to or unusable by handicapped persons, be denied the benefits of, be excluded from participation in, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity to which this part applies.

§ 84.22 Existing facilities.

(a) *Program accessibility*. A recipient shall operate each program or activity to which this part applies so that the program or activity, when viewed in its entirety, is readily accessible to handicapped persons. This paragraph does not require a recipient to make each of its existing facilities or every part of a facility accessible to and usable by handicapped persons.

(b) *Methods*. A recipient may comply with the requirement of paragraph (a) of this section through such means as redesign of equipment, reassignment of classes or other services to accessible buildings, assignment of aides to beneficiaries, home visits, delivery of health, welfare, or other social services at alternate accessible sites, alteration of existing facilities and construction of new facilities in conformance with the requirements of § 84.23, or any other methods that result in making its program or activity accessible to handicapped persons. A recipient is not required to make structural changes in existing facilities where other methods are effective in achieving compliance with paragraph (a) of this section. In choosing among available methods for meeting the requirement of paragraph (a) of this section, a recipient shall give priority to those methods that offer programs and activities to handicapped persons in the most integrated setting appropriate.

(c) *Small health, welfare, or other social service providers*. If a recipient with fewer than fifteen employees that provides health, welfare, or other social services finds, after consultation with a handicapped person seeking its services, that there is no method of complying with paragraph (a) of this section other than making a significant alteration in its existing facilities, the recipient may, as an alternative, refer the handicapped person to other providers of those services that are accessible.

(d) *Time period*. A recipient shall comply with the requirement of paragraph (a) of this section within sixty days of the effective date of this part except that where structural changes in facilities are necessary, such changes shall be made within three years of the effective date of this part, but in any event as expeditiously as possible.

(e) *Transition plan*. In the event that structural changes to facilities are necessary to meet the requirement of paragraph (a) of this section, a recipient shall develop, within six months of the effective date of this part, a transition plan setting forth the steps necessary to complete such changes. The plan shall be developed with the assistance of interested persons, including handicapped persons or organizations representing handicapped persons. A copy of the transition plan shall be made available for public inspection. The plan shall, at a minimum:

(1) Identify physical obstacles in the recipient's facilities that limit the accessibility of its program or activity to handicapped persons;

(2) Describe in detail the methods that will be used to make the facilities accessible;

(3) Specify the schedule for taking the steps necessary to achieve full program accessibility and, if the time period of the transition plan is longer than one year, identify steps that will be taken during each year of the transition period; and

(4) Indicate the person responsible for implementation of the plan.

(f) *Notice*. The recipient shall adopt and implement procedures to ensure that interested persons, including persons with impaired vision or hearing, can obtain information as to the existence and location of services, activities, and facilities that are accessible to and usable by handicapped persons.

§ 84.23 New construction.

(a) *Design and construction*. Each facility or part of a facility constructed by, on behalf of, or for the use of a recipient shall be designed and constructed in such manner that the facility or part of the facility is readily accessible to and usable by handicapped persons, if the construction was commenced after the effective date of this part.

(b) *Alteration*. Each facility or part of a facility which is altered by, on behalf of, or for the use of a recipient after the effective date of this part in a manner that affects or could affect the usability of the facility or part of the facility shall, to the maximum extent feasible, be altered in such manner that the altered portion of the facility is readily accessible to and usable by handicapped persons.

(c) *American National Standards Institute accessibility standards*. Design, construction, or alteration of facilities in conformance with the "American National Standard Specifications for Making Buildings and Facilities Accessible to, and Usable by, the Physically Handicapped," published by the American National Standards Institute, Inc. (ANSI A117.1-1961 (R1971)),[1] which is incorporated by reference in this part, shall constitute compliance with paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section. Departures from particular requirements of those standards by the use of other methods shall be permitted when it is clearly evident that equivalent access to the facility or part of the facility is thereby provided.

---

[1] Copies obtainable from American National Standards Institute, Inc., 1430 Broadway, New York, N.Y. 10018.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

§§ 84.24–84.30. [Reserved]

Subpart D—Preschool, Elementary, and Secondary Education

§ 84.31 Application of this subpart.

Subpart D applies to preschool, elementary, secondary, and adult education programs and activities that receive or benefit from federal financial assistance and to recipients that operate, or that receive or benefit from federal financial assistance for the operation of, such programs or activities.

§ 84.32 Location and notification.

A recipient that operates a public elementary or secondary education program shall annually:

(a) Undertake to identify and locate every qualified handicapped person residing in the recipient's jurisdiction who is not receiving a public education; and

(b) Take appropriate steps to notify handicapped persons and their parents or guardians of the recipient's duty under this subpart.

§ 84.33 Free appropriate public education.

(a) *General:* A recipient that operates a public elementary or secondary education program shall provide a free appropriate public education to each qualified handicapped person who is in the recipient's jurisdiction, regardless of the nature or severity of the person's handicap.

(b) *Appropriate education.* (1) For the purpose of this subpart, the provision of an appropriate education is the provision of regular or special education and related aids and services that (i) are designed to meet individual educational needs of handicapped persons as adequately as the needs of nonhandicapped persons are met and (ii) are based upon adherence to procedures that satisfy the requirements of §§ 84.34, 84.35, and 84.36.

(2) Implementation of an individualized education program developed in accordance with the Education of the the Handicapped Act is one means of meeting the standard established in paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section.

(3) A recipient may place a handicapped person in or refer such person to a program other than the one that it operates as its means of carrying out the requirements of this subpart. If so, the recipient remains responsible for ensuring that the requirements of this subpart are met with respect to any handicapped person so placed or referred.

(c) *Free education*—(1) *General.* For the purpose of this section, the provision of a free education is the provision of educational and related services without cost to the handicapped person or to his or her parents or guardian, except for those fees that are imposed on nonhandicapped persons or their parents or guardian. It may consist either of the provision of free services or, if a recipient places a handicapped person in or refers such person to a program not operated by the recipient as its means of carrying out the requirements of this subpart, of payment for the costs of the program. Funds available from any public or private agency may be used to meet the requirements of this subpart. Nothing in this section shall be construed to relieve an insurer or similar third party from an otherwise valid obligation to provide or pay for services provided to a handicapped person.

(2) *Transportation.* If a recipient places a handicapped person in or refers such person to a program not operated by the recipient as its means of carrying out the requirements of this subpart, the recipient shall ensure that adequate transportation to and from the program is provided at no greater cost than would be incurred by the person or his or her parents or guardian if the person were placed in the program operated by the recipient.

(3) *Residential placement.* If placement in a public or private residential program is necessary to provide a free appropriate public education to a handicapped person because of his or her handicap, the program, including nonmedical care and room and board, shall be provided at no cost to the person or his or her parents or guardian.

(4) *Placement of handicapped persons by parents.* If a recipient has made available, in conformance with the requirements of this section and § 84.34, a free appropriate public education to a handicapped person and the person's parents or guardian choose to place the person in a private school, the recipient is not required to pay for the person's education in the private school. Disagreements between a parent or guardian and a recipient regarding whether the recipient has made such a program available or otherwise regarding the question of financial responsibility are subject to the due process procedures of § 84.36.

(d) *Compliance.* A recipient may not exclude any qualified handicapped person from a public elementary or secondary education after the effective date of this part. A recipient that is not, on the effective date of this regulation, in full compliance with the other requirements of the preceding paragraphs of this section shall meet such requirements at the earliest practicable time and in no event later than September 1, 1978.

§ 84.34 Educational setting.

(a) *Academic setting.* A recipient to which this subpart applies shall educate, or shall provide for the education of, each qualified handicapped person in its jurisdiction with persons who are not handicapped to the maximum extent appropriate to the needs of the handicapped person. A recipient shall place a handicapped person in the regular educational environment operated by the recipient unless it is demonstrated by the recipient that the education of the person in the regular environment with the use of supplementary aids and services cannot be achieved satisfactorily. Whenever a recipient places a person in a setting other than the regular educational environment pursuant to this paragraph, it shall take into account the proximity of the alternate setting to the person's home.

(b) *Nonacademic settings.* In providing or arranging for the provision of nonacademic and extracurricular services and activities, including meals, recess periods, and the services and activities set forth in § 84.37(a)(2), a recipient shall ensure that handicapped persons participate with nonhandicapped persons in such activities and services to the maximum extent appropriate to the needs of the handicapped person in question.

(c) *Comparable facilities.* If a recipient, in compliance with paragraph (a) of this section, operates a facility that is identifiable as being for handicapped persons, the recipient shall ensure that the facility and the services and activities provided therein are comparable to the other facilities, services, and activities of the recipient.

§ 84.35 Evaluation and placement.

(a) *Preplacement evaluation.* A recipient that operates a public elementary or secondary education program shall conduct an evaluation in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section of any person who, because of handicap, needs or is believed to need special education or related services before taking any action with respect to the initial placement of the person in a regular or special education program and any subsequent significant change in placement.

(b) *Evaluation procedures.* A recipient to which this subpart applies shall establish standards and procedures for the evaluation and placement of persons who, because of handicap, need or are believed to need special education or related services which ensure that:

(1) Tests and other evaluation materials have been validated for the specific purpose for which they are used and are administered by trained personnel in conformance with the instructions provided by their producer;

(2) Tests and other evaluation materials include those tailored to assess specific areas of educational need and not merely those which are designed to provide a single general intelligence quotient; and

(3) Tests are selected and administered so as best to ensure that, when a test is administered to a student with impaired sensory, manual, or speaking skills, the test results accurately reflect the student's aptitude or achievement level or whatever other factor the test purports to measure, rather than reflecting the student's impaired sensory, manual, or speaking skills (except where those skills are the factors that the test purports to measure).

(c) *Placement procedures.* In interpreting evaluation data and in making placement decisions, a recipient shall (1) draw upon information from a variety of sources, including aptitude and achievement tests, teacher recommendations, physical condition, social or cultural background, and adaptive behavior, (2) establish procedures to ensure that information obtained from all such sources is documented and carefully considered, (3) ensure that the placement decision is made by a group of persons, including persons knowledgeable about the child, the meaning of the evaluation data, and the placement options, and (4) ensure that the placement decision is made in conformity with § 84.34.

(d) *Reevaluation*. A recipient to which this section applies shall establish procedures, in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section, for periodic reevaluation of students who have been provided special education and related services. A reevaluation procedure consistent with the Education for the Handicapped Act is one means of meeting this requirement.

§ 84.36 Procedural safeguards.

A recipient that operates a public elementary or secondary education program shall establish and implement, with respect to actions regarding the identification, evaluation, or educational placement of persons who, because of handicap, need or are believed to need special instruction or related services, a system of procedural safeguards that includes notice, an opportunity for the parents or guaradian of the person to examine relevant records, an impartial hearing with opportunity for participation by the person's parents or guardian and representation by counsel, and a review procedure. Compliance with the procedural safeguards of section 615 of the Education of the Handicapped Act is one means of meeting this requirement.

§ 84.37 Nonacademic services.

(a) *General*. (1) A recipient to which this subpart applies shall provide nonacademic and extracurricular services and activities in such manner as is necessary to afford handicapped students an equal opportunity for participation in such services and activities.

(2) Nonacademic and extracurricular services and activities may include counseling services, physical recreational athletics, transportation, health services, recreational activities, special interest groups or clubs sponsored by the recipient, referrals to agencies which provide assistance to handicapped persons, and employment of students, including both employment by the recipient and assistance in making available outside employment.

(b) *Counseling services*. A recipient to which this subpart applies that provides personal, academic, or vocational counseling, guidance, or placement services to its students shall provide these services without discrimination on the basis of handicap. The recipient shall ensure that qualified handicapped students are not counseled toward more restrictive career objectives than are nonhandicapped students with similar interests and abilities.

(c) *Physical education and athletics*. (1) In providing physical education courses and athletics and similar programs and activities to any of its students, a recipient to which this subpart applies may not discriminate on the basis of handicap. A recipient that offers physical education courses or that operates or sponsors interscholastic, club, or intramural athletics shall provide to qualified handicapped students an equal opportunity for participation in these activities.

(2) A recipient may offer to handicapped students physical education and athletic activities that are separate or different from those offered to nonhandicapped students only if separation or differentiation is consistent with the requirements of § 84.34 and only if no qualified handicapped student is denied the opportunity to compete for teams or to participate in courses that are not separate or different.

§ 84.38 Preschool and adult education programs.

A recipient to which this subpart applies that operates a preschool education or day care program or activity or an adult education program or activity may not, on the basis of handicap, exclude qualified handicapped persons from the program or activity and shall take into account the needs of such persons in determining the aid, benefits, or services to be provided under the program or activity.

§ 84.39 Private education programs.

(a) A recipient that operates a private elementary or secondary education program may not, on the basis of handicap, exclude a qualified handicapped person from such program if the person can, with minor adjustments, be provided an appropriate education, as defined in § 84.33(b)(1), within the recipient's program.

(b) A recipient to which this section applies may not charge more for the provision of an appropriate education to handicapped persons than to nonhandicapped persons except to the extent that any additional charge is justified by a substantial increase in cost to the recipient.

(c) A recipient to which this section applies that operates special education programs shall operate such programs in accordance with the provisions of §§ 84.35 and 84.36. Each recipient to which this section applies is subject to the provisions of §§ 84.34, 84.37, and 84.38.

§ 84.40 [Reserved]

Subpart E—Postsecondary Education

§ 84.41 Application of this subpart.

Subpart E applies to postsecondary education programs and activities, including postsecondary vocational education programs and activities, that receive or benefit from federal financial assistance and to recipients that operate, or that receive or benefit from federal financial assistance for the operation of, such programs or activities.

§ 84.42 Admissions and recruitment.

(a) *General*. Qualified handicapped persons may not, on the basis of handicap, be denied admission or be subjected to discrimination in admission or recruitment by a recipient to which this subpart applies.

(b) *Admissions*. In administering its admission policies, a recipient to which this subpart applies:

(1) May not apply limitations upon the number or proportion of handicapped persons who may be admitted;

(2) May not make use of any test or criterion for admission that has a disproportionate, adverse effect on handicapped persons or any class of handicapped persons unless (i) the test or criterion, as used by the recipient, has been validated as a predictor of success in the education program or activity in question and (ii) alternate tests or criteria that have a less disproportionate, adverse effect are not shown by the Director to be available;

(3) Shall assure itself that (i) admissions tests are selected and administered so as best to ensure that, when a test is administered to an applicant who has a handicap that impairs sensory, manual, or speaking skills, the test results accurately reflect the applicant's aptitude or achievement level or whatever other factor the test purports to measure, rather than reflecting the applicant's impaired sensory, manual, or speaking skills (except where those skills are the factors that the test purports to measure); (ii) admissions tests that are designed for persons with impaired sensory, manual, or speaking skills are offered as often and in as timely a manner as are other admissions tests; and (iii) admissions tests are administered in facilities that, on the whole, are accessible to handicapped persons; and

(4) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, may not make preadmission inquiry as to whether an applicant for admission is a handicapped person but, after admission, may make inquiries on a confidential basis as to handicaps that may require accommodation.

(c) *Preadmission inquiry exception*. When a recipient is taking remedial action to correct the effects of past discrimination pursuant to § 84.6(a) or when a recipient is taking voluntary action to overcome the effects of conditions that resulted in limited participation in its federally assisted program or activity pursuant to § 84.6(b), the recipient may invite applicants for admission to indicate whether and to what extent they are handicapped, *Provided*, That:

(1) The recipient states clearly on any written questionnaire used for this purpose or makes clear orally if no written questionnaire is used that the information requested is intended for use solely in connection with its remedial action obligations or its voluntary action efforts; and

(2) The recipient states clearly that the information is being requested on a voluntary basis, that it will be kept confidential, that refusal to provide it will not subject the applicant to any adverse treatment, and that it will be used only in accordance with this part.

(d) *Validity studies*. For the purpose of paragraph (b)(2) of this section, a recipient may base prediction equations on first year grades, but shall conduct peri-

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

odic validity studies against the criterion of overall success in the education program or activity in question in order to monitor the general validity of the test scores.

§ 84.43 Treatment of students; general.

(a) No qualified handicapped student shall, on the basis of handicap, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination under any academic, research, occupational training, housing, health, insurance, counseling, financial aid, physical education, athletics, recreation, transportation, other extracurricular, or other postsecondary education program or activity to which this subpart applies.

(b) A recipient to which this subpart applies that considers participation by students in education programs or activities not operated wholly by the recipient as part of, or equivalent to, an education program or activity operated by the recipient shall assure itself that the other education program or activity, as a whole, provides an equal opportunity for the participation of qualified handicapped persons.

(c) A recipient to which this subpart applies may not, on the basis of handicap, exclude any qualified handicapped student from any course, course of study, or other part of its education program or activity.

(d) A recipient to which this subpart applies shall operate its programs and activities in the most integrated setting appropriate.

§ 84.44 Academic adjustments.

(a) *Academic requirements.* A recipient to which this subpart applies shall make such modifications to its academic requirements as are necessary to ensure that such requirements do not discriminate or have the effect of discriminating, on the basis of handicap, against a qualified handicapped applicant or student. Academic requirements that the recipient can demonstrate are essential to the program of instruction being pursued by such student or to any directly related licensing requirement will not be regarded as discriminatory within the meaning of this section. Modifications may include changes in the length of time permitted for the completion of degree requirements, substitution of specific courses required for the completion of degree requirements, and adaptation of the manner in which specific courses are conducted.

(b) *Other rules.* A recipient to which this subpart applies may not impose upon handicapped students other rules, such as the prohibition of tape recorders in classrooms or of dog guides in campus buildings, that have the effect of limiting the participation of handicapped students in the recipient's education program or activity.

(c) *Course examinations.* In its course examinations or other procedures for evaluating students' academic achievement in its program, a recipient to which this subpart applies shall provide such methods for evaluating the achievement of students who have a handicap that impairs sensory, manual, or speaking skills as will best ensure that the results of the evaluation represents the student's achievement in the course, rather than reflecting the student's impaired sensory, manual, or speaking skills (except where such skills are the factors that the test purports to measure).

(d) *Auxiliary aids.* (1) A recipient to which this subpart applies shall take such steps as are necessary to ensure that no handicapped student is denied the benefits of, excluded from participation in, or otherwise subjected to discrimination under the education program or activity operated by the recipient because of the absence of educational auxiliary aids for students with impaired sensory, manual, or speaking skills.

(2) Auxiliary aids may include taped texts, interpreters or other effective methods of making orally delivered materials available to students with hearing impairments, readers in libraries for students with visual impairments, classroom equipment adapted for use by students with manual impairments, and other similar services and actions. Recipients need not provide attendants, individually prescribed devices, readers for personal use or study, or other devices or services of a personal nature.

§ 84.45 Housing.

(a) *Housing provided by the recipient.* A recipient that provides housing to its nonhandicapped students shall provide comparable, convenient, and accessible housing to handicapped students at the same cost as to others. At the end of the transition period provided for in Subpart C, such housing shall be available in sufficient quantity and variety so that the scope of handicapped students' choice of living accommodations is, as a whole, comparable to that of nonhandicapped students.

(b) *Other housing.* A recipient that assists any agency, organization, or person in making housing available to any of its students shall take such action as may be necessary to assure itself that such housing is, as a whole, made available in a manner that does not result in discrimination on the basis of handicap.

§ 84.46 Financial and employment assistance to students.

(a) *Provision of financial assistance.* (1) In providing financial assistance to qualified handicapped persons, a recipient to which this subpart applies may not (i), on the basis of handicap, provide less assistance than is provided to nonhandicapped persons, limit eligibility for assistance, or otherwise discriminate or (ii) assist any entity or person that provides assistance to any of the recipient's students in a manner that discriminates against qualified handicapped persons on the basis of handicap.

(2) A recipient may administer or assist in the administration of scholarships, fellowships, or other forms of financial assistance established under wills, trusts, bequests, or similar legal instruments that require awards to be made on the basis of factors that discriminate or have the effect of discriminating on the basis of handicap only if the overall effect of the award of scholarships, fellowships, and other forms of financial assistance is not discriminatory on the basis of handicap.

(b) *Assistance in making available outside employment.* A recipient that assists any agency, organization, or person in providing employment opportunities to any of its students shall assure itself that such employment opportunities, as a whole, are made available in a manner that would not violate Subpart B if they were provided by the recipient.

(c) *Employment of students by recipients.* A recipient that employs any of its students may not do so in a manner that violates Subpart B.

§ 84.47 Nonacademic services.

(a) *Physical education and athletics.* (1) In providing physical education courses and athletics and similar programs and activities to any of its students, a recipient to which this subpart applies may not discriminate on the basis of handicap. A recipient that offers physical education courses or that operates or sponsors intercollegiate, club, or intramural athletics shall provide to qualified handicapped students an equal opportunity for participation in these activities.

(2) A recipient may offer to handicapped students physical education and athletic activities that are separate or different only if separation or differentiation is consistent with the requirements of §84.43(d) and only if no qualified handicapped student is denied the opportunity to compete for teams or to participate in courses that are not separate or different.

(b) *Counseling and placement services.* A recipient to which this subpart applies that provides personal, academic, or vocational counseling, guidance, or placement services to its students shall provide these services without discrimination on the basis of handicap. The recipient shall ensure that qualified handicapped students are not counseled toward more restrictive career objectives than are nonhandicapped students with similar interests and abilities. This requirement does not preclude a recipient from providing factual information about licensing and certification requirements that may present obstacles to handicapped persons in their pursuit of particular careers.

(c) *Social organizations.* A recipient that provides significant assistance to fraternities, sororities, or similar organizations shall assure itself that the membership practices of such organizations do not permit discrimination otherwise prohibited by this subpart.

§§ 84.48—84.50 [Reserved]

Subpart F—Health, Welfare, and Social Services

§ 84.51 Application of this subpart.

Subpart F applies to health, welfare, and other social service programs and activities that receive or benefit from federal financial assistance and to recipients that operate, or that receive or benefit from federal financial assistance for the operation of such programs or activities.

§ 84.52 Health, welfare, and other social services.

(a) *General*. In providing health, welfare, or other social services or benefits, a recipient may not, on the basis of handicap:

(1) Deny a qualified handicapped person these benefits or services;

(2) Afford a qualified handicapped person an opportunity to receive benefits or services that is not equal to that offered nonhandicapped persons;

(3) Provide a qualified handicapped person with benefits or services that are not as effective (as defined in § 84.4(b)) as the benefits or services provided to others;

(4) Provide benefits or services in a manner that limits or has the effect of limiting the participation of qualified handicapped persons; or

(5) Provide different or separate benefits or services to handicapped persons except where necessary to provide qualified handicapped persons with benefits and services that are as effective as those provided to others.

(b) *Notice*. A recipient that provides notice concerning benefits or services or written material concerning waivers of rights or consent to treatment shall take such steps as are necessary to ensure that qualified handicapped persons, including those with impaired sensory or speaking skills, are not denied effective notice because of their handicap.

(c) *Emergency treatment for the hearing impaired*. A recipient hospital that provides health services or benefits shall establish a procedure for effective communication with persons with impaired hearing for the purpose of providing emergency health care.

(d) *Auxiliary aids*. (1) A recipient to which this subpart applies that employs fifteen or more persons shall provide appropriate auxiliary aids to persons with impaired sensory, manual, or speaking skills, where necessary to afford such persons an equal opportunity to benefit from the service in question.

(2) The Director may require recipients with fewer than fifteen employees to provide auxiliary aids where the provision of aids would not significantly impair the ability of the recipient to provide its benefits or services.

(3) For the purpose of this paragraph, auxiliary aids may include brailled and taped material, interpreters, and other aids for persons with impaired hearing or vision.

§ 84.53 Drug and alcohol addicts.

A recipient to which this subpart applies that operates a general hospital or outpatient facility may not discriminate in admission or treatment against a drug or alcohol abuser or alcoholic who is suffering from a medical condition, because of the person's drug or alcohol abuse or alcoholism.

§ 84.54 Education of institutionalized persons.

A recipient to which this subpart applies and that operates or supervises a program or activity for persons who are institutionalized because of handicap shall ensure that each qualified handicapped person, as defined in § 84.3(k)(2), in its program or activity is provided an appropriate education, as defined in § 84.33(b). Nothing in this section shall be interpreted as altering in any way the obligations of recipients under Subpart D.

§§ 84.55–84.60 [Reserved]

Subpart G—Procedures

§ 84.61 Procedures.

The procedural provisions applicable to title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 apply to this part. These procedures are found in §§ 80.6–80.10 and Part 81 of this Title.

§§ 84.62–84.99 [Reserved]

NOTE: Incorporation by reference provisions approved by the Director of the Federal Register, May 27, 1975. Incorporated documents are on file at the Office of the Federal Register.

APPENDIX A—ANALYSIS OF FINAL REGULATION

SUBPART A—GENERAL PROVISIONS

Definitions—1. *"Recipient"*. Section 84.23 contains definitions used throughout the regulation. Most of the comments concerning § 84.3(f), which contains the definition of "recipient," commended the inclusion of recipients whose sole source of federal financial assistance is Medicaid. The Secretary believes that such Medicaid providers should be regarded as recipients under the statute and the regulation and should be held individually responsible for administering services in a nondiscriminatory fashion. Accordingly, § 84.3(f) has not been changed. Small Medicaid providers, however, are exempt from some of the regulation's administrative provisions (those that apply to recipients with fifteen or more employees). And such recipients will be permitted to refer patients to accessible facilities in certain limited circumstances under revised § 84.22(b). The Secretary recognizes the difficulties involved in federal enforcement of this regulation with respect to thousands of individual Medicaid providers. As in the case of title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, the Office for Civil Rights will concentrate its compliance efforts on the state Medicaid agencies and will look primarily to them to ensure compliance by individual providers.

One other comment requested that the regulation specify that nonpublic elementary and secondary schools that are not otherwise recipients do not become recipients by virtue of the fact their students participate in certain federally funded programs. The Secretary believes it unnecessary to amend the regulation in this regard, because almost identical language in the Department's regulations implementing title VI and title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972 has consistently been interpreted so as not to render such schools recipients. These schools, however, are indirectly subject to the substantive requirements of this regulation through the application of § 84.4 (b)(iv), which prohibits recipients from assisting agencies that discriminate on the basis of handicap in providing services to beneficiaries of the recipients' programs.

2. *"Federal financial assistance"*. In § 84.3 (h), defining federal financial assistance, a clarifying change has been made: procurement contracts are specifically excluded. They are covered, however, by the Department of Labor's regulation under section 503. The Department has never considered such contracts to be contracts of assistance; the explicit exemption has been added only to avoid possible confusion.

The proposed regulation's exemption of contracts of insurance or guaranty has been retained. A number of comments argued for its deletion on the ground that section 504, unlike title VI and title IX, contains no statutory exemption for such contracts. There is no indication, however, in the legislative history of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 or of the amendments to that Act in 1974, that Congress intended section 504 to have a broader application, in terms of federal financial assistance, than other civil rights statutes. Indeed, Congress directed that section 504 be implemented in the same manner as titles VI and IX. In view of the long established exemption of contracts of insurance or guaranty under title VI, we think it unlikely that Congress intended section 504 to apply to such contracts.

In its May 1976 Notice of Intent, the Department suggested that the arrangement under which individual practitioners, hospitals, and other facilities receive reimbursement for providing services to beneficiaries under Part B of title XVIII of the Social Security Act (Medicare) constitutes a contract of insufance or guaranty and thus falls within the exemption from the regulation. This explanation oversimplified the Department's view of whether Medicare Part B constitutes Federal financial assistance. The Department's position has consistently been that, whether or not Medicare Part B arrangements involve a contract of insurance or guaranty, no Federal financial assistance flows from the Department to the doctor or other practitioner under the program, since Medicare Part B—like other social security programs—is basically a program of payments to direct beneficiaries.

3. *"Handicapped person"*. Section 84.3(j), which defines the class of persons protected under the regulation, has not been substantially changed. The definition of handicapped person in paragraph (j)(1) conforms to the statutory definition of handicapped person that is applicable to section 504, as set forth in section 111(a) of the Rehabilitation Act Amendments of 1974, Pub. L. 93-516.

The first of the three parts of the statutory and regulatory definition includes any person who has a physical or mental impairment that substantially limits one or more major life activities. Paragraph (j)(2)(i) further defines physical or mental impairments. The definition does not set forth a list of specific diseases and conditions that constitute physical or mental impairments because of the difficulty of ensuring the comprehensiveness of any such list. The term includes, however, such diseases and conditions as orthopedic, visual, speech, and hearing impairments, cerebral palsy, epilepsy, muscular dystrophy, multiple sclerosis, cancer, heart disease, diabetes, mental retardation, emotional illness, and, as discussed below, drug addiction and alcoholism.

It should be emphasized that a physical or mental impairment does not constitute a handicap for purposes of section 504 unless its severity is such that it results in a substantial limitation of one or more major life activities. Several comments observed the lack of any definition in the proposed regulation of the phrase "substantially limits." The Department does not believe that a definition of this term is possible at this time.

A related issue raised by several comments is whether the definition of handicapped person is unreasonably broad. Comments suggested narrowing the definition in various ways. The most common recommendation was that only "traditional" handicaps be covered. The Department continues to believe, however, that it has no flexibility within the statutory definition to limit the term to persons who have those severe, permanent,

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

federal register

Friday
June 24, 1983

Part VIII

Department of Health and Human Services

Office of the Secretary

Intergovernmental Review of the Department of Health and Human Services Programs and Activities; Final Rule and

Programs Subject to the Provisions of Executive Order 12372, Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs; Notice

1. For the reasons set out in the Preamble, the Department of amends Title 45, Code of Federal Regulations, by adding a new Part 100, to read as follows:

PART 100—INTERGOVERNMENTAL REVIEW OF DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES PROGRAMS AND ACTIVITIES

Sec.

100.1 What is the purpose of these regulations?
100.2 What definitions apply to these regulations?
100.3 What programs and activities of the Department are subject to these regulations?
100.4 [Reserved]
100.5 What is the Secretary's obligation with respect to federal interagency coordination?
100.6 What procedures apply to the selection of programs and activities under these regulations?
100.7 How does the Secretary communicate with state and local officials concerning the Department's programs and activities?
100.8 How does the Secretary provide states an opportunity to comment on proposed federal financial assistance and direct federal development?
100.9 How does the Secretary receive and respond to comments?
100.10 How does the Secretary make efforts to accommodate intergovernmental concerns?
100.11 What are the Secretary's obligations in interstate situations?
100.12 How may a state simplify, consolidate, or substitute federally required state plans?
100.13 May the Secretary waive any provision of these regulations?

Authority: Executive Order 12372, July 14, 1982 (47 FR 30959), as amended April 8, 1983 (48 FR 15887): Section 401 of the Intergovernmental Cooperation Act of 1968, as amended (31 U.S.C. 6506); Section 204 of the Demonstration Cities and Metropolitan Development Act of 1966, as amended (42 U.S.C. 3334).

§100.1 What is the purpose of these regulations?

(a) The regulations in this part implement Executive Order 12372, "Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs," issued July 14, 1982 and amended on April 8, 1983. These regulations also implement applicable provisions of section 401 of the Intergovernmental Cooperation Act of 1968 and section 204 of the Demonstration Cities and Metropolitan Development Act of 1966.

(b) These regulations are intended to foster an intergovernmental partnership and a strengthened Federalism by relying on state processes and on state, areawide, regional and local coordination for review of proposed federal financial assistance and direct federal development.

(c) These regulations are intended to aid the internal management of the Department, and are not intended to create any right or benefit enforceable at law by a party against the Department or its officers.

§ 100.2 What definitions apply to these regulations?

"Department" means the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS).

"Order" means Executive Order 12372, issued July 14, 1982, and amended April 8, 1983 and titled "Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs."

"Secretary" means the Secretary of HHS or an official or employee of the Department acting for the Secretary under a delegation of authority.

"State" means any of the 50 states, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the U.S. Virgin Islands, or the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands.

§ 100.3 What programs and activities of the Department are subject to these regulations?

The Secretary publishes in the **Federal Register** a list of the Department's programs and activities that are subject to these regulations and identifies which of these are subject to the requirements of section 204 of the Demonstration Cities and Metropolitan Development Act.

§ 100.4 [Reserved]

§ 100.5 What is the Secretary's obligation with respect to federal interagency coordination?

The Secretary, to the extent practicable, consults with and seeks advice from all other substantially affected federal departments and agencies in an effort to assure full coordination between such agencies and the Department regarding programs and activities covered under these regulations.

§ 100.6 What procedures apply to the selection of programs and activities under these regulations?

(a) A state may select any program or activity published in the **Federal Register** in accordance with § 100.3 of this Part for intergovernmental review under these regulations. Each state, before selecting programs and activities, shall consult with local elected officials.

(b) Each state that adopts a process shall notify the Secretary of the Department's programs and activities selected for that process.

(c) A state may notify the Secretary of changes in its selections at any time. For each change, the state shall submit to the Secretary an assurance that the state has consulted with local elected officials regarding the change. The Department may establish deadlines by which states are required to inform the Secretary of changes in their program selections.

(d) The Secretary uses a state's process as soon as feasible, depending on individual programs and activities, after the Secretary is notified of its selections.

§ 100.7 How does the Secretary communicate with state and local officials concerning the Department's programs and activities?

(a) For those programs and activities selected by a state process under § 100.6, the Secretary, to the extent permitted by law:

(1) Uses the state process to detemine views of state and local elected officials; and,

(2) Communicates with state and local elected officials, through the state process, as early in a program planning cycle as is reasonably feasible to explain specific plans and actions.

(b) The Secretary provides notice to directly affected state, areawide, regional, and local entities in a state of proposed federal finanical assistance or direct federal development if:

(1) The state has not adopted a process under the Order; or

(2) The assistance or development invovles a program or activity not selected for the state process.

This notice may be made by publication in the **Federal Register** or other appropriate means, which the Department in its discretion deems appropriate.

§ 100.8 How does the Secretary provide states an opportunity to comment on proposed federal financial assistance and direct federal development?

(a) Except in unusal circumstances, the Secretary gives state processes or directly affected state, areawide, regional and local officials and entities:

(1) At least 30 days from the date established by the Secretary to comment on proposed direct federal development or federal financial assistance in the form of noncompeting continuation awards; and

(2) At least 60 days from the date established by the Secretary to comment on proposed direct federal development or federal financial assistance other

than noncompeting continuation awards.

(b) This section also applies to comments in cases in which the review, coordination, and communication with the Department have been delegated.

(c) Applicants for programs and activities subject to section 204 of the Demonstration Cities and Metropolitan Act shall allow areawide agencies a 60-day opportunity for review and comment.

§ 100.9 How does the Secretary receive and respond to comments?

(a) The Secretary follows the procedures in § 100.10 if:

(1) A state office or official is designated to act as a single point of contact between a state process and all federal agencies, and

(2) That office or official transmits a state process recommendation for a program selected under § 100.6.

(b)(1) The single point of contract is not obligated to transmit comments from state, areawide, regional or local officials and entities where there is no state process recommendation.

(2) If a state process recommendation is transmitted by a single point of contact, all comments from state, areawide, regional, and local officials and entities that differ from it must also be transmitted.

(c) If a state has not established a process, or is unable to submit a state process recommendation, state, areawide, regional and local officials and entities may submit comments either to the applicant or to the Department.

(d) If a program or activity is not selected for review under a state process, state, areawide, regional and local officials and entities may submit comments either to the applicant or to the Department. In addition, if a state process recommendation for a nonselected program or activity is transmitted to the Department by the single point of contact, the Secretary follows the procedures of § 100.10 of this Part.

(e) The Secretary considers comments which do not constitute a state process recommendation submitted under these regulations and for which the Secretary is not required to apply the procedures of § 100.10 of this Part, when such comments are provided by a single point of contact, by the applicant, or directly to the Department by a commenting party.

(f) If an applicant receives comments under § 100.9(a)(2), (c) or (d) of this Part, it must forward such comments to the Department with its application materials.

§ 100.10 How does the Secretary make efforts to accommodate intergovernmental concerns?

(a) If a state process provides a state process recommendation to the Department through its single point of contact, the Secretary either:

(1) Accepts the recommendation;

(2) Reaches a mutually agreeable solution with the state process; or

(3) Provides the single point of contact with such written explanation of the decision as the Secretary in this or her discretion deems appropriate. The Secretary may also supplement the written explanation by providing the explanation to the single point of contact by telephone, other telecommunication, or other means.

(b) In any explanation under paragraph (a)(3) of this section, the Secretary informs the single point of contact that:

(1) The Department will not implement its decision for at least ten days after the single point of contact receives the explanation; or

(2) The Secretary has reviewed the decision and determined that, because of unusual circumstances, the waiting period of at least ten days is not feasible.

(c) For purposes of computing the waiting period under paragraph (b)(1) of this section, a single point of contact is presumed to have received written explanation 5 days after the date such notification is dated.

§ 100.11 What are the Secretary's obligations in interstate situations?

(a) The Secretary is responsible for:

(1) Identifying proposed federal financial assistance and direct federal development that have an impact on interstate areas;

(2) Notifying appropriate officials and entities in states which have adopted a process and which select the Department's program or activity.

(3) Making efforts to identify and notify the affected state, areawide, regional, and local officials and entities in those states that have not adopted a process under the Order or do not select the Department's program or activity;

(4) Responding pursuant to § 100.10 of this Part if the Secretary receives a recommendation from a designated areawide agency transmitted by a single point of contact, in cases in which the review, coordination, and communication with the Department have been delegated.

(b) The Secretary uses the procedures in § 100.10 if a state process provides a state process recommendation to the Department through a single point of contact.

§ 100.12 How may a state simplify, consolidate, or substitute Federally required state plans?

(a) As used in this section:

(1) "Simplify" means that a state may develop its own format, choose its own submission date, and select the planning period for a state plan.

(2) "Consolidate" means that a state may meet statutory and regulatory requirements by combining two or more plans into one document and that the state can select the format, submission date, and planning period for the consolidated plan.

(3) "Substitute" means that a state may use a plan or other document that it has developed for its own purposes to meet Federal requirements.

(b) If not inconsistent with law, a state may decide to try to simplify, consolidate, or substitute Federally required state plans without prior approval by the Secretary.

(c) The Secretary reviews each state plan that a state has simplified, consolidated, or substituted and accepts the plan only if its contents meet Federal requirements.

§ 100.13 May the Secretary waive any provision of these regulations?

In an emergency, the Secretary may waive any provision of these regulations.

2. Subchapter D and Subchapter K, Chapter I, Title 42 of the Code of Federal Regulations is amended as follows:

TITLE 42—[AMENDED]

PART 51c—GRANTS FOR COMMUNITY HEALTH SERVICES

42 CFR Part 51c is amended as follows:

1. In § 51c.104, paragraph (b)(10) is revised to read as follows:

§ 51c.104 Application.

* * * * *

(b) * * *

(10) Evidence that all applicable requirements for review and/or approval of the application under Title XV of the Act have been met.

* * * * *

PART 52b—NATIONAL CANCER INSTITUTE CONSTRUCTION GRANTS

42 CFR Part 52b is amended as follows:

§ 52b.4 [Amended]

1. Section 52b.4, *Application*, is amended by removing paragraph (e).

PART 55a—PROGRAM GRANTS FOR BLACK LUNG CLINICS

42 CFR Part 55a is amended as follows:

§ 55a.4 [Amended]

Section 55a.4, *What must an application for a Black Lung Clinic grant contain?*, is amended by removing paragraph (e).

PART 56—GRANTS FOR MIGRANT HEALTH SERVICES

42 CFR Part 56 is amended as follows:

1. In § 56.104, paragraph (b)(12) is revised to read as follows:

§ 56.104 Application.

* * * * *

(b) * * *

(12) Evidence that all applicable requirements for review and/or approval of the application under title XV of the Act have been met.

* * * * *

PART 122—HEALTH SYSTEMS AGENCIES

42 CFR Part 122 is amended as follows:

1. In section 122.1, paragraph (b) is reserved as follows:

§ 122.1 Definitions.

* * * * *

(b) [Reserved]

2. In section 122.105, paragraph (a)(1)(vi) is revised to read as follows:

§ 122.105 Selection of agencies.

(a) * * *

(1) * * *

(vi) The adequacy of plans for developing working relationships with appropriate PSROs, State Agencies and Statewide Health Coordinating Councils; with health systems agencies which are designated for health services areas within the same standard metropolitan statistical area (as determined by the Office of Management and Budget) as the health service area for which the applicant is seeking designation; and with other planning bodies, and

* * * * *

3. In § 122.107, paragraphs (c)(11) (iii) and (iv) are reserved as follows:

§ 122.107 Full designation agreements.

* * * * *

(c) * * *

(11) * * *

(iii) [Reserved]

(iv) [Reserved]

* * * * *

4. In § 122.408, paragraph (b)(2) is revised to read as follows:

§ 122.408 Procedures for submission of application.

* * * * *

(b) * * *

(2) A copy of each application for a noncompeting continuation grant not subject to review under this subparagraph shall be provided by the applicant to the health systems agency at the time the application is submitted to the Federal funding agency.

* * * * *

5. In § 122.410, paragraph (a)(1)(v) is reserved as follows:

§ 122.410 Procedures for health systems agency review.

(a) * * *

(1) * * *

(v) [Reserved]

* * * * *

TITLE 45—[AMENDED]

PART 224—WORK INCENTIVE PROGRAMS FOR AFDC RECIPIENTS UNDER TITLE IV OF THE SOCIAL SECURITY ACT

45 CFR 244 is amended as follows:

1. In § 244.11 paragraphs (d)(1) (ii) and (iii) are reserved as follows:

§ 224.11 Annual State WIN plans.

* * * * *

(d) (1) * * *

(ii) [Reserved]

(iii) [Reserved]

* * * * *

PART 1351—RUNAWAY YOUTH PROGRAM

45 CFR Part 1351 is amended as follows:

1. In § 1351.17, paragraph (c) is revised to read as follows:

§ 1351.17 How is application made for a Runaway Youth Program grant?

* * * * *

(c) Submit a completed application to the Grants Management Office at the appropriate Regional Office.

Dated: June 17, 1983.

Margaret M. Heckler,

Secretary of Health and Human Services.

[FR Doc. 83-16963 Filed 6-23-83; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 4150-04-M

April 4, 1994

OMB STATE SINGLE POINT OF CONTACT LISTING*

ARIZONA

Janice Dunn
Arizona State Clearinghouse
3800 N. Central Avenue Fourteenth Floor
Phoenix, Arizona 85012
Telephone (602) 280-1315
FAX: (602) 280-1305

ARKANSAS

Mr. Tracy L. Copeland
Manager, State Clearinghouse Office of Intergovernmental Services
Department of Finance and Administration
1515 W. 7th St., Room 412
Little Rock, Arkansas 72203
Telephone: (501) 682-1074
FAX: (501) 682-5206

CALIFORNIA

Grants Coordinator
Office of Planning & Research
1400 Tenth Street, Room 121
Sacramento, California 95814
Telephone (916) 323-7480
FAX (916) 323-3018

COLORADO

State Single Point of Contact State Clearinghouse
Division of Local Government
1313 Sherman Street, Room 521
Denver, Colorado 80203
Telephone: (303) 866-2156
FAX: (303) 866-2251

DELAWARE

Francine Booth
State Single Point of Contact Executive Department
Thomas Collins Building
Dover, Delaware 19903
Telephone: (302) 739-3326
FAX: (302) 739-5661

DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA
Rodney T. Hallman
State Single Point of Contact Office of Grants Mgmt. & Dev.
717 14th Street, N.W. - Suite 500
Washington, D.C. 20005
Telephone: (202) 727-6551
FAX: (202) 727-1617

FLORIDA
Suzanne Traub-Metlay
Florida State Clearinghouse Intergovernmental Affairs Policy Unit
Executive Office of the Governor
The Capitol (Room 1603)
Tallahassee, Florida 32399-0001
Telephone: (904) 488-8114
FAX: (904) 488-9005

GEORGIA
Charles H. Badger
Administrator
Georgia State Clearinghouse
254 Washington Street, S.W. - Room 401J
Atlanta, Georgia 30334
Telephone: (404) 656-3855 or (404) 656-3829
FAX: (404) 656-7938

ILLINOIS
Steve Klokkenga
State Single Point of Contact Office of the Governor
107 Stratton Building
Springfield, Illinois 62706
Telephone: (217) 782-1671
FAX: (217) 782-6620

INDIANA
Frances E. Williams
State Budget Agency
212 State House
Indianapolis, Indiana 46204
Telephone: (317) 232-2972
FAX: (317) 233-3323

IOWA

Steven R. McCann
Division for Community Assistance
Iowa Department of Economic Development
200 East Grand Avenue
Des Moines, Iowa 50309
Telephone: (515) 242-4719
FAX: (515) 242-4859

KENTUCKY

Ronald W. Cook
Office of the Governor
Department of Local Government
1024 Capitol Center Drive
Frankfort, Kentucky 40601-8204
Telephone: (502) 573-2382
FAX: (502) 573-2512

MAINE

Joyce Benson
State Planning Office
State House Station #38
Augusta, Maine 04333
Telephone: (207) 287-3261
FAX: (207) 287-6489

MARYLAND

Mr. Roland E. English III Chief, State Clearinghouse for Intergovernmental
Assistance Maryland Office of Planning
301 W. Preston Street - Room 1104
Baltimore, Maryland 21201-2365
Telephone: (410) 225-4490
FAX: (410) 225-4480

MASSACHUSETTS

Karen Arone
State Clearinghouse
Executive Office of Communities and Development
100 Cambridge Street, Room 1803
Boston, Massachusetts 02202
Telephone: (617) 727-7001 ext. 443
FAX: (617) 727-4259

MICHIGAN

Richard S. Pastula, Director
Office of Federal Grants
Michigan Department of Commerce
P.O. Box 30225
Lansing, Michigan 48909
Telephone: (517) 373-7356
FAX: (517) 373-6683

Mississippi

Cathy Malette
Clearinghouse Officer
Office of Federal Grant Management
and Reporting
Department of Finance and Administration
301 West Pearl Street
Jackson, Mississippi 39203
Telephone: (601) 949-2174
FAX: (601) 949-2125

MISSOURI

Lois Pohl
Federal Assistance Clearinghouse
Office Of Administration
P.O. Box 809
Room 760, Truman Building
Jefferson City, Missouri 65102
Telephone: (314) 751-4834
FAX: (314) 751-7819

NEVADA

Department of Administration
State Clearinghouse
Capitol Complex
Carson City, Nevada 89710
Telephone: (702) 687-4065
FAX: (702) 687-3983

NEW HAMPSHIRE

Jeffrey H. Taylor
Director, New Hampshire Office of State Planning
Attn: Intergovernmental Review Process

James E. Bieber
2 1/2 Beacon Street
Concord, New Hampshire 03301
Telephone: (603) 271-2155
FAX: (603) 271-1728

NEW JERSEY

Gregory W. Adkins, Director
Division of Community Resources
New Jersey Department of Community
Affairs

Please direct all correspondence and questions about intergovernmental review to:
Andrew J. Jaskolka
State Review Process
Division of Community Resources
CN 814, Room 609
Trenton, New Jersey 08625-0814
Telephone: (609) 292-9025
FAX: (609) 984-0386

NEW MEXICO

George Elliott
Deputy Director
State Budget Division
Room 190 Bataan Memorial Building
Santa Fe, New Mexico 87503
Telephone: (505) 827-3640

NEW YORK

New York State Clearinghouse
Division of the Budget
State Capitol
Albany, New York 12224
Telephone: (518) 474-1605

NORTH CAROLINA

Chrys Baggett, Director
N.C. State Clearinghouse
Office of the Secretary of Admin.
116 West Jones Street
Raleigh, North Carolina 27603-8003
Telephone: (919) 733-7232
FAX: (919) 733-9571

NORTH DAKOTA

North Dakota Single Point of Contact
Office of Intergovernmental Assistance
600 East Boulevard Avenue
Bismarck, North Dakota 58505-0170
Telephone: (701) 224-2094
FAX: (701) 224-2308

OHIO

Larry Weaver
State Single Point of Contact
State Clearinghouse
Office of Budget and Management
30 East Broad Street, 34th Floor
Columbus, Ohio 43266-0411

Please direct correspondence and questions about intergovernmental review to:
Linda Wise
Telephone: (614) 466-0698
FAX: (614) 466-5400

RHODE ISLAND

Daniel W. Varin
Associate Director
Department of Administration
Division of Planning
One Capitol Hill, 4th Floor
Providence, Rhode Island 02908-5870
Telephone: (401) 277-2656
FAX: (401) 277-2083

Please direct correspondence and questions to: Review Coordinator
office of Strategic Planning

SOUTH CAROLINA

Omeagia Burgess
State Single Point of Contact Grant Services
Office of the Governor
1205 Pendleton Street - Room 477
Columbia, South Carolina 29201
Telephone: (803) 734-0494
FAX: (803) 734-0385

TENNESSEE

Charles Brown
State Single Point of Contact State Planning Office
500 Charlotte Avenue
John Sevier Building - Suite 309
Nashville, Tennessee 37243-0001
Telephone: (615) 741-1676

TEXAS
Tom Adams
Director, Intergovernmental Coordination
P.O. Box 13005
Austin, Texas 78711
Telephone: (512) 463-1771
FAX: (512) 463-1984

UTAH
Carolyn Wright
Utah State Clearinghouse Office of Planning and Budget
Room 116
State Capitol
Salt Lake City, Utah 84114
Telephone: (801) 538-1535
FAX: (801) 538-1547

VERMONT
Nancy McAvoy
State Single Point of Contact
Pavilion Office Building
109 State Street
Montpelier, Vermont 05609
Telephone: (802) 828-3326
FAX: (802) 828-3339

WEST VIRGINIA
Fred Cutlip, Director
Community Development Division
W. Virginia Development Office
Building #6, Room 553
Charleston, West Virginia 25305
Telephone: (304) 558-4010
FAX: (304) 558-3248

WISCONSIN
Martha Kerner
Section Chief, State/Federal Relations
Wisconsin Department of Administration
101 East Wilson Street - 6th Floor
P.O. Box 7868
Madison, Wisconsin 53707
Telephone: (608) 266-2125
FAX: (608) 267-6931

WYOMING

Sheryl Jeffries
State Single Point of Contact
Herschler Building 4th Floor, East Wing
Cheyenne, Wyoming 82002
Telephone: (307) 777-7574
FAX: (307) 638-8967

TERRITORIES

GUAM

Mr. Giovanni T. Sgambelluri
Director
Bureau of Budget and Management Research
Office of the Governor
P.O. Box 2950
Agana, Guam 96910
Telephone: 011-671-472-2285
FAX: 011-671-472-2825

PUERTO RICO

Norma Burgos/Jose E. Caro
Chairwoman/Director
Puerto Rico Planning Board
Federal Proposals Review Office
Minillas Government Center
P.O. Box 41119
San Juan, Puerto Rico 00940-1119
Telephone: (809) 727-4444
(809) 723-6190
FAX: (809) 724-3270
(809) 724-3103

NORTH MARIANA ISLANDS

State Single Point of Contact
Planning and Budget Office
Office of the Governor
Saipan, CM
Northern Mariana Islands 96950

VIRGIN ISLANDS
Jose George
Director, Office of Management and Budget
#41 Norregade Emancipation Garden Station
Second Floor
Saint Thomas, Virgin Islands 00802

Please direct all questions and correspondence about intergovernmental review to:
Linda Clarke
Telephone: (809) 774-0750
FAX: (809) 776-0069

*In accordance with Executive Order #12372, "Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs," this listing represents the designated State Single Points of Contact. The Office of Management and Budget point of contact for updating this listing is: Donna Rivelli (202) 395-5090. The States not listed no longer participate in the process. These include: Alabama; Alaska; Connecticut; Kansas; Hawaii; Idaho; Louisiana; Minnesota; Montana; Nebraska; Oklahoma; Oregon; Pennsylvania; South Dakota; Virginia; and Washington. This list is based on the most current information provided by the States. Information on any changes or apparent errors should be provided to the Office of Management and Budget and the State in question. Changes to the list will only be made upon formal notification by the State. Also, this listing is published biannually in the Catalogue of Federal Domestic Assistance.

PART 92—UNIFORM ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR GRANTS AND COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS TO STATE AND LOCAL GOVERNMENTS

Subpart A—General

Sec.
92.1 Purpose and scope of this part.
92.2 Scope of subpart.
92.3 Definitions.
92.4 Applicability.
92.5 Effect on other issuances.
92.6 Additions and exceptions.

Subpart B—Pre-Award Requirements

92.10 Forms for applying for grants.
92.11 State plans.
92.12 Special grant or subgrant conditions for "high-risk" grantees.

Subpart C—Post-Award Requirements

FINANCIAL ADMINISTRATION

92.20 Standards for financial management systems.
92.21 Payment.
92.22 Allowable costs.
92.23 Period of availability of funds.
92.24 Matching or cost sharing.
92.25 Program income.
92.26 Non-Federal audit.

CHANGES, PROPERTY, AND SUBAWARDS

92.30 Changes.
92.31 Real property.
92.32 Equipment.
92.33 Supplies.

92.34 Copyrights.
92.35 Subawards to debarred and suspended parties.
92.36 Procurement.
92.37 Subgrants.

REPORTS, RECORDS RETENTION, AND ENFORCEMENT

92.40 Monitoring and reporting program performance.
92.41 Financial reporting.
92.42 Retention and access requirements for records.
92.43 Enforcement.
92.44 Termination for convenience.

Subpart D—After-the-Grant Requirements

92.50 Closeout.
92.51 Later disallowances and adjustments.
92.52 Collection of amounts due.

Subpart E—Entitlement [Reserved]

AUTHORITY: 5 U.S.C. 301.

SOURCE: 53 FR 8079, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, unless otherwise noted.

EDITORIAL NOTE: For additional information, see related documents published at 49 FR 24958, June 18, 1984, 52 FR 20198, May 29, 1987, and 53 FR 8028, March 11, 1988.

Subpart A—General

§ 92.1 Purpose and scope of this part.

This part establishes uniform administrative rules for Federal grants and cooperative agreements and subawards to State, local and Indian tribal governments.

§ 92.2 Scope of subpart.

This subpart contains general rules pertaining to this part and procedures for control of exceptions from this part.

§ 92.3 Definitions.

As used in this part:

"*Accrued expenditures*" mean the charges incurred by the grantee during a given period requiring the provision of funds for: (1) Goods and other tangible property received; (2) services performed by employees, contractors, subgrantees, subcontractors, and other payees; and (3) other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance is required, such as annuities, insurance claims, and other benefit payments.

"*Accrued income*" means the sum of: (1) Earnings during a given period from services performed by the grantee and goods and other tangible property delivered to purchasers, and (2) amounts becoming owed to the grantee for which no current services or performance is required by the grantee.

"*Acquisition cost*" of an item of purchased equipment means the net invoice unit price of the property including the cost of modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make the property usable for the purpose for which it was acquired. Other charges such as the cost of installation, transportation, taxes, duty or protective in-transit insurance, shall be included or excluded from the unit acquisition cost in accordance with the grantee's regular accounting practices.

"*Administrative*" requirements mean those matters common to grants in general, such as financial management, kinds and frequency of reports, and retention of records. These are distinguished from "*programmatic*" requirements, which concern matters that can be treated only on a program-by-program or grant-by-grant basis, such as kinds of activities that can be supported by grants under a particular program.

"*Awarding agency*" means (1) with respect to a grant, the Federal agency, and (2) with respect to a subgrant, the party that awarded the subgrant.

"*Cash contributions*" means the grantee's cash outlay, including the outlay of money contributed to the grantee or subgrantee by other public agencies and institutions, and private organizations and individuals. When authorized by Federal legislation, Federal funds received from other assistance agreements may be considered as grantee or subgrantee cash contributions.

"*Contract*" means (except as used in the definitions for "*grant*" and "*subgrant*" in this section and except where qualified by "*Federal*") a procurement contract under a grant or subgrant, and means a procurement subcontract under a contract.

"*Cost sharing or matching*" means the value of the third party in-kind contributions and the portion of the costs of a federally assisted project or program not borne by the Federal Government.

"*Cost-type contract*" means a contract or subcontract under a grant in which the contractor or subcontractor is paid on the basis of the costs it incurs, with or without a fee.

"*Equipment*" means tangible, nonexpendable, personal property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost of $5,000 or more per unit. A grantee may use its own definition of equipment provided that such definition would at least include all equipment defined above.

"*Expenditure report*" means: (1) For nonconstruction grants, the SF-269 "Financial Status Report" (or other equivalent report); (2) for construction grants, the SF-271 "Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement" (or other equivalent report).

"*Federally recognized Indian tribal government*" means the governing body or a governmental agency of any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community (including any Native village as defined in section 3 of the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, 85 Stat 688) certified by the Secretary of the Interior as eligible for the special programs and services provided by him through the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

"*Government*" means a State or local government or a federally recognized Indian tribal government.

"*Grant*" means an award of financial assistance, including cooperative agreements, in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, by the Federal Government to an eligible grantee. The term does not include technical assistance which provides services instead of money, or other assistance in the form of revenue sharing, loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies, insurance, or direct appropriations. Also, the term does not include assistance, such as a fellowship or other lump sum award, which the grantee is not required to account for.

"*Grantee*" means the government to which a grant is awarded and which is accountable for the use of the funds provided. The grantee is the entire legal entity even if only a particular component of the entity is designated in the grant award document.

"*Local government*" means a county, municipality, city, town, township, local public authority (including any public and Indian housing agency under the United States Housing Act of 1937) school district, special district, intrastate district, council of governments (whether or not incorporated as a nonprofit corporation under state law), any other regional or interstate government entity, or any agency or instrumentality of a local government.

"*Obligations*" means the amounts of orders placed, contracts and subgrants awarded, goods and services received, and similar transactions during a given period that will require payment by the grantee during the same or a future period.

"*OMB*" means the United States Office of Management and Budget.

"*Outlays*" (expenditures) mean charges made to the project or program. They may be reported on a cash or accrual basis. For reports prepared on a cash basis, outlays are the sum of actual cash disbursement for direct charges for goods and services, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of in-kind contributions applied, and the amount of cash advances and payments made to contractors and subgrantees. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, outlays are the sum of actual cash disbursements, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of inkind contributions applied, and the new increase (or decrease) in the amounts owed by the grantee for goods and other property received, for services performed by employees, contractors, subgrantees, subcontractors, and other payees, and other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance are required, such as annuities, insurance claims, and other benefit payments.

"*Percentage of completion method*" refers to a system under which payments are made for construction work according to the percentage of completion of the work, rather than to the grantee's cost incurred.

"*Prior approval*" means documentation evidencing consent prior to incurring specific cost.

"*Real property*" means land, including land improvements, structures and appurtenances thereto, excluding movable machinery and equipment.

"*Share*", when referring to the awarding agency's portion of real property, equipment or supplies, means the same percentage as the awarding agency's portion of the acquiring party's total costs under the grant to which the acquisition costs under the grant to which the acquisition cost of the property was charged. Only costs are to be counted—not the value of third-party in-kind contributions.

"*State*" means any of the several States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, any territory or possession of the United States, or any agency or instrumentality of a State exclusive of local governments. The term does not include any public and Indian housing agency under United States Housing Act of 1937.

"*Subgrant*" means an award of financial assistance in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, made under a grant by a grantee to an eligible subgrantee. The term includes financial assistance when provided by contractual legal agreement, but does not include procurement purchases, nor does it include any form of assistance which is excluded from the definition of "*grant*" in this part.

"*Subgrantee*" means the government or other legal entity to which a subgrant is awarded and which is accountable to the grantee for the use of the funds provided.

"*Supplies*" means all tangible personal property other than "*equipment*" as defined in this part.

"*Suspension*" means depending on the context, either (1) temporary withdrawal of the authority to obligate grant funds pending corrective action by the grantee or subgrantee or a decision to terminate the grant, or (2) an action taken by a suspending official in accordance with agency regulations implementing E.O. 12549 to immediately exclude a person from participating in grant transactions for a period, pending completion of an investigation and such legal or debarment proceedings as may ensue.

"*Termination*" means permanent withdrawal of the authority to obligate previously-awarded grant funds before that authority would otherwise expire. It also means the voluntary relinquishment of that authority by the grantee or subgrantee. "Termination" does not include: (1) Withdrawal of funds awarded on the basis of the grantee's underestimate of the unobligated balance in a prior period; (2) Withdrawal of the unobligated balance as of the expiration of a grant; (3) Refusal to extend a grant or award additional funds, to make a competing or noncompeting continuation, renewal, extension, or supplemental award; or (4) voiding of a grant upon determination that the award was obtained fraudulently, or was otherwise illegal or invalid from inception.

"*Terms of a grant or subgrant*" mean all requirements of the grant or subgrant, whether in statute, regulations, or the award document.

"*Third party in-kind contributions*" mean property or services which benefit a federally assisted project or program and which are contributed by non-Federal third parties without charge to the grantee, or a cost-type contractor under the grant agreement.

"*Unliquidated obligations*" for reports prepared on a cash basis mean the amount of obligations incurred by the grantee that has not been paid. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, they represent the amount of obligations incurred by the grantee for which an outlay has not been recorded.

"*Unobligated balance*" means the portion of the funds authorized by the Federal agency that has not been obligated by the grantee and is determined by deducting the cumulative obligations from the cumulative funds authorized.

§ 92.4 Applicability.

(a) *General.* Subparts A through D of this part apply to all grants and subgrants to governments, except where inconsistent with Federal statutes or with regulations authorized in accordance with the exception provision of § 92.6, or:

(1) Grants and subgrants to State and local institutions of higher education or State and local hospitals.

(2) The block grants authorized by the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981 (Community Services; Preventive Health and Health Services; Alcohol, Drug Abuse, and Mental Health Services; Maternal and Child Health Services; Social Services; Low-Income Home Energy Assistance; States' Program of Community Development Block Grants for Small Cities; and Elementary and Secondary Education other than programs administered by the Secretary of Education under Title V, Subtitle D, Chapter 2, Section 583—the Secretary's discretionary grant program) and Titles I-III of the Job Training Partnership Act of 1982 and under the Public Health Services Act (Section 1921), Alcohol and Drug Abuse Treatment and Rehabilitation Block Grant and Part C of Title V, Mental Health Service for the Homeless Block Grant).

(3) Entitlement grants to carry out the following programs of the Social Security Act:

(i) Aid to Needy Families with Dependent Children (Title IV-A of the Act, not including the Work Incentive Program (WIN) authorized by section 402(a)19(G); HHS grants for WIN are subject to this part);

(ii) Child Support Enforcement and Establishment of Paternity (Title IV-D of the Act);

(iii) Foster Care and Adoption Assistance (Title IV-E of the Act);

(iv) Aid to the Aged, Blind, and Disabled (Titles I, X, XIV, and XVI-AABD of the Act); and

(v) Medical Assistance (Medicaid) (Title XIX of the Act) not including the State Medicaid Fraud Control program authorized by section 1903(a)(6)(B).

(4) Entitlement grants under the following programs of The National School Lunch Act:

(i) School Lunch (section 4 of the Act),

(ii) Commodity Assistance (section 6 of the Act),

(iii) Special Meal Assistance (section 11 of the Act),

(iv) Summer Food Service for Children (section 13 of the Act), and

(v) Child Care Food Program (section 17 of the Act).

(5) Entitlement grants under the following programs of The Child Nutrition Act of 1966:

(i) Special Milk (section 3 of the Act), and

(ii) School Breakfast (section 4 of the Act).

(6) Entitlement grants for State Administrative expenses under The Food Stamp Act of 1977 (section 16 of the Act).

(7) A grant for an experimental, pilot, or demonstration project that is also supported by a grant listed in paragraph (a)(3) of this section;

(8) Grant funds awarded under subsection 412(e) of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1522(e)) and subsection 501(a) of the Refugee Education Assistance Act of 1980 (Pub. L. 96-422, 94 Stat. 1809), for cash assistance, medical assistance, and supplemental security income benefits to refugees and entrants and the administrative costs of providing the assistance and benefits;

(9) Grants to local education agencies under 20 U.S.C. 236 through 241-1(a), and 242 through 244 (portions of the Impact Aid program), except for 20 U.S.C. 238(d)(2)(c) and 240(f) (Entitlement Increase for Handicapped Children); and

(10) Payments under the Veterans Administration's State Home Per Diem Program (38 U.S.C. 641(a)).

(b) *Entitlement programs.* Entitlement programs enumerated above in § 92.4(a) (3) through (8) are subject to Subpart E.

§ 92.5 Effect on other issuances.

All other grants administration provisions of codified program regulations, program manuals, handbooks and other nonregulatory materials which are inconsistent with this part are superseded, except to the extent they are required by statute, or authorized in accordance with the exception provision in § 92.6.

§ 92.6 Additions and exceptions.

(a) For classes of grants and grantees subject to this part, Federal agencies may not impose additional administrative requirements except in codified regulations published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(b) Exceptions for classes of grants or grantees may be authorized only by OMB.

(c) Exceptions on a case-by-case basis and for subgrantees may be authorized by the affected Federal agencies.

Subpart B—Pre-Award Requirements

§ 92.10 Forms for applying for grants.

(a) *Scope.* (1) This section prescribes forms and instructions to be used by governmental organizations (except hospitals and institutions of higher education operated by a government) in applying for grants. This section is not applicable, however, to formula grant programs which do not require applicants to apply for funds on a project basis.

(2) This section applies only to applications to Federal agencies for grants, and is not required to be applied by grantees in dealing with applicants for subgrants. However, grantees are encouraged to avoid more detailed or burdensome application requirements for subgrants.

(b) *Authorized forms and instructions for governmental organizations.* (1) In applying for grants, applicants shall only use standard application forms or those prescribed by the granting agency with the approval of OMB under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980.

(2) Applicants are not required to submit more than the original and two copies of preapplications or applications.

(3) Applicants must follow all applicable instructions that bear OMB clearance numbers. Federal agencies may specify and describe the programs, functions, or activities that will be used to plan, budget, and evaluate the work under a grant. Other supplementary instructions may be issued only with the approval of OMB to the extent required under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980. For any standard form, except the SF-424 facesheet, Federal agencies may shade out or instruct the applicant to disregard any line item that is not needed.

(4) When a grantee applies for additional funding (such as a continuation or supplemental award) or amends a previously submitted application, only the affected pages need be submitted. Previously submitted pages with information that is still current need not be resubmitted.

§ 92.11 State plans.

(a) *Scope.* The statutes for some programs require States to submit plans before receiving grants. Under regulations implementing Executive Order 12372, "Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs," States are allowed to simplify, consolidate and substitute plans. This section contains additional provisions for plans that are subject to regulations implementing the Executive order.

(b) *Requirements.* A State need meet only Federal administrative or programmatic requirements for a plan that are in statutes or codified regulations.

(c) *Assurances.* In each plan the State will include an assurance that the State shall comply with all applicable Federal statutes and regulations in effect with respect to the periods for which it receives grant funding. For this assurance and other assurances required in the plan, the State may:

(1) Cite by number the statutory or regulatory provisions requiring the assurances and affirm that it gives the assurances required by those provisions,

(2) Repeat the assurance language in the statutes or regulations, or

(3) Develop its own language to the extent permitted by law.

(d) *Amendments.* A State will amend a plan whenever necessary to reflect: (1) New or revised Federal statutes or regulations or (2) a material change in any State law, organization, policy, or State agency operation. The State will obtain approval for the amendment and its effective date but need submit for approval only the amended portions of the plan.

263

§ 92.12 Special grant or subgrant conditions for "high-risk" grantees.

(a) A grantee or subgrantee may be considered "high risk" if an awarding agency determines that a grantee or subgrantee:

(1) Has a history of unsatisfactory performance, or

(2) Is not financially stable, or

(3) Has a management system which does not meet the management standards set forth in this part, or

(4) Has not conformed to terms and conditions of previous awards, or

(5) Is otherwise not responsible; and if the awarding agency determines that an award will be made, special conditions and/or restrictions shall correspond to the high risk condition and shall be included in the award.

(b) Special conditions or restrictions may include:

(1) Payment on a reimbursement basis;

(2) Withholding authority to proceed to the next phase until receipt of evidence of acceptable performance within a given funding period;

(3) Requiring additional, more detailed financial reports;

(4) Additional project monitoring;

(5) Requiring the grante or subgrantee to obtain technical or management assistance; or

(6) Establishing additional prior approvals.

(c) If an awarding agency decides to impose such conditions, the awarding official will notify the grantee or subgrantee as early as possible, in writing, of:

(1) The nature of the special conditions/restrictions;

(2) The reason(s) for imposing them;

(3) The corrective actions which must be taken before they will be removed and the time allowed for completing the corrective actions and

(4) The method of requesting reconsideration of the conditions/restrictions imposed.

Subpart C—Post-Award Requirements

FINANCIAL ADMINISTRATION

§ 92.20 Standards for financial management systems.

(a) A State must expand and account for grant funds in accordance with State laws and procedures for expending and accounting for its own funds. Fiscal control and accounting procedures of the State, as well as its subgrantees and cost-type contractors, must be sufficient to—

(1) Permit preparation of reports required by this part and the statutes authorizing the grant, and

(2) Permit the tracing of funds to a level of expenditures adequate to establish that such funds have not been used in violation of the restrictions and prohibitions of applicable statutes.

(b) The financial management systems of other grantees and subgrantees must meet the following standards:

(1) *Financial reporting.* Accurate, current, and complete disclosure of the financial results of financially assisted activities must be made in accordance with the financial reporting requirements of the grant or subgrant.

(2) *Accounting records.* Grantees and subgrantees must maintain records which adequately identify the source and application of funds provided for financially-assisted activities. These records must contain information pertaining to grant or subgrant awards and authorizations, obligations, unobligated balances, assets, liabilities, outlays or expenditures, and income.

(3) *Internal control.* Effective control and accountability must be maintained for all grant and subgrant cash, real and personal property, and other assets. Grantees and subgrantees must adequately safeguard all such property and must assure that it is used solely for authorized purposes.

(4) *Budget control.* Actual expenditures or outlays must be compared with budgeted amounts for each grant or subgrant. Financial information must be related to performance or productivity data, including the develop-

ment of unit cost information whenever appropriate or specifically required in the grant or subgrant agreement. If unit cost data are required, estimates based on available documentation will be accepted whenever possible.

(5) *Allowable cost.* Applicable OMB cost principles, agency program regulations, and the terms of grant and subgrant agreements will be followed in determining the reasonableness, allowability, and allocability of costs.

(6) *Source documentation.* Accounting records must be supported by such source documentation as cancelled checks, paid bills, payrolls, time and attendance records, contract and subgrant award documents, etc.

(7) *Cash management.* Procedures for minimizing the time elapsing between the transfer of funds from the U.S. Treasury and disbursement by grantees and subgrantees must be followed whenever advance payment procedures are used. Grantees must establish reasonable procedures to ensure the receipt of reports on subgrantees' cash balances and cash disbursements in sufficient time to enable them to prepare complete and accurate cash transactions reports to the awarding agency. When advances are made by letter-of-credit or electronic transfer of funds methods, the grantee must make drawdowns as close as possible to the time of making disbursements. Grantees must monitor cash drawdowns by their subgrantees to assure that they conform substantially to the same standards of timing and amount as apply to advances to the grantees.

(c) An awarding agency may review the adequacy of the financial management system of any applicant for financial assistance as part of a preaward review or at any time subsequent to award.

§ 92.21 Payment.

(a) *Scope.* This section prescribes the basic standard and the methods under which a Federal agency will make payments to grantees, and grantees will make payments to subgrantees and contractors.

(b) *Basic standard.* Methods and procedures for payment shall minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds and disbursement by the grantee or subgrantee, in accordance with Treasury regulations at 31 CFR Part 205.

(c) *Advances.* Grantees and subgrantees shall be paid in advance, provided they maintain or demonstrate the willingness and ability to maintain procedures to minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of the funds and their disbursement by the grantee or subgrantee.

(d) *Reimbursement.* Reimbursement shall be the preferred method when the requirements in paragraph (c) of this section are not met. Grantees and subgrantees may also be paid by reimbursement for any construction grant. Except as otherwise specified in regulation, Federal agencies shall not use the percentage of completion method to pay construction grants. The grantee or subgrantee may use that method to pay its construction contractor, and if it does, the awarding agency's payments to the grantee or subgrantee will be based on the grantee's or subgrantee's actual rate of disbursement.

(e) *Working capital advances.* If a grantee cannot meet the criteria for advance payments described in paragraph (c) of this section, and the Federal agency has determined that reimbursement is not feasible because the grantee lacks sufficient working capital, the awarding agency may provide cash or a working capital advance basis. Under this procedure the awarding agency shall advance cash to the grantee to cover its estimated disbursement needs for an initial period generally geared to the grantee's disbursing cycle. Thereafter, the awarding agency shall reimburse the grantee for its actual cash disbursements. The working capital advance method of payment shall not be used by grantees or subgrantees if the reason for using such method is the unwillingness or inability of the grantee to provide timely advances to the subgrantee to meet the subgrantee's actual cash disbursements.

(f) *Effect of program income, refunds, and audit recoveries on payment.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees shall disburse repayments to and interest earned on a revolving fund before requesting additional cash payments for the same activity.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (f)(1) of this section, grantees and subgrantees shall disburse program income, rebates, refunds, contract settlements, audit recoveries and interest earned on such funds before requesting additional cash payments.

(g) *Withholding payments.* (1) Unless otherwise required by Federal statute, awarding agencies shall not withhold payments for proper charges incurred by grantees or subgrantees unless—

(i) The grantee or subgrantee has failed to comply with grant award conditions or

(ii) The grantee or subgrantee is indebted to the United States.

(2) Cash withheld for failure to comply with grant award condition, but without suspension of the grant, shall be released to the grantee upon subsequent compliance. When a grant is suspended, payment adjustments will be made in accordance with § 92.43(c).

(3) A Federal agency shall not make payment to grantees for amounts that are withheld by grantees or subgrantees from payment to contractors to assure satisfactory completion of work. Payments shall be made by the Federal agency when the grantees or subgrantees actually disburse the withheld funds to the contractors or to escrow accounts established to assure satisfactory completion of work.

(h) *Cash depositories.* (1) Consistent with the national goal of expanding the opportunities for minority business enterprises, grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use minority banks (a bank which is owned at least 50 percent by minority group members). A list of minority owned banks can be obtained from the Minority Business Development Agency, Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230.

(2) A grantee or subgrantee shall maintain a separate bank account only when required by Federal-State agreement.

(i) *Interest earned on advances.* Except for interest earned on advances of funds exempt under the Intergovernmental Cooperation Act (31 U.S.C. 6501 et seq.) and the Indian Self-Determination Act (23 U.S.C. 450), grantees and subgrantees shall promptly, but at least quarterly, remit interest earned on advances to the Federal agency. The grantee or subgrantee may keep interest amounts up to $100 per year for administrative expenses.

§ 92.22 Allowable costs.

(a) *Limitation on use of funds.* Grant funds may be used only for:

(1) The allowable costs of the grantees, subgrantees and cost-type contractors, including allowable costs in the form of payments to fixed-price contractors; and

(2) Reasonable fees or profit to cost-type contractors but not any fee or profit (or other increment above allowable costs) to the grantee or subgrantee.

(b) *Applicable cost principles.* For each kind of organization, there is a set of Federal principles for determining allowable costs. Allowable costs will be determined in accordance with the cost principles applicable to the organization incurring the costs. The following chart lists the kinds of organizations and the applicable cost principles.

For the costs of a—	Use the principles in—
State, local or Indian tribal government.	OMB Circular A-87.
Private nonprofit organization other than an (1) institution of higher education, (2) hospital, or (3) organization named in OMB Circular A-122 as not subject to that circular.	OMB Circular A-122.
Educational institutions.	OMB Circular A-21.
For-profit organization other than a hospital and an organization named in OBM Circular A-122 as not subject to that circular.	48 CFR Part 31. Contract Cost Principles and Procedures, or uniform cost accounting standards th comply with cost principles acceptable to the Federal agency.

§ 92.23 Period of availability of funds.

(a) *General.* Where a funding period is specified, a grantee may charge to the award only costs resulting from obligations of the funding period unless carryover of unobligated balances is permitted, in which case the carryover balances may be charged for costs resulting from obligations of the subsequent funding period.

(b) *Liquidation of obligations.* A grantee must liquidate all obligations incurred under the award not later than 90 days after the end of the funding period (or as specified in a program regulation) to coincide with the submission of the annual Financial Status Report (SF-269). The Federal agency may extend this deadline at the request of the grantee.

§ 92.24 Matching or cost sharing.

(a) *Basic rule: Costs and contributions acceptable.* With the qualifications and exceptions listed in paragraph (b) of this section, a matching or cost sharing requirement may be satisfied by either or both of the following:

(1) Allowable costs incurred by the grantee, subgrantee or a cost-type contractor under the assistance agreement. This includes allowable costs borne by non-Federal grants or by others cash donations from non-Federal third parties.

(2) The value of third party in-kind contributions applicable to the period to which the cost sharing or matching requirements applies.

(b) *Qualifications and exceptions*—(1) *Costs borne by other Federal grant agreements.* Except as provided by Federal statute, a cost sharing or matching requirement may not be met by costs borne by another Federal grant. This prohibition does not apply to income earned by a grantee or subgrantee from a contract awarded under another Federal grant.

(2) *General revenue sharing.* For the purpose of this section, general revenue sharing funds distributed under 31 U.S.C. 6702 are not considered Federal grant funds.

(3) *Cost or contributions counted towards other Federal costs-sharing requirements.* Neither costs nor the values of third party in-kind contributions may count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement of a grant agreement if they have been or will be counted towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement of another Federal grant agreement, a Federal procurement contract, or any other award of Federal funds.

(4) *Costs financed by program income.* Costs financed by program income, as defined in § 92.25, shall not count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement unless they are expressly permitted in the terms of the assistance agreement. (This use of general program income is described in § 92.25(g).)

(5) *Services or property financed by income earned by contractors.* Contractors under a grant may earn income from the activities carried out under the contract in addition to the amounts earned from the party awarding the contract. No costs of services or property supported by this income may count toward satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement unless other provisions of the grant agreement expressly permit this kind of income to be used to meet the requirement.

(6) *Records.* Costs and third party in-kind contributions counting towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement must be verifiable from the records of grantees and subgrantee or cost-type contractors. These records must show how the value placed on third party in-kind contributions was derived. To the extent feasible, volunteer services will be supported by the same methods that the organization uses to support the allocability of regular personnel costs.

(7) *Special standards for third party in-kind contributions.* (i) Third party in-kind contributions count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement only where, if the party receiving the contributions were to pay for them, the payments would be allowable costs.

(ii) Some third party in-kind contributions are goods and services that, if the grantee, subgrantee, or contractor receiving the contribution had to pay for them, the payments would have been an indirect costs. Costs sharing or matching credit for such contributions shall be given only if the grantee, subgrantee, or contractor has established, along with its regular indirect cost rate, a special rate for allocating to individual projects or programs the value of the contributions.

(iii) A third party in-kind contribution to a fixed-price contract may count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement only if it results in:

(A) An increase in the services or property provided under the contract (without additional cost to the grantee or subgrantee) or

(B) A cost savings to the grantee or subgrantee.

(iv) The values placed on third party in-kind contributions for cost sharing or matching purposes will conform to the rules in the succeeding sections of this part. If a third party in-kind contribution is a type not treated in those sections, the value placed upon it shall be fair and reasonable.

(c) *Valuation of donated services*—(1) *Volunteer services.* Unpaid services provided to a grantee or subgrantee by individuals will be valued at rates consistent with those ordinarily paid for similar work in the grantee's or subgrantee's organization. If the grantee or subgrantee does not have employees performing similar work, the rates will be consistent with those ordinarily paid by other employers for similar work in the same labor market. In either case, a reasonable amount for fringe benefits may be included in the valuation.

(2) *Employees of other organizations.* When an employer other than a grantee, subgrantee, or cost-type contractor furnishes free of charge the services of an employee in the employee's normal line of work, the services will be valued at the employee's regular rate of pay exclusive of the employee's fringe benefits and overhead costs. If the services are in a different line of work, paragraph (c)(1) of this section applies.

(d) *Valuation of third party donated supplies and loaned equipment or space.* (1) If a third party donates supplies, the contribution will be valued at the market value of the supplies at the time of donation.

(2) If a third party donates the use of equipment or space in a building but retains title, the contribution will be valued at the fair rental rate of the equipment or space.

(e) *Valuation of third party donated equipment, buildings, and land.* If a third party donates equipment, buildings, or land, and title passes to a grantee or subgrantee, the treatment of the donated property will depend upon the purpose of the grant or subgrant, as follows:

(1) *Awards for capital expenditures.* If the purpose of the grant or subgrant is to assist the grantee or subgrantee in the acquisition of property, the market value of that property at the time of donation may be counted as cost sharing or matching.

(2) *Other awards.* If assisting in the acquisition of property is not the purpose of the grant or subgrant, paragraphs (e)(2) (i) and (ii) of this section apply:

(i) If approval is obtained from the awarding agency, the market value at the time of donation of the donated equipment or buildings and the fair rental rate of the donated land may be counted as cost sharing or matching. In the case of a subgrant, the terms of the grant agreement may require that the approval be obtained from the Federal agency as well as the grantee. In all cases, the approval may be given only if a purchase of the equipment or rental of the land would be approved as an allowable direct cost. If any part of the donated property was acquired with Federal funds, only the non-federal share of the property may be counted as cost-sharing or matching.

(ii) If approval is not obtained under paragraph (e)(2)(i) of this section, no amount may be counted for donated land, and only depreciation or use allowances may be counted for donated equipment and buildings. The depreciation or use allowances for this property are not treated as third party in-kind contributions. Instead, they are treated as costs incurred by the grantee or subgrantee. They are computed and allocated (usually as indirect costs) in accordance with the cost principles specified in § 92.22, in the same way as depreciation or use allowances for purchased equipment and buildings. The amount of depreciation or use allowances for donated equipment and buildings is based on the property's market value at the time it was donated.

(f) *Valuation of grantee or subgrantee donated real property for construction/acquisition.* If a grantee or subgrantee donates real property for a construction or facilities acquisition project, the current market value of that property may be counted as cost sharing or matching. If any part of the donated property was acquired with Federal funds, only the non-federal share of the property may be counted as cost sharing or matching.

(g) *Appraisal of real property.* In some cases under paragraphs (d), (e) and (f) of this section, it will be necessary to establish the market value of land or a building or the fair rental rate of land or of space in a building. In these cases, the Federal agency may require the market value or fair rental value be set by an independent appraiser, and that the value or rate be certified by the grantee. This requirement will also be imposed by the grantee on subgrantees.

§ 92.25 Program income.

(a) *General.* Grantees are encouraged to earn income to defray program costs. Program income includes income from fees for services performed, from the use or rental of real or personal property acquired with grant funds, from the sale of commodities or items fabricated under a grant agreement, and from payments of principal and interest on loans made with grant funds. Except as otherwise provided in regulations of the Federal agency, program income does not include interest on grant funds, rebates, credits, discounts, refunds, etc. and interest earned on any of them.

(b) *Definition of program income.* Program income means gross income received by the grantee or subgrantee directly generated by a grant supported activity, or earned only as a result of the grant agreement during the grant period. "During the grant period" is the time between the effective date of the award and the ending date of the award reflected in the final financial report.

(c) *Cost of generating program income.* If authorized by Federal regulations or the grant agreement, costs incident to the generation of program income may be deducted from gross income to determine program income.

(d) *Governmental revenues.* Taxes special assessments, levies, fines, and other such revenues raised by a grantee or subgrantee are not program income unless the revenues are specifically identified in the grant agreement or Federal agency regulations as program income.

(e) *Royalties.* Income from royalties and license fees for copyrighted material, patents, and inventions developed by a grantee or subgrantee is program income only if the revenues are specifically identified in the grant agreement or Federal agency regulations as program income. (See § 92.34.)

(f) *Property.* Proceeds from the sale of real property or equipment will be handled in accordance with the requirements of §§ 92.31 and 92.32.

(g) *Use of program income.* Program income shall be deducted from outlays which may be both Federal and non-Federal as described below, unless the Federal agency regulations or the grant agreement specify another alternative (or a combination of the alternatives). In specifying alternatives, the Federal agency may distinguish between income earned by the grantee and income earned by subgrantees and between the sources, kinds, or amounts of income. When Federal agencies authorize the alternatives in paragraphs (g) (2) and (3) of this section, program income in excess of any limits stipulated shall also be deducted from outlays.

(1) *Deduction.* Ordinarily program income shall be deducted from total allowable costs to determine the net allowable costs. Program income shall be used for current costs unless the Federal agency authorizes otherwise. Program income which the grantee did not anticipate at the time of the award shall be used to reduce the Federal agency and grantee contributions rather than to increase the funds committed to the project.

(2) *Addition.* When authorized, program income may be added to the funds committed to the grant agreement by the Federal agency and the grantee. The program income shall be used for the purposes and under the conditions of the grant agreement.

(3) *Cost sharing or matching.* When authorized, program income may be used to meet the cost sharing or matching requirement of the grant agreement. The amount of the Federal grant award remains the same.

(h) *Income after the award period.* There are no Federal requirements governing the disposition of program income earned after the end of the award period (i.e., until the ending date of the final financial report, see paragraph (a) of this section), unless the terms of the agreement or the Federal agency regulations provide otherwise.

§ 92.26 Non-Federal audit.

(a) *Basic rule.* Grantees and subgrantees are responsible for obtaining audits in accordance with the Single Audit Act of 1984 (31 U.S.C. 7501-7) and Federal agency implementing regulations. The audits shall be made by an independent auditor in accordance with generally accepted government auditing standards covering financial and compliance audits.

(b) *Subgrantees.* State or local governments, as those terms are defined for purposes of the Single Audit Act, that receive Federal financial assistance and provide $25,000 or more of it in a fiscal year to a subgrantee shall:

(1) Determine whether State or local subgrantees have met the audit requirements of the Act and whether subgrantees covered by OMB Circular A-110, "Uniform Requirements for Grants and Other Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals and Other Nonprofit Organizations" have met the audit requirement. Commercial contractors (private forprofit and private and governmental organizations) providing goods and services to State and local governments are not required to have a single audit performed. State and local governments should use their own procedures to ensure that the contractor has complied with laws and regulations affecting the expenditure of Federal funds;

(2) Determine whether the subgrantee spent Federal assistance funds provided in accordance with applicable laws and regulations. This may be accomplished by reviewing an audit of the subgrantee made in accordance with the Act, Circular A-110, or through other means (e.g., program reviews) if the subgrantee has not had such an audit;

(3) Ensure that appropriate corrective action is taken within six months after receipt of the audit report in instance of noncompliance with Federal laws and regulations;

(4) Consider whether subgrantee audits necessitate adjustment of the grantee's own records; and

(5) Require each subgrantee to permit independent auditors to have access to the records and financial statements.

(c) *Auditor selection.* In arranging for audit services, § 92.36 shall be followed.

CHANGES, PROPERTY, AND SUBAWARDS

§ 92.30 Changes.

(a) *General.* Grantees and subgrantees are permitted to rebudget within the approved direct cost budget to meet unanticipated requirements and may make limited program changes to the approved project. However, unless waived by the awarding agency, certain types of post-award changes in budgets and projects shall require the prior written approval of the awarding agency.

(1) Approvals shall not be valid unless they are in writing, and signed by at least one of the following officials of the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS):

(i) The responsible Grants Officer or his or her designee;

(ii) The head of the HHS Operating or Staff Division that awarded the grant; or

(iii) The head of the Regional Office of the HHS Operating or Staff Division that awarded the grant.

(b) *Relation to cost principles.* The applicable cost principles (see § 92.22) contain requirements for prior approval of certain types of costs. Except where waived, those requirements apply to all grants and subgrants even if paragraphs (c) through (f) of this section do not.

(c) *Budget changes*—(1) *Nonconstruction projects.* Except as stated in other regulations or an award document, grantees or subgrantees shall obtain the prior approval of the awarding agency whenever any of the following changes is anticipated under a nonconstruction award:

(i) Any revision which would result in the need for additional funding.

(ii) Unless waived by the awarding agency, cumulative transfers among direct cost categories, or, if applicable, among separately budgeted programs, projects, functions, or activities which exceed or are expected to exceed ten percent of the current total approved budget, whenever the awarding agency's share exceeds $100,000.

(iii) Transfer of funds allotted for training allowances (i.e., from direct payments to trainees to other expense categories).

(2) *Construction projects.* Grantees and subgrantees shall obtain prior written approval for any budget revision which would result in the need for additional funds.

(3) *Combined construction and nonconstruction projects.* When a grant or subgrant provides funding for both construction and nonconstruction activities, the grantee or subgrantee must obtain prior written approval from the awarding agency before making any fund or budget transfer from nonconstruction to construction or vice versa.

(d) *Programmatic changes.* Grantees or subgrantees must obtain the prior approval of the awarding agency whenever any of the following actions is anticipated:

(1) Any revision of the scope or objectives of the project (regardless of whether there is an associated budget revision requiring prior approval).

(2) Need to extend the period of availability of funds.

(3) Changes in key persons in cases where specified in an application or a grant award. In research projects, a change in the project director or principal investigator shall always require approval unless waived by the awarding agency.

(4) Under nonconstruction projects, contracting out, subgranting (if authorized by law) or otherwise obtaining the services of a third party to perform activities which are central to the purposes of the award. This approval requirement is in addition to the approval requirements of § 92.36 but does not apply to the procurement of equipment, supplies, and general support services.

(5) Providing medical care to individuals under research grants.

(e) *Additional prior approval requirements.* The awarding agency may not require prior approval for any budget revision which is not described in paragraph (c) of this section.

(f) *Requesting prior approval.* (1) A request for prior approval of any budget revision will be in the same budget formal the grantee used in its application and shall be accompanied by a narrative justification for the proposed revision.

(2) A request for a prior approval under the applicable Federal cost principles (see § 92.22) may be made by letter.

(3) A request by a subgrantee for prior approval will be addressed in writing to the grantee. The grantee will promptly review such request and shall approve or disapprove the request in writing. A grantee will not approve any budget or project revision which is inconsistent with the purpose or terms and conditions of the Federal grant to the grantee. If the revision requested by the subgrantee would result in a change to the grantee's approved project which requires Federal prior approval, the grantee will obtain the Federal agency's approval before approving the subgrantee's request.

[53 FR 8079, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 53 FR 8079, Mar. 11, 1988]

§ 92.31 Real property.

(a) *Title.* Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to real property acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest upon acquisition in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) *Use.* Except as otherwise provided by Federal statutes, real property will be used for the originally authorized purposes as long as needed for that purposes, and the grantee or subgrantee shall not dispose of or encumber its title or other interests.

(c) *Disposition.* When real property is no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, the grantee or subgrantee will request disposition instructions from the awarding agency. The instructions will provide for one of the following alternatives:

(1) *Retention of title.* Retain title after compensating the awarding agency. The amount paid to the awarding agency will be computed by applying the awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase to the fair market value of the property. However, in those situations where a grantee or subgrantee is disposing of real property acquired with grant funds and acquiring replacement real property under the same program, the net proceeds from the disposition may be used as an offset to the cost of the replacement property.

(2) *Sale of property.* Sell the property and compensate the awarding agency. The amount due to the awarding agency will be calculated by applying the awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase to the proceeds of the sale after deduction of any actual and reasonable selling and fixing-up expenses. If the grant is still active, the net proceeds from sale may be offset against the original cost of the property. When a grantee or subgrantee is directed to sell property, sales procedures shall be followed that provide for competition to the extent practicable and result in the highest possible return.

(3) *Transfer of title.* Transfer title to the awarding agency or to a third-party designated/approved by the awarding agency. The grantee or subgrantee shall be paid an amount calculated by applying the grantee or subgrantee's percentage of participation in the purchase of the real property to the current fair market value of the property.

§ 92.32 Equipment.

(a) *Title.* Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to equipment acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest upon acquisition in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) *States.* A State will use, manage, and dispose of equipment acquired under a grant by the State in accordance with State laws and procedures. Other grantees and subgrantees will follow paragraphs (c) through (e) of this section.

(c) *Use.* (1) Equipment shall be used by the grantee or subgrantee in the program or project for which it was acquired as long as needed, whether or not the project or program continues to be supported by Federal funds. When no longer needed for the original program or project, the equipment may be used in other activities currently or previously supported by a Federal agency.

(2) The grantee or subgrantee shall also make equipment available for use on other projects or programs currently or previously supported by the Federal Government, providing such use will not interfere with the work on the projects or program for which it was originally acquired. First preference for other use shall be given to other programs or projects supported by the awarding agency. User fees should be considered if appropriate.

(3) Notwithstanding the encouragement in § 92.25(a) to earn program income, the grantee or subgrantee must not use equipment acquired with grant funds to provide services for a fee to compete unfairly with private companies that provide equivalent services, unless specifically permitted or contemplated by Federal statute.

(4) When acquiring replacement equipment, the grantee or subgrantee may use the equipment to be replaced as a trade-in or sell the property and use the proceeds to offset the cost of the replacement property, subject to the approval of the awarding agency.

(d) *Management requirements.* Procedures for managing equipment (including replacement equipment), whether acquired in whole or in part with grant funds, until disposition takes place will, as a minimum, meet the following requirements:

(1) Property records must be maintained that include a description of the property, a serial number or other identification number, the source of property, who holds title, the acquisition date, and cost of the property, percentage of Federal participation in the cost of the property, the location,

use and condition of the property, and any ultimate disposition data including the date of disposal and sale price of the property.

(2) A physical inventory of the property must be taken and the results reconciled with the property records at least once every two years.

(3) A control system must be developed to ensure adequate safeguards to prevent loss, damage, or theft of the property. Any loss, damage, or theft shall be investigated.

(4) Adequate maintenance procedures must be developed to keep the property in good condition.

(5) If the grantee or subgrantee is authorized or required to sell the property, proper sales procedures must be established to ensure the highest possible return.

(e) *Disposition.* When original or replacement equipment acquired under a grant or subgrant is no longer needed for the original project or program or for other activities currently or previously supported by a Federal agency, disposition of the equipment will be made as follows:

(1) Items of equipment with a current per-unit fair market value of less than $5,000 may be retained, sold or otherwise disposed of with no further obligation to the awarding agency.

(2) Items of equipment with a current per unit fair market value in excess of $5,000 may be retained or sold and the awarding agency shall have a right to an amount calculated by multiplying the current market value or proceeds from sale by the awarding agency's share of the equipment.

(3) In cases where a grantee or subgrantee fails to take appropriate disposition actions, the awarding agency may direct the grantee or subgrantee to take excess and disposition actions.

(f) *Federal equipment.* In the event a grantee or subgrantee is provided federally-owned equipment:

(1) Title will remain vested in the Federal Government.

(2) Grantees or subgrantees will manage the equipment in accordance with Federal agency rules and procedures, and submit an annual inventory listing.

(3) When the equipment is no longer needed, the grantee or subgrantee will request disposition instructions from the Federal agency.

(g) *Right to transfer title.* The Federal awarding agency may reserve the right to transfer title to the Federal Government or a third part named by the awarding agency when such a third party is otherwise eligible under existing statutes. Such transfers shall be subject to the following standards:

(1) The property shall be identified in the grant or otherwise made known to the grantee in writing.

(2) The Federal awarding agency shall issue disposition instruction within 120 calendar days after the end of the Federal support of the project for which it was acquired. If the Federal awarding agency fails to issue disposition instructions within the 120 calendar-day period the grantee shall follow § 92.32(e).

(3) When title to equipment is transferred, the grantee shall be paid an amount calculated by applying the percentage of participation in the purchase to the current fair market value of the property.

§ 92.33 Supplies.

(a) *Title.* Title to supplies acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest, upon acquisition, in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) *Disposition.* If there is a residual inventory of unused supplies exceeding $5,000 in total aggregate fair market value upon termination or completion of the award, and if the supplies are not needed for any other federally sponsored programs or projects, the grantee or subgrantee shall compensate the awarding agency for its share.

§ 92.34 Copyrights.

The Federal awarding agency reserves a royalty-free, nonexclusive, and irrevocable license to reproduce, publish or otherwise use, and to authorize others to use, for Federal Government purposes:

(a) The copyright in any work developed under a grant, subgrant, or contract under a grant or subgrant; and

(b) Any rights of copyright to which a grantee, subgrantee or a contractor purchases ownership with grant support.

§ 92.35 Subawards to debarred and suspended parties.

Grantees and subgrantees must not make any award or permit any award (subgrant or contract) at any tier to any party which is debarred or suspended or is otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal assistance programs under Executive Order 12549, "Debarment and Suspension."

§ 92.36 Procurement.

(a) *States.* When procuring property and services under a grant, a State will follow the same policies and procedures it uses for procurements from its non-Federal funds. The State will ensure that every purchase order or other contract includes any clauses required by Federal statutes and executive orders and their implementing regulations. Other grantees and subgrantees will follow paragraphs (b) through (i) in this section.

(b) *Procurement standards.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees will use their own procurement procedures which reflect applicable State and local laws and regulations, provided that the procurements conform to applicable Federal law and the standards identified in this section.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a contract administration system which ensures that contractors perform in accordance with the terms, conditions, and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders.

(3) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a written code of standards of conduct governing the performance of their employees engaged in the award and administration of contracts. No employee, officer or agent of the grantee or subgrantee shall participate in selection, or in the award or administration of a contract supported by Federal funds if a conflict of interest, real or apparent, would be involved. Such a conflict would arise when:

(i) The employee, officer or agent,

(ii) Any member of his immediate family,

(iii) His or her partner, or

(iv) An organization which employs, or is about to employ, any of the above, has a financial or other interest in the firm selected for award. The grantee's or subgrantee's officers, employees or agents will neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors or anything of monetary value from contractors, potential contractors, or parties to subagreements. Grantee and subgrantees may set minimum rules where the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal intrinsic value. To the extent permitted by State or local law or regulations, such standards or conduct will provide for penalties, sanctions, or other disciplinary actions for violations of such standards by the grantee's and subgrantee's officers, employees, or agents, or by contractors or their agents. The awarding agency may in regulation provide additional prohibitions relative to real, apparent, or potential conflicts of interest.

(4) Grantee and subgrantee procedures will provide for a review of proposed procurements to avoid purchase of unnecessary or duplicative items. Consideration should be given to consolidating or breaking out procurements to obtain a more economical purchase. Where appropriate, an analysis will be made of lease versus purchase alternatives, and any other appropriate analysis to determine the most economical approach.

(5) To foster greater economy and efficiency, grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to enter into State and local intergovernmental agreements for procurement or use of common goods and services.

(6) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use Federal excess and surplus property in lieu of purchasing new equipment and property whenever such use is feasible and reduces project costs.

(7) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use value engineering clauses in contracts for construction projects of sufficient size to offer reasonable opportunities for cost reductions. Value engineering is a systematic and creative anaylsis of each contract item or task to ensure that its es-

sential function is provided at the overall lower cost.

(8) Grantees and subgrantees will make awards only to responsible contractors possessing the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of a proposed procurement. Consideration will be given to such matters as contractor integrity, compliance with public policy, record of past performance, and financial and technical resources.

(9) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain records sufficient to detail the significant history of a procurement. These records will include, but are not necessarily limited to the following: rationale for the method of procurement, selection of contract type, contractor selection or rejection, and the basis for the contract price.

(10) Grantees and subgrantees will use time and material type contracts only—

(i) After a determination that no other contract is suitable, and

(ii) If the contract includes a ceiling price that the contractor exceeds at its own risk.

(11) Grantees and subgrantees alone will be responsible, in accordance with good administrative practice and sound business judgment, for the settlement of all contractual and administrative issues arising out of procurements. These issues include, but are not limited to source evaluation, protests, disputes, and claims. These standards do not relieve the grantee or subgrantee of any contractual responsibilities under its contracts. Federal agencies will not substitute their judgment for that of the grantee or subgrantee unless the matter is primarily a Federal concern. Violations of law will be referred to the local, State, or Federal authority having proper jurisdiction.

(12) Grantees and subgrantees will have protest procedures to handle and resolve disputes relating to their procurements and shall in all instances disclose information regarding the protest to the awarding agency. A protestor must exhaust all administrative remedies with the grantee and subgrantee before pursuing a protest with the Federal agency. Reviews of protests by the Federal agency will be limited to:

(i) Violations of Federal law or regulations and the standards of this section (violations of State or local law will be under the jurisdiction of State or local authorities) and

(ii) Violations of the grantee's or subgrantee's protest procedures for failure to review a complaint or protest. Protests received by the Federal agency other than those specified above will be referred to the grantee or subgrantee.

(c) *Competition.* (1) All procurement transactions will be conducted in a manner providing full and open competition consistent with the standards of § 92.36. Some of the situations considered to be restrictive of competition include but are not limited to:

(i) Placing unreasonable requirements on firms in order for them to qualify to do business,

(ii) Requiring unnecessary experience and excessive bonding,

(iii) Noncompetitive pricing practices between firms or between affiliated companies,

(iv) Noncompetitive awards to consultants that are on retainer contracts,

(v) Organizational conflicts of interest,

(vi) Specifying only a "brand name" product instead of allowing "an equal" product to be offered and describing the performance of other relevant requirements of the procurement, and

(vii) Any arbitrary action in the procurement process.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will conduct procurements in a manner that prohibits the use of statutorily or administratively imposed in-State or local geographical preferences in the evaluation of bids or proposals, except in those cases where applicable Federal statutes expressly mandate or encourage geographic preference. Nothing in this section preempts State licensing laws. When contracting for architectural and engineering (A/E) services, geographic location may be a selection criteria provided its application leaves an appropriate number of qualified firms, given the nature and size of the project, to compete for the contract.

(3) Grantees will have written selection procedures for procurement transactions. These procedures will ensure that all solicitations:

(i) Incorporate a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements for the material, product, or service to be procured. Such description shall not, in competitive procurements, contain features which unduly restrict competition. The description may include a statement of the qualitative nature of the material, product or service to be procured, and when necessary, shall set forth those minimum essential characteristics and standards to which it must conform if it is to satisfy its intended use. Detailed product specifications should be avoided if at all possible. When it is impractical or uneconomical to make a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements, a "brand name or equal" description may be used as a means to define the performance or other salient requirements of a procurement. The specific features of the named brand which must be met by offerors shall be clearly stated; and

(ii) Identify all requirements which the offerors must fulfill and all other factors to be used in evaluating bids or proposals.

(4) Grantees and subgrantees will ensure that all prequalified lists of persons, firms, or products which are used in acquiring goods and services are current and include enough qualified sources to ensure maximum open and free competition. Also, grantees and subgrantees will not preclude potential bidders from qualifying during the solicitation period.

(d) *Methods of procurement to be followed*—(1) *Procurement by small purchase procedures.* Small purchase procedures are those relatively simple and informal procurement methods for securing services, supplies, or other property that do not cost more than $25,000 in the aggregate. If small purchase procurements are used, price or rate quotations will be obtained from an adequate number of qualified sources.

(2) Procurement by *sealed bids* (formal advertising). Bids are publicly solicited and a firm-fixed-price contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the invitation for bids, is the lowest in price. The sealed bid method is the preferred method for procuring construction, if the conditions in § 92.36(d)(2)(i) apply.

(i) In order for sealed bidding to be feasible, the following conditions should be present:

(A) A complete, adequate, and realistic specification or purchase description is available;

(B) Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete effectively for the business; and

(C) The procurement lends itself to a firm fixed price contract and the selection of the successful bidder can be made principally on the basis of price.

(ii) If sealed bids are used, the following requirements apply:

(A) The invitation for bids will be publicly advertised and bids shall be solicited from an adequate number of known suppliers, providing them sufficient time prior to the date set for opening the bids;

(B) The invitation for bids, which will include any specifications and pertinent attachments, shall define the items or services in order for the bidder to properly respond;

(C) All bids will be publicly opened at the time and place prescribed in the invitation for bids;

(D) A firm fixed-price contract award will be made in writing to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder. Where specified in bidding documents, factors such as discounts, transportation cost, and life cycle costs shall be considered in determining which bid is lowest. Payment discounts will only be used to determine the low bid when prior experience indicates that such discounts are usually taken advantage of; and

(E) Any or all bids may be rejected if there is a sound documented reason.

(3) Procurement by *competitive proposals.* The technique of competitive proposals is normally conducted with more than one source submitting an offer, and either a fixed-price or cost-reimbursement type contract is awarded. It is generally used when conditions are not appropriate for the use

of sealed bids. If this method is used, the following requirements apply:

(i) Requests for proposals will be publicized and identify all evaluation factors and their relative importance. Any response to publicized requests for proposals shall be honored to the maximum extent practical;

(ii) Proposals will be solicited from an adequate number of qualified sources;

(iii) Grantees and subgrantees will have a method for conducting technical evaluations of the proposals received and for selecting awardees;

(iv) Awards will be made to the responsible firm whose proposal is most advantageous to the program, with price and other factors considered; and

(v) Grantees and subgrantees may use competitive proposal procedures for qualifications-based procurement of architectural/engineering (A/E) professional services whereby competitors' qualifications are evaluated and the most qualified competitor is selected, subject to negotiation of fair and reasonable compensation. The method, where price is not used as a selection factor, can only be used in procurement of A/E professional services. It cannot be used to purchase other types of services though A/E firms are a potential source to perform the proposed effort.

(4) Procurement by *noncompetitive proposals* is procurement through solicitation of a proposal from only one source, or after solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

(i) Procurement by noncompetitive proposals may be used only when the award of a contract is infeasible under small purchase procedures, sealed bids or competitive proposals and one of the following circumstances applies:

(A) The item is available only from a single source;

(B) The public exigency or emergency for the requirement will not permit a delay resulting from competitive solicitation.

(C) The awarding agency authorizes noncompetitive proposals; or

(D) After solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

(ii) Cost analysis, i.e., verifying the proposed cost data, the projections of the data, and the evaluation of the specific elements of costs and profit, is required.

(iii) Grantees and subgrantees may be required to submit the proposed procurement to the awarding agency for pre-award review in accordance with paragraph (g) of this section.

(e) *Contracting with small and minority firms, women's business enterprise and labor surplus area firms.* (1) The grantee and subgrantee will take all necessary affirmative steps to assure that minority firms, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms are used when possible.

(2) Affirmative steps shall include:

(i) Placing qualified small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises on solicitation lists;

(ii) Assuring that small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;

(iii) Dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;

(iv) Establishing delivery schedules, where the requirement permits, which encourage participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;

(v) Using the services and assistance of the Small Business Administration, and the Minority Business Development Agency of the Department of Commerce; and

(vi) Requiring the prime contractor, if subcontracts are to be let, to take the affirmative steps listed in paragraphs (e)(2) (i) through (v) of this section.

(f) *Contract cost and price.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees must perform a cost or price analysis in connection with every procurement action including contract modifications. The method and degree of analysis is dependent on the facts surrounding the particular procurement situation, but as a starting point, grantees must make independent estimates before receiving bids or proposals. A cost analysis must be performed when the offeror is required to submit the elements of his estimated cost, e.g., under professional, consulting, and architectural engineering services contracts. A cost analysis will be necessary when adequate price competition is lacking, and for sole source procurements, including contract modifications or change orders, unless price resonableness can be established on the basis of a catalog or market price of a commercial product sold in substantial quantities to the general public or based on prices set by law or regulation. A price analysis will be used in all other instances to determine the reasonableness of the proposed contract price.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will negotiate profit as a separate element of the price for each contract in which there is no price competition and in all cases where cost analysis is performed. To establish a fair and reasonable profit, consideration will be given to the complexity of the work to be performed, the risk borne by the contractor, the contractor's investment, the amount of subcontracting, the quality of its record of past performance, and industry profit rates in the surrounding geographical area for similar work.

(3) Costs or prices based on estimated costs for contracts under grants will be allowable only to the extent that costs incurred or cost estimates included in negotiated prices are consistent with Federal cost principles (see § 92.22). Grantees may reference their own cost principles that comply with the applicable Federal cost principles.

(4) The cost plus a percentage of cost and percentage of construction cost methods of contracting shall not be used.

(g) *Awarding agency review.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees must make available, upon request of the awarding agency, technical specifications on proposed procurements where the awarding agency believes such review is needed to ensure that the item and/or service specified is the one being proposed for purchase. This review generally will take place prior to the time the specification is incorporated into a solicitation document. However, if the grantee or subgrantee desires to have the review accomplished after a solication has been developed, the awarding agency may still review the specifications, with such review usually limited to the technical aspects of the proposed purchase.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees must on request make available for awarding agency pre-award review procurement documents, such as requests for proposals or invitations for bids, independent cost estimates, etc., when:

(i) A grantee's or subgrantee's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards in this seciton; or

(ii) The procurement is expected to exceed $25,000 and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation; or

(iii) The procurement, which is expected to exceed $25,000, specifies a "brand name" product; or

(iv) The proposed award over $25,000 is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement; or

(v) A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than $25,000.

(3) A grantee or subgrantee will be exempt from the pre-award review in paragraph (g)(2) of this section if the awarding agency determines that its procurement systems comply with the standards of this section.

(i) A grantee or subgrantee may request that its procurement system be reviewed by the awarding agency to determine whether its system meets these standards in order for its system to be certified. Generally, these reviews shall occur where there is a continuous high-dollar funding, and third-party contracts are awarded on a regular basis;

(ii) A grantee or subgrantee may self-certify its procurement system. Such self-certification shall not limit the awarding agency's right to survey the system. Under a self-certification procedure, awarding agencies may wish to rely on written assurances from the grantee or subgrantee that it is complying with these standards. A grantee or subgrantee will cite specific procedures, regulations, standards, etc., as being in compliance with these requirements and have its system available for review.

(h) *Bonding requirements.* For construction or facility improvement contracts or subconstracts exceeding $100,000, the awarding agency may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the grantee or subgrantee provided the awarding agency has made a determination that the awarding agency's interest is adequately protected. If such a determination has not been made, the minimum requirements shall be as follows:

(1) *A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five percent of the bid price.* The "bid guarantee" shall consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certified check, or other negotiable instrument accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder will, upon acceptance of his bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

(2) *A performance bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price.* A "performance bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor's obligations under such contract.

(3) *A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price.* A "payment bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment as required by law of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract.

(i) *Contract provisions.* A grantee's and subgrantee's contracts must contain provisions in paragraph (i) of this section. Federal agencies are permitted to require changes, remedies, changed conditions, access and records retention, suspension of work, and other clauses approved by the Office of Procurement Policy.

(1) Administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as may be appropriate (Contracts other than small purchases).

(2) Termination for cause and for convenience by the grantee or subgrantee including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement (All contracts in excess of $10,000).

(3) Compliance with Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965 entitled "Equal Employment Opportunity," as amended by Executive Order 11375 of October 13, 1967 and as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (41 CFR Chapter 60) (All construction contracts awarded in excess of $10,000 by grantees and their contractors or subgrantees).

(4) Compliance with the Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act (18 U.S.C. 874) as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 3) (All contracts and subgrants for construction or repair).

(5) Compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 276a to a-7) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5) (Construction contracts in excess of $2,000 awarded by grantees and subgrantees when required by Federal grant program legislation).

(6) Compliance with sections 103 and 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 327-330) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR Part 5). (Construction contracts awarded by grantees and subgrantees in excess of $2,000, and in excess of $2,500 for other contracts which involve the employment of mechanics or laborers)

(7) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to reporting.

(8) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to patent rights with respect to any discovery or invention which arises or is developed in the course of or under such contract.

(9) Awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to copyrights and rights in data.

(10) Access by the grantee, the subgrantee, the Federal grantor agency, the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives to any books, documents, papers, and records of the contractor which are directly pertinent to that specific contract for the purpose of making audit, examination, excerpts, and transcriptions.

(11) Retention of all required records for three years after grantees or subgrantees make final payments and all other pending matters are closed.

(12) Compliance with all applicable standards, orders, or requirements issued under section 306 of the Clear Air Act (42 U.S.C. 1857(h)), section 508 of the Clean Water Act (33 U.S.C. 1368), Executive Order 11738, and Environmental Protection Agency regulations (40 CFR Part 15) (Contracts, subcontracts, and subgrants of amounts in excess of $100,000).

(13) Mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (Pub. L. 94-163).

§ 92.37 Subgrants.

(a) *States.* States shall follow state law and procedures when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. States shall:

(1) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations;

(2) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statute and regulation;

(3) Ensure that a provision for compliance with § 92.42 is placed in every cost reimbursement subgrant; and

(4) Conform any advances of grant funds to subgrantees substantially to the same standards of timing and amount that apply to cash advances by Federal agencies.

(b) *All other grantees.* All other grantees shall follow the provisions of this part which are applicable to awarding agencies when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. Grantees shall:

(1) Ensure that every subgrant includes a provision for compliance with this part;

(2) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations; and

(3) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statutes and regulations.

(c) *Exceptions.* By their own terms, certain provisions of this part do not apply to the award and administration of subgrants:

(1) Section 92.10;

(2) Section 92.11;

(3) The letter-of-credit procedures specified in Treasury Regulations at 31 CFR Part 205, cited in § 92.21; and

(4) Section 92.50.

REPORTS, RECORDS, RETENTION, AND ENFORCEMENT

§ 92.40 Monitoring and reporting program performance.

(a) *Monitoring by grantees.* Grantees are responsible for managing the day-to-day operations of grant and subgrant supported activities. Grantees must monitor grant and subgrant supported activities to assure compliance with applicable Federal requirements and that performance goals are being achieved. Grantee monitoring must cover each program, function or activity.

(b) *Nonconstruction performance reports.* The Federal agency may, if it decides that performance information available from subsequent applications contains sufficient information to meet its programmatic needs, require the grantee to submit a performance report only upon expiration or termination of grant support. Unless waived by the Federal agency this report will be due on the same date as the final Financial Status Report.

(1) Grantees shall submit annual performance reports unless the awarding agency requires quarterly or semi-annual reports. However, performance reports will not be required more frequently than quarterly. Annual reports shall be due 90 days after the grant year, quarterly or semi-annual reports shall be due 30 days after the reporting period. The final performance report will be due 90 days after the expiration or termination of grant

support. If a justified request is submitted by a grantee, the Federal agency may extend the due date for any performance report. Additionally, requirements for unnecessary performance reports may be waived by the Federal agency.

(2) Performance reports will contain, for each grant, brief information on the following:

(i) A comparison of actual accomplishments to the objectives established for the period. Where the output of the project can be quantified, a computation of the cost per unit of output may be required if that information will be useful.

(ii) The reasons for slippage if established objectives were not met.

(iii) Additional pertinent information including, when appropriate, analysis and explanation of cost overruns or high unit costs.

(3) Grantees will not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of performance reports.

(4) Grantees will adhere to the standards in this section in prescribing performance reporting requirements for subgrantees.

(c) *Construction performance reports.* For the most part, on-site technical inspections and certified percentage-of-completion data are relied on heavily by Federal agencies to monitor progress under construction grants and subgrants. The Federal agency will require additional formal performance reports only when considered necessary, and never more frequently than quarterly.

(d) *Significant developments.* Events may occur between the scheduled performance reporting dates which have significant impact upon the grant or subgrant supported activity. In such cases, the grantee must inform the Federal agency as soon as the following types of conditions become known:

(1) Problems, delays, or adverse conditions which will materially impair the ability to meet the objective of the award. This disclosure must include a statement of the action taken, or contemplated, and any assistance needed to resolve the situation.

(2) Favorable developments which enable meeting time schedules and objectives sooner or at less cost than anticipated or producing more beneficial results than originally planned.

(e) Federal agencies may make site visits as warranted by program needs.

(f) *Waivers, extensions.* (1) Federal agencies may waive any performance report required by this part if not needed.

(2) The grantee may waive any performance report from a subgrantee when not needed. The grantee may extend the due date for any performance report from a subgrantee if the grantee will still be able to meet its performance reporting obligations to the Federal agency.

§ 92.41 Financial reporting.

(a) *General.* (1) Except as provided in paragraphs (a) (2) and (5) of this section, grantees will use only the forms specified in paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section, and such supplementary or other forms as may from time to time be authorized by OMB, for:

(i) Submitting financial reports to Federal agencies, or

(ii) Requesting advances or reimbursements when letters of credit are not used.

(2) Grantees need not apply the forms prescribed in this section in dealing with their subgrantees. However, grantees shall not impose more burdensome requirements on subgrantees.

(3) Grantees shall follow all applicable standard and supplemental Federal agency instructions approved by OMB to the extend required under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980 for use in connection with forms specified in paragraphs (b) through (e) of this section. Federal agencies may issue substantive supplementary instructions only with the approval of OMB. Federal agencies may shade out or instruct the grantee to disregard any line item that the Federal agency finds unnecessary for its decisionmaking purposes.

(4) Grantees will not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of forms required under this part.

(5) Federal agencies may provide computer outputs to grantees to expe-

dite or contribute to the accuracy of reporting. Federal agencies may accept the required information from grantees in machine usable format or computer printouts instead of prescribed forms.

(6) Federal agencies may waive any report required by this section if not needed.

(7) Federal agencies may extend the due date of any financial report upon receiving a justified request from a grantee.

(b) *Financial Status Report*—(1) *Form.* Grantees will use Standard Form 269 or 269A, Financial Status Report, to report the status of funds for all nonconstruction grants and for construction grants when required in accordance with § 92.41(e)(2)(iii).

(2) *Accounting basis.* Each grantee will report program outlays and program income on a cash or accrual basis as prescribed by the awarding agency. If the Federal agency requires accrual information and the grantee's accounting records are not normally kept on the accural basis, the grantee shall not be required to convert its accounting system but shall develop such accrual information through and analysis of the documentation on hand.

(3) *Frequency.* The Federal agency may prescribe the frequency of the report for each project or program. However, the report will not be required more frequently than quarterly. If the Federal agency does not specify the frequency of the report, it will be submitted annually. A final report will be required upon expiration or termination of grant support.

(4) *Due date.* When reports are required on a quarterly or semiannual basis, they will be due 30 days after the reporting period. When required on an annual basis, they will be due 90 days after the grant year. Final reports will be due 90 days after the expiration or termination of grant support.

(c) *Federal Cash Transactions Report*—(1) *Form.* (i) For grants paid by letter or credit, Treasury check advances or electronic transfer of funds, the grantee will submit the Standard Form 272, Federal Cash Transactions Report, and when necessary, its continuation sheet, Standard Form 272a, unless the terms of the award exempt the grantee from this requirement.

(ii) These reports will be used by the Federal agency to monitor cash advanced to grantees and to obtain disbursement or outlay information for each grant from grantees. The format of the report may be adapted as appropriate when reporting is to be accomplished with the assistance of automatic data processing equipment provided that the information to be submitted is not changed in substance.

(2) *Forecasts of Federal cash requirements.* Forecasts of Federal cash requirements may be required in the "Remarks" section of the report.

(3) *Cash in hands of subgrantees.* When considered necessary and feasible by the Federal agency, grantees may be required to report the amount of cash advances in excess of three days' needs in the hands of their subgrantees or contractors and to provide short narrative explanations of actions taken by the grantee to reduce the excess balances.

(4) *Frequency and due date.* Grantees must submit the report no later than 15 working days following the end of each quarter. However, where an advance either by letter of credit or electronic transfer of funds is authorized at an annualized rate of one million dollars or more, the Federal agency may require the report to be submitted within 15 working days following the end of each month.

(d) *Request for advance or reimbursement*—(1) *Advance payments.* Requests for Treasury check advance payments will be submitted on Standard Form 270, Request for Advance or Reimbursement. (This form will not be used for drawdowns under a letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or when Treasury check advance payments are made to the grantee automatically on a predetermined basis.)

(2) *Reimbursements.* Requests for reimbursement under nonconstruction grants will also be submitted on Standard Form 270. (For reimbursement requests under construction grants, see paragraph (e)(1) of this section.)

(3) The frequency for submitting payment requests is treated in § 92.41(b)(3).

(e) *Outlay report and request for reimbursement for construction programs.* (1) *Grants that support construction activities paid by reimbursement method.* (i) Requests for reimbursement under construction grants will be submitted on Standard Form 271, Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs. Federal agencies may, however, prescribe the Request for Advance or Reimbursement form, specified in § 92.41(d), instead of this form.

(ii) The frequency for submitting reimbursement requests is treated in § 92.41(b)(3).

(2) *Grants that support construction activities paid by letter of credit electronic funds transfer or Treasury check advance.* (i) When a construction grant is paid by letter of credit, electronic funds transfer or Treasury check advances, the grantee will report its outlays to the Federal agency using Standard Form 271, Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs. The Federal agency will provide any necessary special instruction. However, frequency and due date shall be governed by § 92.41(b) (3) and (4).

(ii) When a construction grant is paid by Treasury check advances based on periodic requests from the grantee, the advances will be requested on the form specified in § 92.41(d).

(iii) The Federal agency may substitute the Financial Status Report specified in § 92.41(b) for the Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs.

(3) *Accounting basis.* The accounting basis for the Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs shall be governed by § 92.41(b)(2).

§ 92.42 Retention and access requirements for records.

(a) *Applicability.* (1) This section applies to all financial and programmatic records, supporting documents, statistical records, and other records of grantees or subgrantees which are:

(i) Required to be maintained by the terms of this part, program regulations or the grant agreement, or

(ii) Otherwise reasonably considered as pertinent to program regulations or the grant agreement.

(2) This section does not apply to records maintained by contractors or subcontractors. For a requirement to place a provision concerning records in certain kinds of contracts, see § 92.36(i)(10).

(b) *Length of retention period.* (1) Except as otherwise provided, records must be retained for three years from the starting date specified in paragraph (c) of this section.

(2) If any litigation, claim, negotiation, audit or other action involving the records has been started before the expiration of the 3-year period, the records must be retained until completion of the action and resolution of all issues which arise from it, or until the end of the regular 3-year period, whichever is later.

(3) To avoid duplicate recordkeeping, awarding agencies may make special arrangements with grantees and subgrantees to retain any records which are continuously needed for joint use. The awarding agency will request transfer of records to its custody when it determines that the records possess long-term retention value. When the records are transferred to or maintained by the Federal agency, the 3-year retention requirement is not applicable to the grantee or subgrantee.

(c) *Starting date of retention period*—(1) *General.* When grant support is continued or renewed at annual or other intervals, the retention period for the records of each funding period starts on the day the grantee or subgrantee submits to the awarding agency its single or last expenditure report for that period. However, if grant support is continued or renewed quarterly, the retention period for each year's records starts on the day the grantee submits its expenditure report for the last quarter of the Federal fiscal year. In all other cases, the retention period starts on the day the grantee submits its final expenditure report. If an expenditure report has been waived, the retention period starts on the day the report would have been due.

(2) *Real property and equipment records.* The retention period for real property and equipment records starts from the date of the disposition or replacement or transfer at the direction of the awarding agency.

(3) *Records for income transactions after grant or subgrant support.* In some cases grantees must report income after the period of grant support. Where there is such a requirement, the retention period for the records pertaining to the earning of the income starts from the end of the grantee's fiscal year in which the income is earned.

(4) *Indirect cost rate proposals, cost allocations plans, etc.* This paragraph applies to the following types of documents, and their supporting records: indirect cost rate computations or proposals, cost allocation plans, and any similar accounting computations of the rate at which a particular group of costs is chargeable (such as computer usage chargeback rates or composite fringe benefit rates)

(i) *If submitted for negotiation.* If the proposal, plan, or other computation is required to be submitted to the Federal Government (or to the grantee) to form the basis for negotiation of the rate, then the 3-year retention period for its supporting records starts from the date of such submission.

(ii) *If not submitted for negotiation.* If the proposal, plan, or other computation is not required to be submitted to the Federal Government (or to the grantee) for negotiation purposes, then the 3-year retention period for the proposal plan, or computation and its supporting records starts from end of the fiscal year (or other accounting period) covered by the proposal, plan, or other computation.

(d) *Substitution of microfilm.* Copies made by microfilming, photocopying, or similar methods may be substituted for the original records.

(e) *Access to records*—(1) *Records of grantees and subgrantees.* The awarding agency and the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their authorized representatives, shall have the right of access to any pertinent books, documents, papers, or other records of grantees and subgrantees which are pertinent to the grant, in order to make audits, examinations, excerpts, and transcripts.

(2) *Expiration of right of access.* The rights of access in this section must not be limited to the required retention period but shall last as long as the records are retained.

(f) *Restrictions on public access.* The Federal Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) does not apply to records Unless required by Federal, State, or local law, grantees and subgrantees are not required to permit public access to their records.

§ 92.43 Enforcement.

(a) *Remedies for noncompliance.* If a grantee or subgrantee materially fails to comply with any term of an award, whether stated in a Federal statute or regulation, an assurance, in a State plan or application, a notice of award, or elsewhere, the awarding agency may take one or more of the following actions, as appropriate in the circumstances:

(1) Temporarily withhold cash payments pending correction of the deficiency by the grantee or subgrantee or more severe enforcement action by the awarding agency,

(2) Disallow (that is, deny both use of funds and matching credit for) all or part of the cost of the activity or action not in compliance,

(3) Wholly or partly suspend or terminate the current award for the grantee's or subgrantee's program,

(4) Withhold further awards for the program, or

(5) Take other remedies that may be legally available.

(b) *Hearings, appeals.* In taking an enforcement action, the awarding agency will provide the grantee or subgrantee an opportunity for such hearing, appeal, or other administrative proceeding to which the grantee or subgrantee is entitled under any statute or regulation applicable to the action involved.

(c) *Effects of suspension and termination.* Costs of grantee or subgrantee resulting from obligations incurred by the grantee or subgrantee during a suspension or after termination of an award are not allowable unless the awarding agency expressly authorizes them in the notice of suspension or termination or subsequently. Other grantee or subgrantee costs during suspension or after termination which are necessary and not reasonably avoidable are allowable if:

(1) The costs result from obligations which were properly incurred by the grantee or subgrantee before the effective date of suspension or termination, are not in anticipation of it, and, in the case of a termination, are noncancellable, and,

(2) The costs would be allowable if the award were not suspended or expired normally at the end of the funding period in which the termination takes effect.

(d) *Relationship to debarment and suspension.* The enforcement remedies identified in this section, including suspension and termination, do not preclude grantee or subgrantee from being subject to "Debarment and Suspension" under E.O. 12549 (see § 92.35).

§ 92.44 Termination for convenience.

Except as provided in § 92.43 awards may be terminated in whole or in part only as follows:

(a) By the awarding agency with the consent of the grantee or subgrantee in which case the two parties shall agree upon the termination conditions, including the effective date and in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated, or

(b) By the grantee or subgrantee upon written notification to the awarding agency, setting forth the reasons for such termination, the effective date, and in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated. However, if, in the case of a partial termination, the awarding agency determines that the remaining portion of the award will not accomplish the purposes for which the award was made, the awarding agency may terminate the award in its entirety under either § 92.43 or paragraph (a) of this section.

Subpart D—After-The-Grant Requirements

§ 92.50 Closeout.

(a) *General.* The Federal agency will close out the award when it determines that all applicable administrative actions and all required work of the grant has been completed.

(b) *Reports.* Within 90 days after the expiration or termination of the grant, the grantee must submit all financial, performance, and other reports required as a condition of the grant. Upon request by the grantee, Federal agencies may extend this timeframe. These may include but are not limited to:

(1) *Final performance or progress report.*

(2) *Financial Status Report (SF 269) or Outlay Report and Request for Reimbursement for Construction Programs (SF-271) (as applicable).*

(3) *Final request for payment (SF-270) (if applicable).*

(4) *Invention disclosure (if applicable).*

(5) *Federally-owned property report:* In accordance with § 92.32(f), a grantee must submit an inventory of all federally owned property (as distinct from property acquired with grant funds) for which it is accountable and request disposition instructions from the Federal agency of property no longer needed.

(c) *Cost adjustment.* The Federal agency will, within 90 days after receipt of reports in paragraph (b) of this section, make upward or downward adjustments to the allowable costs.

(d) *Cash adjustments.* (1) The Federal agency will make prompt payment to the grantee for allowable reimbursable costs.

(2) The grantee must immediately refund to the Federal agency any balance of unobligated (unencumbered) cash advanced that is not authorized to be retained for use on other grants.

§ 92.51 Later disallowances and adjustments.

The closeout of a grant does not affect:

(a) The Federal agency's right to disallow costs and recover funds on the basis of a later audit or other review;

(b) The grantee's obligation to return any funds due as a result of later refunds, corrections, or other transactions;

(c) Records retention as required in § 92.42;

(d) Property management requirements in §§ 92.31 and 92.32; and

(e) Audit requirements in § 92.26.

§ 92.52 Collection of amounts due.

(a) Any funds paid to a grantee in excess of the amount to which the grantee is finally determined to be entitled under the terms of the award constitute a debt to the Federal Government. If not paid within a reasonable period after demand, the Federal agency may reduce the debt by:

(1) Making an adminstrative offset against other requests for reimbursements,

(2) Withholding advance payments otherwise due to the grantee, or

(3) Other action permitted by law.

(b) Except where otherwise provided by statutes or regulations, the Federal agency will charge interest on an overdue debt in accordance with the Federal Claims Collection Standards (4 CFR Ch. II). The date from which interest is computed is not extended by litigation or the filing of any form of appeal.

Subpart E—Entitlement [Reserved]

EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT
OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20503

March 8, 1990

OMB Circular No. A-133

TO THE HEADS OF EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENTS AND ESTABLISHMENTS

SUBJECT: Audits of Institutions of Higher Education and Other Nonprofit Institutions

1. Purpose. Circular A-133 establishes audit requirements and defines Federal responsibilities for implementing and monitoring such requirements for institutions of higher education and other nonprofit institutions receiving Federal awards.

2. Authority. Circular A-133 is issued under the authority of the Budget and Accounting Act of 1921, as amended; the Budget and Accounting Procedures Act of 1950, as amended; Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1970; and Executive Order No. 11541.

3. Supersession. Circular A-133 supersedes Attachment F, subparagraph 2h, of Circular A-110, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and other Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and other Nonprofit Organizations."

4. Applicability. The provisions of Circular A-133 apply to:

a. Federal departments and agencies responsible for administering programs that involve grants, cost-type contracts and other agreements with institutions of higher education and other nonprofit recipients.

b. Nonprofit institutions, whether they are recipients, receiving awards directly from Federal agencies, or are sub-recipients, receiving awards indirectly through other recipients.

These principles, to the extent permitted by law, constitute guidance to be applied by agencies consistent with and within the discretion, conferred by the statutes governing agency action.

5. Requirements and Responsibilities.

The specific requirements and responsibilities of Federal departments and agencies and institutions of higher education and other nonprofit institutions are set forth in the attachment.

6. Effective Date. The provisions of Circular A-133 are effective upon publication and shall apply to audits of nonprofit institutions for fiscal years that begin on or after January 1, 1990. Earlier implementation is encouraged. However, until this

Circular is implemented, the audit provisions of Attachment F to Circular A-110 shall continue to be observed.

7. Policy Review (Sunset) Date. Circular A-133 will have a policy review three years from the date of issuance.

8. Inquiries. Further information concerning Circular A-133 may be obtained by contacting the Financial Management Division, Office of Management and Budget, Washington, D.C. 20503, telephone (202) 395-3993.

Richard G. Darman
Director

OMB CIRCULAR A-133
AUDITS OF INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER EDUCATION AND OTHER NONPROFIT INSTITUTIONS

ATTACHMENT

1. Definitions. For the purposes of this Circular, the following definitions apply:

a. "Award" means financial assistance, and Federal cost-type contracts used to buy services or goods for the use of the Federal Government. It includes awards received directly from the Federal agencies or indirectly through recipients. It does not include procurement contracts to vendors under grants or contracts, used to buy goods or services. Audits of such vendors shall be covered by the terms and conditions of the contract.

b. "Cognizant agency" means the Federal agency assigned by the Office of Management and Budget to carry out the responsibilities described in paragraph 3 of this Attachment.

c. "Coordinated audit approach" means an audit wherein the independent auditor, and other Federal and non-federal auditors consider each other's work, in determining the nature, timing, and extent of his or her own auditing procedures. A coordinated audit must be conducted in accordance with Government Auditing Standards and meet the objectives and reporting requirements set forth in paragraph 12(b) and 15, respectively, of this Attachment. The objective of the coordinated audit approach is to minimize duplication of audit effort, but not to limit the scope of the audit work so as to preclude the independent auditor from meeting the objectives set forth in paragraph 12(b) or issuing the reports required in paragraph 15 in a timely manner.

d. "Federal agency" has the same meaning as the term 'agency' in Section 551(1) of Title 5, United States Code.

e. "Federal Financial Assistance."

(1) "Federal financial assistance" means assistance provided by a Federal agency to a recipient or sub-recipient to carry out a program. Such assistance may be in the form of:

- grants;
- contracts;
- cooperative agreements;
- loans;
- loan guarantees;
- property;
- interest subsidies;
- insurance;
- direct appropriations;
- other non-cash assistance.

(2) Such assistance does not include direct Federal cash assistance to individuals.

(3) Such assistance includes awards received directly from Federal agencies, or indirectly when sub-recipients receive funds identified as Federal funds by recipients.

(4) The granting agency is responsible for identifying the source of funds awarded to recipients; the recipient is responsible for identifying the source of funds awarded to sub-recipients.

f. "Generally accepted accounting principles" has the meaning specified in the Government Auditing Standards.

g. "Independent auditor" means:

(1) A Federal, State, or local government auditor who meets the standards specified in the Government Auditing Standards; or

(2) A public accountant who meets such standards.

h. "Internal control structure" means the policies and procedures established to provide reasonable assurance that:

(1) Resource use is consistent with laws, regulations, and award terms;

(2) Resources are safeguarded against waste, loss, and misuse; and

(3) Reliable data are obtained, maintained, and fairly disclosed in reports.

i. "Major program" means an individual award or a number of awards in a category of Federal assistance or support for which total expenditures are the larger of three percent of total Federal funds expended or $100,000, on which the auditor will be required to express an opinion as to whether the major program is being administered in compliance with laws and regulations.

Each of the following categories of Federal awards shall constitute a major program where total expenditures are the larger of three percent of total Federal funds expended or $100,000:

- Research and Development.
- Student Financial Aid.

- Individual awards not in the student aid or research and development category.

j. **"Management decision"** means the evaluation by the management of an establishment of the findings and recommendations included in an audit report and the issuance of a final decision by management concerning its response to such findings and recommendations, including actions concluded to be necessary.

k. **"Nonprofit institution"** means any corporation, trust, association, cooperative or other organization which 1) is operated primarily for scientific, educational, service, charitable, or similar purposes in the public interest; 2) is not organized primarily for profit; and 3) uses its net proceeds to maintain, improve, and/or expand its operations. The term "nonprofit institutions" includes institutions of higher education, except those institutions that are audited as part of single audits in accordance with Circular A-128 "Audits of State and Local Governments." The term does not include hospitals which are not affiliated with an institution of higher education, or State and local governments and Indian tribes covered by Circular A-128 "Audits of State and Local Governments."

l. **"Oversight"** agency means the Federal agency that provides the predominant amount of direct funding to a recipient not assigned a cognizant agency, unless no direct funding is received. Where there is no direct funding, the Federal agency with the predominant indirect funding will assume the general oversight responsibilities. The duties of the oversight agency are described in paragraph 4 of this Attachment.

m. **"Recipient"** means an organization receiving financial assistance to carry out a program directly from Federal agencies.

n. **"Research and development"** includes all research activities, both basic and applied, and all development activities that are supported at universities, colleges, and other nonprofit institutions. "Research" is defined as a systematic study directed toward fuller scientific knowledge or understanding of the subject studied. "Development" is the systematic use of knowledge and understanding gained from research directed toward the production of useful materials, devices, systems, or methods, including design and development of prototypes and processes.

o. **"Student Financial Aid"** includes those programs of general student assistance in which institutions participate, such as those authorized by Title IV of the Higher Education Act of 1965 which is administered by the U.S. Department of Education and similar programs provided by other Federal agencies. It does not include programs which provide fellowships or similar awards to students on a competitive basis, or for specified studies or research.

p. "Sub-recipient" means any person or government department, agency, establishment, or nonprofit organization that receives financial assistance to carry out a program through a primary recipient or other sub-recipient, but does not include an individual that is a beneficiary of such a program. A sub-recipient may also be a direct recipient of Federal awards under other agreements.

q. "Vendor" means an organization providing a recipient or sub-recipient with generally required goods or services that are related to the administrative support of the Federal assistance program.

2. Audit of Nonprofit Institutions.

a. Requirements Based on Awards Received.

(1) Nonprofit institutions that receive $100,000 or more a year in Federal awards shall have an audit made in accordance with the provisions of this Circular. However, nonprofit institutions receiving $100,000 or more but receiving awards under only one program have the option of having an audit of their institution prepared in accordance with the provisions of the Circular or having an audit made of the one program. For prior or subsequent years, when an institution has only loan guarantees or outstanding loans that were made previously, the institution may be required to conduct audits for those programs, in accordance with regulations of the Federal agencies providing those guarantees or loans.

(2) Nonprofit institutions that receive at least $25,000 but less than $100,000 a year in Federal awards shall have an audit made in accordance with this Circular or have an audit made of each Federal award, in accordance with Federal laws and regulations governing the programs in which they participate.

(3) Nonprofit institutions receiving less than $25,000 a year in Federal awards are exempt from Federal audit requirements, but records must be available for review by appropriate officials of the Federal grantor agency or subgranting entity.

b. Oversight by Federal Agencies.

(1) To each of the larger nonprofit institutions the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) will assign a Federal agency as the cognizant agency for monitoring audits and ensuring the resolution of audit findings that affect the programs of more than one agency.

(2) Smaller institutions not assigned a cognizant agency will be under the general oversight of the Federal agency that provides them with the most funds.

(3) Assignments to Federal cognizant agencies for carrying out responsibilities in this section are set forth in a separate supplement to this Circular.

(4) Federal Government-owned, contractor-operated facilities at institutions or laboratories operated primarily for the Government are not included in the cognizance assignments. These will remain the responsibility of the contracting agencies. The listed assignments cover all of the functions in this Circular unless otherwise indicated. The Office of Management and Budget will coordinate changes in agency assignments.

3. Cognizant Agency Responsibilities. A cognizant agency shall:

a. Ensure that audits are made and reports are received in a timely manner and in accordance with the requirements of this Circular.

b. Provide technical advice and liaison to institutions and independent auditors.

c. Obtain or make quality control reviews of selected audits made by non-Federal audit organizations, and provide the results, when appropriate, to other interested organizations.

d. Promptly inform other affected Federal agencies and appropriate Federal law enforcement officials of any reported illegal acts or irregularities. A cognizant agency should also inform State or local law enforcement and prosecuting authorities, if not advised by the recipient, of any violation of law within their jurisdiction.

e. Advise the recipient of audits that have been found not to have met the requirements set forth in this Circular. In such instances, the recipient will work with the auditor to take corrective action. If corrective action is not taken, the cognizant agency shall notify the recipient and Federal awarding agencies of the facts and make recommendations for follow-up action. Major inadequacies or repetitive substandard performance of independent auditors shall be referred to appropriate professional bodies for disciplinary action.

f. Coordinate, to the extent practicable, audits or reviews made for Federal agencies that are in addition to the audits made pursuant to this Circular, so that the additional audits or reviews build upon audits performed in accordance with the Circular.

g. Ensure the resolution of audit findings that affect the programs of more than one agency.

h. Seek the views of other interested agencies before completing a coordinated program.

i. Help coordinate the audit work and reporting responsibilities among independent public accountants, State auditors, and both resident and non-resident Federal auditors to achieve the most cost-effective audit.

4. Oversight Agency Responsibilities. An oversight agency shall provide technical advice and counsel to institutions and independent auditors when requested by the recipient. The oversight agency may assume all or some of the responsibilities normally performed by a cognizant agency.

5. Recipient Responsibilities. A recipient that receives a Federal award and provides $25,000 or more of it during its fiscal year to a sub-recipient shall:

a. Ensure that the nonprofit institution sub-recipients that receive $25,000 or more have met the audit requirements of this Circular, and that sub-recipients subject to OMB Circular A-128 have met the audit requirements of that Circular;

b. Ensure that appropriate corrective action is taken within six months after receipt of the sub-recipient audit report in instances of noncompliance with Federal laws and regulations;

c. Consider whether sub-recipient audits necessitate adjustment of the recipient's own records; and

d. Require each sub-recipient to permit independent auditors to have access to the records and financial statements as necessary for the recipient to comply with this Circular.

6. Relation to Other Audit Requirements.

a. An audit made in accordance with this Circular shall be in lieu of any financial audit required under individual Federal awards. To the extent that an audit made in accordance with this Circular provides Federal agencies with the information and assurances they need to carry out their overall responsibilities, they shall rely upon and use such information. However, a Federal agency shall make any additional audits or reviews necessary to carry out responsibilities under Federal law and regulation. Any additional Federal audits or reviews shall be planned and carried out in such a way as to build upon work performed by the independent auditor.

b. Audit planning by Federal audit agencies should consider the extent to which reliance can be placed upon work performed by other auditors. Such auditors include State, local, Federal, and other independent auditors, and a recipient's internal auditors. Reliance placed upon the work of other auditors should be documented and in accordance with Government Auditing Standards.

c. The provisions of this Circular do not limit the authority of Federal agencies to make or contract for audits and evaluations of Federal awards, nor do they limit the authority of any Federal agency Inspector General or other Federal official.

d. The provisions of this Circular do not authorize any institution or sub-recipient thereof to constrain Federal agencies, in any manner, from carrying out additional audits, evaluations or reviews.

e. A Federal agency that makes or contracts for audits, in addition to the audits made by recipients pursuant to this Circular, shall, consistent with other applicable laws and regulations, arrange for funding the cost of such additional audits. Such additional audits or reviews include financial, performance audits and program evaluations.

7. Frequency of Audit. Audits shall usually be performed annually but not less frequently than every two years.

8. Sanctions. No audit costs may be charged to Federal awards when audits required by this Circular have not been made or have been made but not in accordance with this Circular. In cases of continued inability or unwillingness to have a proper audit in accordance with the Circular, Federal agencies must consider appropriate sanctions including:

-- withholding a percentage of awards until the audit is completed satisfactorily;

-- withholding or disallowing overhead costs; or

-- suspending Federal awards until the audit is made.

9. Audit Costs. The cost of audits made in accordance with the provisions of this Circular are allowable charges to Federal awards. The charges may be considered a direct cost or an allocated indirect cost, determined in accordance with the provisions of Circular A-21, "Cost Principles for Universities" or Circular A-122, "Cost Principles for Nonprofit Organizations,"

FAR subpart 31, or other applicable cost principles or regulations.

10. Auditor Selection. In arranging for audit services institutions shall follow the procurement standards prescribed by Circular A-110, "Uniform Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals and other Nonprofit Organizations."

11. Small and Minority Audit Firms.

a. Small audit firms and audit firms owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals shall have the maximum practicable opportunity to participate in contracts awarded to fulfill the requirements of this Circular.

b. Recipients of Federal awards shall take the following steps to further this goal:

(1) Ensure that small audit firms and audit firms owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals are used to the fullest extent practicable;

(2) Make information on forthcoming opportunities available and arrange timeframes for the audit to encourage and facilitate participation by small audit firms and audit firms owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals;

(3) Consider in the contract process whether firms competing for larger audits intend to subcontract with small audit firms and audit firms owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals;

(4) Encourage contracting with small audit firms or audit firms owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals which have traditionally audited government programs, and in cases where this is not possible, assure that these firms are given consideration for audit subcontracting opportunities;

(5) Encourage contracting with consortiums of small audit firms as described in section (1), above, when a contract is too large for an individual small audit firm or audit firm owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals; and

(6) Use the services and assistance, as appropriate, of such organizations as the Small Business Administration in the solicitation and utilization of small audit firms or audit firms owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals.

12. Scope of Audit and Audit Objectives.

a. The audit shall be made by an independent auditor in accordance with Government Auditing Standards developed by the Comptroller General of the United States covering financial audits. An audit under this Circular should be an organization-wide audit of the institution. However, there may be instances where Federal auditors are performing audits or are planning to perform audits at nonprofit institutions. In these cases, to minimize duplication of audit work, a coordinated audit approach may be agreed upon between the independent auditor, the recipient and the cognizant agency or the oversight agency. Those auditors who assume responsibility for any or all of the reports called for by paragraph 15 should follow guidance set forth in Government Auditing Standards in using work performed by others.

b. The auditor shall determine whether:

(1) The financial statements of the institution present fairly its financial position and the results of its operations in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;

(2) The institution has an internal control structure to provide reasonable assurance that the institution is managing Federal awards in compliance with applicable laws and regulations, and controls that ensure compliance with the laws and regulations that could have a material impact on the financial statements; and

(3) The institution has complied with laws and regulations that may have a direct and material effect on its financial statement amounts and on each major Federal program.

13. Internal Controls Over Federal Awards; Compliance Reviews.

a. General. The independent auditor shall determine and report on whether the recipient has an internal control structure to provide reasonable assurance that it is managing Federal awards in compliance with applicable laws, regulations, and contract terms, and that it safeguards Federal funds. In performing these reviews, independent auditors should rely upon work performed by a recipient's internal auditors to the maximum extent possible. The extent of such reliance should be based upon the Government Auditing Standards.

b. Internal Control Review.

(1) In order to provide this assurance on internal controls, the auditor must obtain an understanding of the

internal control structure and assess levels of internal control risk. After obtaining an understanding of the controls, the assessment must be made whether or not the auditor intends to place reliance on the internal control structure.

(2) As part of this review, the auditor shall:

(a) Perform tests of controls to evaluate the effectiveness of the design and operation of the policies and procedures in preventing or detecting material noncompliance. Tests of controls will not be required for those areas where the internal control structure policies and procedures are likely to be ineffective in preventing or detecting noncompliance, in which case a reportable condition or a material weakness should be reported in accordance with paragraph 15 c(2) of this Circular.

(b) Review the recipient's system for monitoring sub-recipients and obtaining and acting on sub-recipient audit reports.

(c) Determine whether controls are in effect to ensure direct and indirect costs were computed and billed in accordance with the guidance provided in the general requirements section of the compliance supplement to this Circular.

c. Compliance Review.

(1) The auditor shall determine whether the recipient has complied with laws and regulations that may have a direct and material effect on any of its major Federal programs. In addition, transactions selected for non-major programs shall be tested for compliance with Federal laws and regulations that apply to such transactions.

(2) In order to determine which major programs are to be tested for compliance, recipients shall identify, in their accounts, all Federal funds received and expended and the programs under which they were received. This shall include funds received directly from Federal agencies, through other State and local governments or other recipients. To assist recipients in identifying Federal awards, Federal agencies and primary recipients shall provide the Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance (CFDA) numbers to the recipients when making the awards.

(3) The review must include the selection of an adequate number of transactions from each major Federal financial assistance program so that the auditor obtains sufficient evidence to support the opinion on compliance required by paragraph 15c(3) of this Attachment. The selection and testing of transactions shall be based on the auditors' professional judgment considering such factors as the amount of expenditures

for the program; the newness of the program or changes in its conditions; prior experience with the program particularly as revealed in audits and other evaluations (e.g., inspections, program reviews, or system reviews required by Federal Acquisition Regulations); the extent to which the program is carried out through sub-recipients; the extent to which the program contracts for goods or services; the level to which the program is already subject to program reviews or other forms of independent oversight; the adequacy of the controls for ensuring compliance; the expectation of adherence or lack of adherence to the applicable laws and regulations; and the potential impact of adverse findings.

(4) In making the test of transactions, the auditor shall determine whether:

-- the amounts reported as expenditures were for allowable services, and

-- the records show that those who received services or benefits were eligible to receive them.

(5) In addition to transaction testing, the auditor shall determine whether:

-- matching requirements, levels of effort and earmarking limitations were met,

-- Federal financial reports and claims for advances and reimbursement contain information that is supported by books and records from which the basic financial statements have been prepared, and

-- amounts claimed or used for matching were determined in accordance with 1) OMB Circular A-21, "Cost Principles for Educational Institutions"; 2) matching or cost sharing requirements in Circular A-110, "Uniform Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals and Other Nonprofit Organizations"; 3) Circular A-122, "Cost Principles for Nonprofit Organizations"; 4) FAR subpart 31 cost principles; and 5) other applicable cost principles or regulations.

(6) The principal compliance requirements of the largest Federal programs may be ascertained by referring to the "Compliance Supplement for Single Audits of Educational Institutions and Other Nonprofit Organizations," and the

"Compliance Supplement for Single Audits of State and Local Governments," issued by OMB and available from the Government Printing Office. For those programs not covered in the Compliance Supplements, the auditor should ascertain compliance requirements by reviewing the statutes, regulations, and agreements governing individual programs.

(7) Transactions related to other awards that are selected in connection with examinations of financial statements and evaluations of internal controls shall be tested for compliance with Federal laws and regulations that apply to such transactions.

14. Illegal Acts. If, during or in connection with the audit of a nonprofit institution, the auditor becomes aware of illegal acts, such acts shall be reported in accordance with the provisions of the Government Auditing Standards.

15. Audit Reports.

a. Audit reports must be prepared at the completion of the audit.

b. The audit report shall state that the audit was made in accordance with the provisions of this Circular.

c. The report shall be made up of at least the following three parts:

(1) The financial statements and a schedule of Federal awards and the auditor's report on the statements and the schedule. The schedule of Federal awards should identify major programs and show the total expenditures for each program. Individual major programs other than Research and Development and Student Aid should be listed by catalog number as identified in the Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance. Expenditures for Federal programs other than major programs shall be shown under the caption "other Federal assistance." Also, the value of non-cash assistance such as loan guarantees, food commodities or donated surplus properties or the outstanding balance of loans should be disclosed in the schedule.

(2) A written report of the independent auditor's understanding of the internal control structure and the assessment of control risk. The auditor's report should include as a minimum: 1) the scope of the work in obtaining understanding of the internal control structure and in assessing the control risk, 2) the nonprofit institution's significant internal controls or control structure including the controls established to ensure compliance with laws and regulations that have a material impact on the financial statements and those that provide reasonable assurance that Federal awards are being

managed in compliance with applicable laws and regulations, and 3) the reportable conditions, including the identification of material weaknesses, identified as a result of the auditor's work in understanding and assessing the control risk. If the auditor limits his/her consideration of the internal control structure for any reason, the circumstances should be disclosed in the report.

(3) The auditor's report on compliance containing:

- An opinion as to whether each major Federal program was being administered in compliance with laws and regulations applicable to the matters described in paragraph 13(c)(3) of this Attachment, including compliance with laws and regulations pertaining to financial reports and claims for advances and reimbursements;
- A statement of positive assurance on those items that were tested for compliance and negative assurance on those items not tested;
- Material findings of noncompliance presented in their proper perspective:
    - The size of the universe in number of items and dollars,
    - The number and dollar amount of transactions tested by the auditors,
    - The number and corresponding dollar amount of instances of noncompliance;
- Where findings are specific to a particular Federal award, an identification of total amounts questioned, if any, for each Federal award, as a result of noncompliance and the auditor's recommendations for necessary corrective action.

c. The three parts of the audit report may be bound into a single document, or presented at the same time as separate documents.

d. Nonmaterial findings need not be disclosed with the compliance report but should be reported in writing to the recipient in a separate communication. The recipient, in turn, should forward the findings to the Federal grantor agencies or subgrantor sources.

e. All fraud or illegal acts or indications of such acts, including all questioned costs found as the result of these acts that auditors become aware of, may be covered in a separate written report submitted in accordance with the Government Auditing Standards.

f. The auditor's report should disclose the status of known but uncorrected significant material findings and recommendations from prior audits that affect the current audit objective as specified in the Government Auditing Standards.

g. In addition to the audit report, the recipient shall provide a report of its comments on the findings and recommendations in the report, including a plan for corrective action taken or planned and comments on the status of corrective action taken on prior findings. If corrective action is not necessary, a statement describing the reason it is not should accompany the audit report.

h. Copies of the audit report shall be submitted in accordance with the reporting standards for financial audits contained in the Government Auditing Standards. Sub-recipient auditors shall submit copies to recipients that provided Federal awards. The report shall be due within 30 days after the completion of the audit, but the audit should be completed and the report submitted not later than 13 months after the end of the recipient's fiscal year unless a longer period is agreed to with the cognizant or oversight agency.

i. Recipients of more than $100,000 in Federal awards shall submit one copy of the audit report within 30 days after issuance to a central clearinghouse to be designated by the Office of Management and Budget. The clearinghouse will keep completed audit reports on file.

j. Recipients shall keep audit reports, including sub-recipient reports, on file for three years from their issuance.

16. Audit Resolution.

a. As provided in paragraph 3, the cognizant agency shall be responsible for ensuring the resolution of audit findings that affect the programs of more than one Federal agency. Resolution of findings that relate to the programs of a single Federal agency will be the responsibility of the recipient and the agency. Alternate arrangements may be made on case-by-case basis by agreement among the agencies concerned.

b. A management decision shall be made within six months after receipt of the report by the Federal agencies responsible for audit resolution. Corrective action should proceed as rapidly as possible.

17. Audit Workpapers and Reports. Workpapers and reports shall be retained for a minimum of three years from the date of the audit report, unless the auditor is notified in writing by the cognizant agency to extend the retention period. Audit workpapers shall be made available upon request to the cognizant agency or its designee or the General Accounting Office, at the completion of the audit.

EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT
OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20503

April 12, 198~~4~~5

CIRCULAR No. A-128

TO THE HEADS OF EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENTS AND ESTABLISHMENTS

SUBJECT: Audits of State and Local Governments.

1. Purpose. This Circular is issued pursuant to the Single Audit Act of 1984, P.L. 98-502. It establishes audit requirements for State and local governments that receive Federal aid, and defines Federal responsibilities for implementing and monitoring those requirements.

2. Supersession. The Circular supersedes Attachment P, "Audit Requirements," of Circular A-102, "Uniform requirements for grants to State and local governments."

3. Background. The Single Audit Act builds upon earlier efforts to improve audits of Federal aid programs. The Act requires State or local governments that receive $100,000 or more a year in Federal funds to have an audit made for that year. Section 7505 of the Act requires the Director of the Office of Management and Budget to prescribe policies, procedures and guidelines to implement the Act. It specifies that the Director shall designate "cognizant" Federal agencies, determine criteria for making appropriate charges to Federal programs for the cost of audits, and provide procedures to assure that small firms or firms owned and controlled by disadvantaged individuals have the opportunity to participate in contracts for single audits.

4. Policy. The Single Audit Act requires the following:

a. State or local governments that receive $100,000 or more a year in Federal financial assistance shall have an audit made in accordance with this Circular.

b. State or local governments that receive between $25,000 and $100,000 a year shall have an audit made in accordance with this Circular, or in accordance with Federal laws and regulations governing the programs they participate in.

c. State or local governments that receive less than $25,000 a year shall be exempt from compliance with the Act and other Federal audit requirements. These State and local governments shall be governed by audit requirements prescribed by State or local law or regulation.

d. Nothing in this paragraph exempts State or local governments from maintaining records of Federal financial assistance or from providing access to such records to Federal agencies, as provided for in Federal law or in Circular A-102, "Uniform requirements for grants to State or local governments."

5. Definitions. For the purposes of this Circular the following definitions from the Single Audit Act apply:

a. "Cognizant agency" means the Federal agency assigned by the Office of Management and Budget to carry out the responsibilities described in paragraph 11 of this Circular.

b. "Federal financial assistance" means assistance provided by a Federal agency in the form of grants, contracts, cooperative agreements, loans, loan guarantees, property, interest subsidies, insurance, or direct appropriations, but does not include direct Federal cash assistance to individuals. It includes awards received directly from Federal agencies, or indirectly through other units of State and local governments.

c. "Federal agency" has the same meaning as the term 'agency' in section 551(1) of Title 5, United States Code.

d. "Generally accepted accounting principles" has the meaning specified in the generally accepted government auditing standards.

e. "Generally accepted government auditing standards" means the Standards For Audit of Government Organizations, Programs, Activities, and Functions, developed by the Comptroller General, dated February 27, 1981.

f. "Independent auditor" means:

(1) a State or local government auditor who meets the independence standards specified in generally accepted government auditing standards; or

(2) a public accountant who meets such independence standards.

g. "Internal controls" means the plan of organization and methods and procedures adopted by management to ensure that:

(1) resource use is consistent with laws, regulations, and policies;

(2) resources are safeguarded against waste, loss, and misuse; and

(3) reliable data are obtained, maintained, and fairly disclosed in reports.

h. "Indian tribe" means any Indian tribe, band, nations, or other organized group or community, including any Alaskan Native village or regional or village corporations (as defined in, or established under, the Alaskan Native Claims Settlement Act) that is recognized by the United States as eligible for the special programs and services provided by the United States to Indians because of their status as Indians.

i. "Local government" means any unit of local government within a State, including a county, a borough, municipality, city, town, township, parish, local public authority, special district, school district, intrastate district, council of governments, and any other instrumentality of local government.

j. "Major Federal Assistance Program," as defined by P.L. 98-502, is described in the Attachment to this Circular.

k. "Public accountants" means those individuals who meet the qualification standards included in generally accepted government auditing standards for personnel performing government audits.

l. "State" means any State of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands, and the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, any instrumentality thereof, and any multi-State, regional, or interstate entity that has governmental functions and any Indian tribe.

m. "Subrecipient" means any person or government department, agency, or establishment that receives Federal financial assistance to carry out a program through a State or local government, but does not include an individual that is a beneficiary of such a program. A subrecipient may also be a direct recipient of Federal financial assistance.

6. Scope of audit. The Single Audit Act provides that:

a. The audit shall be made by an independent auditor in accordance with generally accepted government auditing standards covering financial and compliance audits.

b. The audit shall cover the entire operations of a State or local government or, at the option of that government, it may cover departments, agencies or establishments that received, expended, or otherwise administered Federal financial assistance during the year. However, if a State or local government receives $25,000 or more in General Revenue Sharing Funds in a fiscal year, it shall have an audit of its entire operations. A series of audits of individual departments, agencies, and establishments for the same fiscal year may be considered a single audit.

c. Public hospitals and public colleges and universities may be excluded from State and local audits and the requirements of this Circular. However, if such entities are excluded, audits of these entities shall be made in accordance with statutory requirements and the provisions of Circular A-110, "Uniform requirements for grants to universities, hospitals, and other nonprofit organizations."

d. The auditor shall determine whether:

(1) the financial statements of the government, department, agency or establishment present fairly its financial position and the results of its financial operations in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;

(2) the organization has internal accounting and other control systems to provide reasonable assurance that it is managing Federal financial assistance programs in compliance with applicable laws and regulations; and

(3) the organization has complied with laws and regulations that may have material effect on its financial statements and on each major Federal assistance program.

7. Frequency of audit. Audits shall be made annually unless the State or local government has, by January 1, 1987, a constitutional or statutory requirement for less frequent audits. For those governments, the cognizant agency shall permit biennial audits, covering both years, if the government so requests. It shall also honor requests for biennial audits by governments that have an administrative policy calling for audits less frequent than annual, but only for fiscal years beginning before January 1, 1987.

8. Internal control and compliance reviews. The Single Audit Act requires that the independent auditor determine and report on whether the organization has internal control systems to provide reasonable assurance that it is managing Federal assistance programs in compliance with applicable laws and regulations.

a. Internal control review. In order to provide this assurance the auditor must make a study and evaluation of internal control systems used in administering Federal assistance programs. The study and evaluation must be made whether or not the auditor intends to place reliance on such systems. As part of this review, the auditor shall:

(1) Test whether these internal control systems are functioning in accordance with prescribed procedures.

(2) Examine the recipient's system for monitoring subrecipients and obtaining and acting on subrecipient audit reports.

b. Compliance review. The law also requires the auditor to determine whether the organization has complied with laws and regulations that may have a material effect on each major Federal assistance program.

(1) In order to determine which major programs are to be tested for compliance, State and local governments shall identify in their accounts all Federal funds received and expended and the programs under which they were received. This shall include funds received directly from Federal agencies and through other State and local governments.

(2) The review must include the selection and testing of a representative number of charges from each major Federal assistance program. The selection and testing of transactions shall be based on the auditor's professional judgment considering such factors as the amount of expenditures for the program and the individual awards; the newness of the program or changes in its conditions; prior experience with the program, particularly as revealed in audits and other evaluations (e.g., inspections, program reviews); the extent to which the program is carried out through subrecipients; the extent to which the program contracts for goods or services; the level to which the program is already subject to program reviews or other forms of independent oversight; the adequacy of the controls for ensuring compliance; the expectation of adherence or lack of adherence to the applicable laws and regulations; and the potential impact of adverse findings.

(a) In making the test of transactions, the auditor shall determine whether:

-- the amounts reported as expenditures were for allowable services, and

-- the records show that those who received services or benefits were eligible to receive them.

(b) In addition to transaction testing, the auditor shall determine whether:

-- matching requirements, levels of effort and earmarking limitations were met,

-- Federal financial reports and claims for advances and reimbursements contain information that is supported by the books and records from which the basic financial statements have been prepared, and

-- amounts claimed or used for matching were determined in accordance with OMB Circular A-87, "Cost principles for State and local governments," and Attachment F of Circular A-102, "Uniform requirements for grants to State and local governments."

(c) The principal compliance requirements of the largest Federal aid programs may be ascertained by referring to the Compliance Supplement for Single Audits of State and Local Governments, issued by OMB and available from the Government Printing Office. For those programs not covered in the Compliance Supplement, the auditor may ascertain compliance requirements by researching the statutes, regulations, and agreements governing individual programs.

(3) Transactions related to other Federal assistance programs that are selected in connection with examinations of financial statements and evaluations of internal controls shall be tested for compliance with Federal laws and regulations that apply to such transactions.

9. Subrecipients. State or local governments that receive Federal financial assistance and provide $25,000 or more of it in a fiscal year to a subrecipient shall:

a. determine whether State or local subrecipients have met the audit requirements of this Circular and whether subrecipients covered by Circular A-110, "Uniform requirements for grants to universities, hospitals, and other nonprofit organizations," have met that requirement;

b. determine whether the subrecipient spent Federal assistance funds provided in accordance with applicable laws and regulations. This may be accomplished by reviewing an audit of the subrecipient made in accordance with this Circular, Circular A-110, or through other means (e.g., program reviews) if the subrecipient has not yet had such an audit;

c. ensure that appropriate corrective action is taken within six months after receipt of the audit report in instances of noncompliance with Federal laws and regulations;

d. consider whether subrecipient audits necessitate adjustment of the recipient's own records; and

e. require each subrecipient to permit independent auditors to have access to the records and financial statements as necessary to comply with this Circular.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

10. Relation to other audit requirements. The Single Audit Act provides that an audit made in accordance with this Circular shall be in lieu of any financial or financial compliance audit required under individual Federal assistance programs. To the extent that a single audit provides Federal agencies with information and assurances they need to carry out their overall responsibilities, they shall rely upon and use such information. However, a Federal agency shall make any additional audits which are necessary to carry out its responsibilities under Federal law and regulation. Any additional Federal audit effort shall be planned and carried out in such a way as to avoid duplication.

a. The provisions of this Circular do not limit the authority of Federal agencies to make, or contract for audits and evaluations of Federal financial assistance programs, nor do they limit the authority of any Federal agency Inspector General or other Federal audit official.

b. The provisions of this Circular do not authorize any State or local government or subrecipient thereof to constrain Federal agencies, in any manner, from carrying out additional audits.

c. A Federal agency that makes or contracts for audits in addition to the audits made by recipients pursuant to this Circular shall, consistent with other applicable laws and regulations, arrange for funding the cost of such additional audits. Such additional audits include economy and efficiency audits, program results audits, and program evaluations.

11. Cognizant agency responsibilities. The Single Audit Act provides for cognizant Federal agencies to oversee the implementation of this Circular.

a. The Office of Management and Budget will assign cognizant agencies for States and their subdivisions and larger local governments and their subdivisions. Other Federal agencies may participate with an assigned cognizant agency, in order to fulfill the cognizance responsibilities. Smaller governments not assigned a cognizant agency will be under the general oversight of the Federal agency that provides them the most funds whether directly or indirectly.

b. A cognizant agency shall have the following responsibilities:

(1) Ensure that audits are made and reports are received in a timely manner and in accordance with the requirements of this Circular.

(2) Provide technical advice and liaison to State and local governments and independent auditors.

(3) Obtain or make quality control reviews of selected audits made by non-Federal audit organizations, and provide the results, when appropriate, to other interested organizations.

(4) Promptly inform other affected Federal agencies and appropriate Federal law enforcement officials of any reported illegal acts or irregularities. They should also inform State or local law enforcement and prosecuting authorities, if not advised by the recipient, of any violation of law within their jurisdiction.

(5) Advise the recipient of audits that have been found not to have met the requirements set forth in this Circular. In such instances, the recipient will be expected to work with the auditor to take corrective action. If corrective action is not taken, the cognizant agency shall notify the recipient and Federal awarding agencies of the facts and make recommendations for followup action. Major inadequacies or repetitive substandard performance of independent auditors shall be referred to appropriate professional bodies for disciplinary action.

(6) Coordinate, to the extent practicable, audits made by or for Federal agencies that are in addition to the audits made pursuant to this Circular; so that the additional audits build upon such audits.

(7) Oversee the resolution of audit findings that affect the programs of more than one agency.

12. Illegal acts or irregularities. If the auditor becomes aware of illegal acts or other irregularities, prompt notice shall be given to recipient management officials above the level of involvement. (See also paragraph 13(a)(3) below for the auditor's reporting responsibilities.) The recipient, in turn, shall promptly notify the cognizant agency of the illegal acts or irregularities and of proposed and actual actions, if any. Illegal acts and irregularities include such matters as conflicts of interest, falsification of records or reports, and misappropriations of funds or other assets.

13. Audit Reports. Audit reports must be prepared at the completion of the audit. Reports serve many needs of State and local governments as well as meeting the requirements of the Single Audit Act.

a. The audit report shall state that the audit was made in accordance with the provisions of this Circular. The report shall be made up of at least:

(1) The auditor's report on financial statements and on a schedule of Federal assistance; the financial statements; and a schedule of Federal assistance, showing the total expenditures for

each Federal assistance program as identified in the Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance. Federal programs or grants that have not been assigned a catalog number shall be identified under the caption "other Federal assistance."

(2) The auditor's report on the study and evaluation of internal control systems must identify the organization's significant internal accounting controls, and those controls designed to provide reasonable assurance that Federal programs are being managed in compliance with laws and regulations. It must also identify the controls that were evaluated, the controls that were not evaluated, and the material weaknesses identified as a result of the evaluation.

(3) The auditor's report on compliance containing:

-- a statement of positive assurance with respect to those items tested for compliance, including compliance with law and regulations pertaining to financial reports and claims for advances and reimbursements;

-- negative assurance on those items not tested;

-- a summary of all instances of noncompliance; and

-- an identification of total amounts questioned, if any, for each Federal assistance award, as a result of noncompliance.

b. The three parts of the audit report may be bound into a single report, or presented at the same time as separate documents.

c. All fraud abuse, or illegal acts or indications of such acts, including all questioned costs found as the result of these acts that auditors become aware of, should normally be covered in a separate written report submitted in accordance with paragraph 13f.

d. In addition to the audit report, the recipient shall provide comments on the findings and recommendations in the report, including a plan for corrective action taken or planned and comments on the status of corrective action taken on prior findings. If corrective action is not necessary, a statement describing the reason it is not should accompany the audit report.

e. The reports shall be made available by the State or local government for public inspection within 30 days after the completion of the audit.

f. In accordance with generally accepted government audit standards, reports shall be submitted by the auditor to the organization audited and to those requiring or arranging for the audit. In addition, the recipient shall submit copies of the reports to each Federal department or agency that provided Federal assistance funds to the recipient. Subrecipients shall submit copies to recipients that provided them Federal assistance funds. The reports shall be sent within 30 days after the completion of the audit, but no later than one year after the end of the audit period unless a longer period is agreed to with the cognizant agency.

g. Recipients of more than $100,000 in Federal funds shall submit one copy of the audit report within 30 days after issuance to a central clearinghouse to be designated by the Office of Management and Budget. The clearinghouse will keep completed audits on file and follow up with State and local governments that have not submitted required audit reports.

h. Recipients shall keep audit reports on file for three years from their issuance.

14. Audit Resolution. As provided in paragraph 11, the cognizant agency shall be responsible for monitoring the resolution of audit findings that affect the programs of more than one Federal agency. Resolution of findings that relate to the programs of a single Federal agency will be the responsibility of the recipient and that agency. Alternate arrangements may be made on a case-by-case basis by agreement among the agencies concerned.

Resolution shall be made within six months after receipt of the report by the Federal departments and agencies. Corrective action should proceed as rapidly as possible.

15. Audit workpapers and reports. Workpapers and reports shall be retained for a minimum of three years from the date of the audit report, unless the auditor is notified in writing by the cognizant agency to extend the retention period. Audit workpapers shall be made available upon request to the cognizant agency or its designee or the General Accounting Office, at the completion of the audit.

16. Audit Costs. The cost of audits made in accordance with the provisions of this Circular are allowable charges to Federal assistance programs.

a. The charges may be considered a direct cost or an allocated indirect cost, determined in accordance with the provision of Circular A-87, "Cost principles for State and local governments."

b. Generally, the percentage of costs charged to Federal assistance programs for a single audit shall not exceed the percentage that Federal funds expended represent of total funds expended by the recipient during the fiscal year. The percentage may be exceeded, however, if appropriate documentation demonstrates higher actual cost.

17. Sanctions. The Single Audit Act provides that no cost may be charged to Federal assistance programs for audits required by the Act that are not made in accordance with this Circular. In cases of continued inability or unwillingness to have a proper audit, Federal agencies must consider other appropriate sanctions including:

-- withholding a percentage of assistance payments until the audit is completed satisfactorily,

-- withholding or disallowing overhead costs, and

-- suspending the Federal assistance agreement until the audit is made.

18. Auditor Selection. In arranging for audit services State and local governments shall follow the procurement standards prescribed by Attachment O of Circular A-102, "Uniform requirements for grants to State and local governments." The standards provide that while recipients are encouraged to enter into intergovernmental agreements for audit and other services, analysis should be made to determine whether it would be more economical to purchase the services from private firms. In instances where use of such intergovernmental agreements are required by State statutes (e.g., audit services) these statutes will take precedence.

19. Small and Minority Audit Firms. Small audit firms and audit firms owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals shall have the maximum practicable opportunity to participate in contracts awarded to fulfill the requirements of this Circular. Recipients of Federal assistance shall take the following steps to further this goal:

a. Assure that small audit firms and audit firms owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals are used to the fullest extent practicable.

b. Make information on forthcoming opportunities available and arrange timeframes for the audit so as to encourage and facilitate participation by small audit firms and audit firms owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals.

c. Consider in the contract process whether firms competing for larger audits intend to subcontract with small audit firms and audit firms owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals.

d. Encourage contracting with small audit firms or audit firms owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals which have traditionally audited government programs and, in such cases where this is not possible, assure that these firms are given consideration for audit subcontracting opportunities.

e. Encourage contracting with consortiums of small audit firms as described in paragraph (a) above when a contract is too large for an individual small audit firm or audit firm owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals.

f. Use the services and assistance, as appropriate, of such organizations as the Small Business Administration in the solicitation and utilization of small audit firms or audit firms owned and controlled by socially and economically disadvantaged individuals.

20. Reporting. Each Federal agency will report to the Director of OMB on or before March 1, 1987, and annually thereafter on the effectiveness of State and local governments in carrying out the provisions of this Circular. The report must identify each State or local government or Indian tribe that, in the opinion of the agency, is failing to comply with the Circular.

21. Regulations. Each Federal agency shall include the provisions of this Circular in its regulations implementing the Single Audit Act.

22. Effective date. This Circular is effective upon publication and shall apply to fiscal years of State and local governments that begin after December 31, 1984. Earlier implementation is encouraged. However, until it is implemented, the audit provisions of Attachment P to Circular A-102 shall continue to be observed.

23. Inquiries. All questions or inquiries should be addressed to Financial Management Division, Office of Management and Budget, telephone number 202/395-3993.

24. Sunset review date. This Circular shall have an independent policy review to ascertain its effectiveness three years from the date of issuance.

David A. Stockman
Director

Circular A-128
Attachment

Definition of Major Program as Provided in P.L. 98-502

"Major Federal Assistance Program," for State and local governments having Federal assistance expenditures between $100,000 and $100,000,000, means any program for which Federal expenditures during the applicable year exceed the larger of $300,000, or 3 percent of such total expenditures.

Where total expenditures of Federal assistance exceed $100,000,000, the following criteria apply:

Total Expenditures of Federal Financial Assistance for All Programs		Major Federal Assistance Program Means any Program That Exceeds
more than	but less than	
$100 million	1 billion	$ 3 million
1 billion	2 billion	4 million
2 billion	3 billion	7 million
3 billion	4 billion	10 million
4 billion	5 billion	13 million
5 billion	6 billion	16 million
6 billion	7 billion	19 million
over 7 billion		20 million

Instructions for Use of the Head Start Logo

A. General

The Name "Head Start" was officially registered by the United States Commission of Patents and Trademarks on February 25, 1986, and was provided U.S. Trademark Registration Certificate No. 1,384,264. On March 11, 1986, the Head Start logo was registered officially and provided U.S. Trademark Certificate No. 1,385,972.

The terms of the registrations are for twenty (20) years from those dates and can be renewed for subsequent 20-year terms at the appropriate time.

The registration trademark symbol, ®, must appear by the name and logo at all times. It is not necessary for grantees and delegate agencies to discard their current inventory of material. However, grantees must add the trademark symbol when materials are reprinted.

B. Authorized Users

The Head Start Bureau authorizes local Head Start grantees and delegate agencies to use the name and logo without further approval on stationary, posters, recruitment literature, newsletters and other promotional items designed to inform the local community of Head Start activities.

C. Use of Head Start Name or Logo on Items for Manufacture, Sale or Distribution

Only Head Start grantees, delegate agencies, and organizations that receive Head Start contracts, as well as non-profit organizations which represent Head Start programs, such as State or National Head Start Associations, may use the Head Start name and logo on items they sell or distribute. However, these organizations must obtain prior approval for the use of the Head Start name or logo from the Head Start Bureau. Grantees must treat profits from such sales as program income and report the proceeds on the SF-269. Grantees requesting approval to manufacture, sell or distribute items bearing the Head Start name or logo must identify at least one of the three additional cost alternatives to be used as stipulated in 45 CFR 74.42.

D. Approval

Requests to manufacture, sell or distribute items bearing the Head Start name or logo must be submitted at least sixty (60) days prior to the anticipated date of the sale or distribution. Approved requests will be effective for a period not to exceed three years and only for those items for which such written approval was granted. Requests for approval should be sent to:

Head Start Bureau
Administration on Children, Youth and Families/ACF
Department of Health and Human Services
P.O. Box 1182
Washington, D.C. 20013

E. Restrictions

Unless otherwise approved, all unauthorized individuals, organizations and commercial firms must discontinue manufacturing, selling or distributing materials bearing either the Head Start name or logo on the effective date of this notice.

Unauthorized use of the Head Start name or logo should be reported immediately so that appropriate legal action can be taken. Reports of unauthorized use should be sent to the address above.

Federal Register, April 6, 1987

☆ U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE:1994-523-216/81321

PS

ACF **Administration for Children and Families**	**U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES** **Administration on Children, Youth and Families**	
	1. Log No. ACYF-IM-94-13	**2. Issuance Date:** 7/25/94
	3. Originating Office: Head Start Bureau	
	4. Key Word: Head Start Requirements (Act, Regulations and Policies)	

INFORMATION MEMORANDUM

TO: All Head Start Grantees and Delegate Agencies

SUBJECT: Manual for Head Start Administrators: Volume I

PURPOSE: Attached is a new management tool entitled Manual for Head Start Administrators, Volume I: Head Start Requirements. This manual contains a brief discussion of how Federal laws and regulations are developed and how these procedures shape specific Head Start requirements, and a compilation of the current requirements affecting the Head Start program.

This 5-part Manual, in which all Head Start requirements are organized in a single publication, will assist administrators in locating information quickly; the loose-leaf format makes it convenient to add or discard material as changes in requirements occur. To assist administrators in keeping the Manual up-to-date and using it as a tool to manage local programs, future Program Instructions (PI) and Information Memoranda (IM) will provide specific guidance on incorporating the new material into the Manual. These issuances will include the volume reference, identify any other requirements affected and specify where in the Manual the material should be placed.

Head Start administrators are urged to keep the Manual in a readily accessible place and to update it immediately upon receipt of new material. A second volume of the Manual, entitled Manual for Head Start Administrators, Volume II: Head Start Guidance, is being developed and will be sent to you in the near future.

PS024289

For a limited number of additional copies of this Manual, please submit a written request to:

Head Start Publications Center
P.O. Box 26417
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-0417
Fax: (703) 683-5769

Olivia A. Golden
Commissioner

Attachment: Manual for Head Start Administrators, Volume I: Head Start Requirements